

WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY



2026/2027 FINAL INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN



To be the best energy hub and eco-tourism destination in Southern Africa"

CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES.....	vi
LIST OF FIGURES	x
LIST OF MAPS	xi
ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS.....	xii
WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VISION, MISSION, VALUES, STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND SLOGAN	xiv
DISTRICT AND LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES VISION & MISSION	xv
FOREWORD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR	xvi
MUNICIPAL MANAGER’S OVERVIEW	xvii
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	xviii
CHAPTER 1: THE PLANNING FRAMEWORK.....	1
1. INTRODUCTION.....	1
1.1 BACKGROUND OF THE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)	1
1.2 LEGISLATIVE BACKGROUND AND POLICY IMPERATIVES.....	12
1.3 THE IDP STRATEGIC APPROACH AND ALIGNMENT WITH ALL SPHERES OF GOVERNMENT	19
1.3.2 SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS	20
1.3.3 AGENDA 2063: THE AFRICA WE WANT	22
1.3.4 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN: VISION FOR 2030	23
1.3.5 THE GOVERNMENT OF NATIONAL UNITY PRIORITIES.....	24
1.3.6 MEDIUM TERM DEVELOPMENT PLAN (MTDP) 2024–2029	25
1.3.7 BACK TO BASICS: SERVING OUR COMMUNITIES BETTER	25
1.3.8 TWELVE NATIONAL OUTCOMES	26

1.3.9 REVIEWED LIMPOPO DEVELOPMENT PLAN (LDP)	27
1.3.10 DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL WATERBERG DISTRICT ONE PLAN	28
1.4 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY PRIORITIES	33
1.5 MEC FINAL IDP ASSESSMENT REPORT FOR 2025/26	34
1.6 PROCESS OVERVIEW	35
1.7. STATE OF NATION & STATE OF THE PROVINCIAL ADDRESS 2026 AND ALLIGNMENT TO THE DISTRICT IDP	38
1.9. SUMMARY OF THE 2026 NATIONAL BUDGET SPEECH AND THE 2026 LIMPOPO PROVINCIAL BUDGET SPEECH	39
1.10 STRATEGIC PERFORMANCE OVERVIEW	40
2. INTRODUCTION	58
2.1 MUNICIPAL PROFILE	58
2.3 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY CONTEXTUALISATION	58
DESCRIPTION OF MUNICIPAL AREA	58
2.4 DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE	65
2.5 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY AT A GLANCE	66
2.6 EMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT	75
CHAPTER 3: SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS PER KPAS	94
3.INTRODUCTION	94
3.1 SPATIAL RATIONALE	94
3.2. SPLATIAL PLANNING LAND USE MANAGEMENT IMPLEMENTATION	94
3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS	114
3.2 BASIC SERVICE AND DELIVERY	123
3.2.1 WATER ANALYSIS	123
3.2.2 SANITATION ANALYSIS	130
3.2.3 ENERGY AND ELECTRICITY	133
3.2.4 ROADS AND STORM WATER	137
3.2.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT	142

3.2.6	PUBLIC TRANSPORT	147
3.3	SOCIAL ANALYSIS.....	154
3.3.1	HOUSING.....	154
3.3.2	EDUCATION.....	156
3.3.3	HEALTH AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT	168
3.3.4	SAFETY AND SECURITY.....	175
3.3.5	SPORT, ART AND CULTURE	179
	DISTRICT WIDE CEMETERY ANALYSIS	184
	CHAPTER 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS.....	184
4.1	INTRODUCTION.....	185
4.2	THE DISTRICT ECONOMIC CONTRIBUTION OVERVIEW	188
4.3	ECONOMIC SECTORS.....	195
4.4	AGRICULTURE	201
4.5	TOURISM	212
4.6	WATERBERG BIODIVERSITY	213
	STRATEGIC CATALYTIC INITIATIVE: SABC FILM STUDIO PARTNERSHIP	219
	CHAPTER 5 – FINANCIAL ANALYSIS	223
5.1	REVENUE MANAGEMENT & BILLING.....	223
5.2	EXPENDITURE & CASHFLOW MANAGEMENT	223
5.3	FINANCIAL REPORT	224
5.6	AUDIT.....	227
5.7	AUDIT OPINION.....	229
5.8	AUDIT OUTCOME TRENDS FOR WATERBERG DISTRICT-WIDE FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2019/20-2023/24].....	229
5.9	AUDITED STATEMENTS	230
5.10	2023/24 AUDIT ACTION PLAN REPORT	231
	MUNICIPALITY	231

5.11	RISK AND INTERNAL CONTROL.....	246
5.12	2025/26 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIC RISKS	247
5.13	FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT & VIABILITY: KEY ISSUES & CHALLENGES	248
	CHAPTER 6 – GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION ANALYSIS	250
6.1	FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES	250
6.2.	FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES AND CDWS.....	251
6.3	INTERGOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR)	252
7.1.	INSTITUTIONAL STRUCTURE.....	253
7.3	VACANCIES RATE AS AT 30 MARCH 2026.....	256
7.4	PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS)	258
7.5	SKILLS DEVELOPMENT.....	260
7.6	SUCCESSION PLAN AND RETENTION PLAN	263
7.7	COMPLAINTS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.....	263
7.8	WDM 2026/27 SWOT ANALYSIS.....	264
7.9	KEY DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 2026/27	267
	CHAPTER 8 – CROSS CUTTING ISSUES (DISASTER MANAGEMENT).....	268
8.1	DISASTER RISK ANALYSIS	268
	CHAPTER 9 - STRATEGIC PHASE	271
9.2	OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES	273
9.3	DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGIES AND STRATEGIC ALIGNMENT	292
9.4	2025/26 STRATEGIC PLANNING RESOLUTION	296
9.4	FIVE YEAR DISTRICT WIDE STRATEGIC OUTCOMES & TARGETS	298
9.6	2025/2026 INSTITUTIONAL SERVICE DELIVERY INDICATORS AND TARGET.....	302
	CHAPTER 10 - PROJECT PHASE	326
10.1	WATERBERG DISTRICT 2026/27 PROJECTS.....	326

10.2 CATALYTIC PROJECTS AND/OR PROGRAMMES FOR IMPLEMENTATION WITHIN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.	326
10.3 WATERBERG NATIONAL ONE PLAN CATALYTIC PROJECTS	328
10.4 WATERBERG PROPOSED PROJECT	330
10.5 2026/2027 SECTOR DEPARTMENTS PROJECTS.....	334
10.6 WATERBERG – BUDGET SUMMARY	335
10.7 WATERBERG – BUDGETED FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE (REVENUE AND EXPENDITURE BY FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION)	337
11.1 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS	339
11.2 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS AND YEAR REVIEWED PER MUNICIPALITY	341
CHAPTER 11 – PROJECTS PHASE (SECTOR DEPARTMENT PROJECTS).....	344
ANNEXURE A: SECTOR DEPARTMENTS & PARASTATALS PROJECTS/PROGRAMMES TO BE UPDATED IN THE FINAL IDP IN MAY	344
ANNEXURE b: local municipalities PROJECTS	344



LIST OF TABLES

TABLE 1: THE ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE.....	8
TABLE 2: PHASES OF THE IDP REVIEW/DEVELOPMENT.....	10
TABLE 3: BINDING LEGISLATION, POLICIES AND PLANNING REQUIREMENTS AT NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL LEVEL	18
TABLE 4: LIST OF POLICY FRAMEWORKS APPLICABLE TO WDM.....	20
TABLE 5: POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	32
TABLE 6: THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY AND ITS LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES TOP 10 PRIORITIES.....	33
TABLE 7: LIMPOPO MEC'S IDP CREDIBILITY RATINGS AND IDP/SDBIP RATINGS 2025/26	35
TABLE 8: IDP REVIEW PROCESS (TO REVIEW THE CURRENT IDP)	36
TABLE 10: 2024/25 INSTITUTIONAL SCORE CARD.....	41
TABLE 11: WDM PROVISION OF BASIC SERVICE AS PER THE MUNICIPAL STRUCTURE ACT 119 OF 1998.....	56
TABLE 13: INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT	57
TABLE 14: THE ECONOMIC SECTORS OF THE WATERBERG DISTRICT	59
TABLE 15: LIMPOPO PROVINCE RANKING BY DISTRICT	60
TABLE 16: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPAL FIVE LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES MUNICIPALITY AND SOME ITS TOWNS	60
TABLE 17: TOTAL POPULATION SIZE: PERSON INDICATOR PER MUNICIPALITY	67
TABLE 18: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY KEY STATISTICS (SOURCE: CENSUS 2022)	68
TABLE 19: POPULATION BY GENDER SOURCE	70
TABLE 20: REFUSE DISPOSAL.....	72
TABLE 21: MAIN TOILET FACILITIES.....	73
TABLE 22: ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	73
TABLE 23: DWELLING TYPE WATERBERG	74
TABLE 24: ATTENDANCE AT EDUCATIONAL LEVEL (5-24 YEARS).....	74
TABLE 25: HIGH LEVEL OF EDUCATION (20+ YEARS)	74
TABLE 26: UNEMPLOYMENT RATES	76
TABLE 27: UNEMPLOYMENT RATES PER GENDER IN LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES	77
TABLE 28: WORKING AGE POPULATION IN WATERBERG 2009 AND 2019 [NUMBER].....	78
TABLE 29: WATERBERG POPULATION BY INCOME LEVELS	78
TABLE 30: PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES	79
TABLE 31: TOTAL POPULATION OF WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL 2013-2024 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE].....	80
TABLE 32: TOTAL POPULATION - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2014, 2019 & 2022 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]	81
TABLE 33: POPULATION PROJECTIONS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2019-2024 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]	82
TABLE 34: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY – CENSUS 2022 (POPULATION BY AGE, RACE AND GENDER)	84
TABLE 35: NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2022 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]	86
TABLE 36: BI MONTHLY GRANT STATS	92

TABLE 37:POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY WALKING AND CLIMBING STAIRS DISABALITY STATUS	93
TABLE 38:MAJOR TOWNS/SETTLEMENTS	96
TABLE 39:DISTRIBUTION OF SETTLEMENTS WITHIN THE DISTRICT	96
TABLE 40: MUNICIPAL PLANNING TRIBUNAL AND SPATIAL PLANNING POLICIES STATUS QUO.....	98
TABLE 41:HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS	99
TABLE 42:LAND USE COMPOSITION - LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEMES AND SDFS (WDM SDF)	101
TABLE 43: WDM SETTLED LAND CLAIMS	102
TABLE 44: ILLEGAL OCCUPATION OF LAND	105
TABLE 45: INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS IN WATERBERG	105
TABLE 46:STRATEGICALLY LOCATED LAND IN WDM	107
TABLE 47: NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES PERMITTED AND UNLICENSED PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	107
TABLE 48:TYPES OF DWELLING	108
TABLE 49:LODGED CLAIMS	109
TABLE 50: RESTITUTION PROGRAMME.....	111
TABLE 51: LAND ACQUISITION AS AT AUGUST 2019	111
TABLE 52: ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE PROGRAMME	112
TABLE 53: RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME	112
TABLE 54: SIGNING OF PLAS LEASES	113
TABLE 55: LANDFILL SITES IN WDM	121
TABLE 56: WATER RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME	123
TABLE 57: LEVELS OF DAMS IN WATERBERG	124
TABLE 58: WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES	126
TABLE 59: WATER SOURCES SCHEME IN MUNICIPALITIES.....	127
TABLE 60: ACCESS TO WATER PER MUNICIPALITY	127
TABLE 61: WATER BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	128
TABLE 62: ACCESS TO SANITATION PER MUNICIPALITY	130
TABLE 63: FREE BASIC SERVICES PER MUNICIPALITY	130
TABLE 64: ELECTRICITY FOR LIGHTING AND ENERGY FOR COOKING PER MUNICIPALITY (2011:2022)	134
TABLE 65:ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY	135
TABLE 66: HOUSEHOLD ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY	136
TABLE 67: ELECTRIFICATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	136
TABLE 68: ROAD LENGTH AND SURFACE	137
TABLE 69: WDM MAJOR ROADS IN DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS	139
TABLE 70: ROUTES CLASSIFICATION IN THE MUNICIPALITY	139
TABLE 71: BACKLOGS ON ROADS, STORM WATER AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING ROADS AND STORM WATER.	140
TABLE 72: REFUSE REMOVAL BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY.....	143

TABLE 73: WATER, ELECTRICITY SANITATION AND REFUSE REMOVALS BACKLOGS	144
TABLE 74: ACCESS TO REFUSE REMOVAL SERVICES	145
TABLE 75: BELA-BELA NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS IN RECIEIVING WASTE COLLECTION AS DEFINED BY THE WASTE COLLECTION SERVICE STANDARDS, MUNICIPAL DATA	145
TABLE 76:PUBLIC TRANSPORT CORRIDORS	147
TABLE 77:TAXI OPERATIONS IN WDM	148
TABLE 78:BUS OPERATIONS IN WDM	148
TABLE 79: INTEGRATED AND SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT PER MUNICIPLAITY	155
TABLE 80: WDM HOUSING DEMAND/BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY	155
TABLE 81: SCHOOLS AND LEARNER ENROLMENT PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY (2024)	157
TABLE 82: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY AND HIGHEST EDUCATION LEVEL	158
TABLE 83: EDUCATION LEVELS IN WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	163
TABLE 84: WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY - NUMBER OF SCHOOLS	167
TABLE 85: DISTRICTS PERFORMANCE	167
TABLE 86: TOP 5 WORST PERFORMING VITAL IDEAL CLINIC ELEMENTS IN PHC FACILITIES	171
TABLE 87: SOCIAL SERVICES–HEALTH FACILITIES	171
TABLE 88: EMS (STATIONS)	172
TABLE 89: EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT	174
TABLE 90: DROP IN CENTRES	174
TABLE 91:COMMUNITY NUTRITION CENTRES	175
TABLE 92:POLICE STATIONS	175
TABLE 93: WATERBERG DISTRICT POLICE STATIONS	176
TABLE 94: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED	176
TABLE 96: CRIME OVERVIEW	178
TABLE 97: SPORTS FACILITIES PER MUNICIPALITY	179
TABLE 98:MUNICIPALITY HALLS AND PARKS	180
TABLE 99:DISTRICT WIDE LIBRARY INFRASTRUCTURES	182
TABLE 100: CEMETRRIES IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITIES	184
TABLE 103: : MINERAL COMMODITY PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY:	195
TABLE 104: SUMMARY OF GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF CROP PRODUCTION	207
TABLE 105: CONSOLIDATED BUDGET SUMMARY	225
TABLE 107: FINANCIAL POLICIES, STRATEGIES & SYSTEMS	226
TABLE 108: CONSOLIDATED OVERVIEW OF THE 2024/25-27 MTREF	227
TABLE 109: AUDIT OUTCOME TREND AND MATTERS AFFECTING THE AUDIT REPORT FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2019/20-2023/24]	229
TABLE 110: AUDIT OUTCOME TREND WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2018/19-2022/23]	229
TABLE 111: FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES IN MUNICIPLAITIES	250
TABLE 112: FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPALITY PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES AND CDWS	251

TABLE 113: STATUS OF FILLING OF CRITICAL POSTS IN MUNICIPLAITIES	255
TABLE 114: VACANCY RATES AS AT 30 MARCH 2026.....	256
TABLE 115: DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY TWELVE POWERS AND FUNCTIONS CONFERRED TO IT THROUGH SECTION 84 SUB-SECTIONS 1 OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT MUNICIPAL STRUCTURES ACT.....	257
TABLE 116: TRAINING NEEDS IDENTIFIED	260
TABLE 117: NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN	261
TABLE 118:: KEY DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES PER MUNICIPALITY 2026/27.....	267
TABLE 119: COMBINED PRIORITY HAZARDS FOR THE WDM IDENTIFIED DURING 2014 AND IN 2025/2026 WERE AS FOLLOWS:.....	269
TABLE 120: MUNICIPAL PRIORITIZATION	270
TABLE 121: STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	271
TABLE 122: SUMMARY OF DEPARTMENTAL AND STAKEHOLDER PRESENTATIONS – CHALLENGES AND MITIGATION MEASURES PER NATIONAL KPA IN THE MUNICIPALITIES	272
TABLE 123: WDM 2026/2027 RESOLUTIONS IMPLEMENTATION ACTION PLAN.....	274
TABLE 124: 2026 STRTEGIC PLANNING RETREAT RESOLUTIONS.....	310
TABLE 125: CATALYTIC PROJECTS AND/OR PROGRAMMES FOR IMPLEMENTATION WITHIN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.	327



LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE 1: PHASES OF THE IDP REVIEW	4
FIGURE 2: THE 17 SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS (SDGS) – A GLOBAL FRAMEWORK TO TRANSFORM OUR WORLD.....	21
FIGURE 3: THIRTEEN (13) NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN PRIORITIES	24
FIGURE 4:THE DDM ROAD MAP PROCESS	29
FIGURE 5: VISION FRAMEWORK	30
FIGURE 6: SELF-REINFORCING UPLIFTMENT AND SUSTAINABILITY CYCLE	31
FIGURE 7: ONE PLAN STRATEGIC GOALS	32
FIGURE 8: WATERBERG DITRICT MUNICIPALITY DEMOGRAPHIC.....	65
FIGURE 9: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITIES POPULATION IN 2011 VERSUS 2022 COMPARED WITH OTHER LIMPOPO MUNICIPLAITIES (CENSUS 2022).....	66
FIGURE 10: POPULATION GROUP IN THE WDM <i>SOURCE: CENSUS 2022</i>.....	69
FIGURE 11: POPULATION GROUP <i>CENSUS 2022</i>	70
FIGURE 12: ENERGY FOR LIGHTING <i>SOURCE: CENSUS 2022</i>	71
FIGURE 13: SOURCE OF ELECTRICITY- ENERGY FOR COOKING IN WDM	72
FIGURE 14: POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY 2019 VS. 2024 [PERCENTAGE]	83
FIGURE 15: POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VS. SOUTH AFRICA, 2022 [PERCENTAGE]	86
FIGURE 16: HIV+ ESTIMATES AND AIDS DEATH ESTIMATES WATERBERG, 2009-2024	89
FIGURE 17 : NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES	93
FIGURE 18: HIGHEST LEVEL +20 YEARS.....	157
FIGURE 19: POPULATION OF THE WDM PEOPLE THAT DID NOT COMPLETE PRIMARY EDUCATION.....	160
FIGURE 20: HIV/AIDS PROFILE IN THE WATERBERG	170
FIGURE 21:THE ECONOMIC DRIVERS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT AND ITS LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES.....	186
FIGURE 22: RED AND WHITE MEAT PRODUCTION AREAS.....	209



LIST OF MAPS

MAP 1: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNIIPALITY REGIONAL CONTEXT (A,B) AS LOCATED WITHIN THE PROVINCE	61
MAP 2: LOCALITY MAP OF WATERBERG DISTRICT- NATIONAL CONTEXT	62
MAP 3: WDM TOPOGRAPHY AND HYDROLOGY	63
MAP 4: POPULATION DISTRIBUTION	64
MAP 5:POPULATION DISTRIBUTION/ DENSITY	90
MAP 6: POPULATION CHANGE	91
MAP 7:SETTLEMENT PATTERNS/HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT	95
MAP 8:HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS	97
MAP 9:HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS	100
MAP 10: WDM SETTLED LAND CLAIMS	104
MAP 11: MAP OF INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS IN WATERBERG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY"	106
MAP 12:: LAND CLAIMS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	110
MAP 13: RESERVES AND PROTECTED AREAS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT	116
MAP 14: HYDROLOGICAL SYSTEMS	117
MAP 15: AGRICULTURAL POTENTIAL	118
MAP 16: ENVIRONMENTALLY SENSITIVE AREAS, TOURISM AND WATERBERG BIOSPHERE	119
MAP 17: WATERBERG BIOSPHERE WITH ZONATIONS (2001 ZONATION AS PER DFFE-MAB)	120
MAP 18: MOKOLO AND CROCODILE RIVER (WEST) WATER AUGMENTATION PROJECT – LOCALITY AND PHASING	125
MAP 19: CLASSIFICATION OF ROADS NETWORK	138
MAP 20: ROAD FREIGHT CORRIDORS	141
MAP 21: NETWORKS & CORRIDORS	152
MAP 22: RAIL FACILITIES	153
MAP 23: 2016 EDUCATION - NO SCHOOLING	164
MAP 24:2016 EDUCATION - NO SCHOOLING (A) NUMBERS AND (B) CHANGE FROM 2001-2011	165
MAP 25: PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS	166
MAP 27: MINING SECTOR MAP	196
MAP 28: GEOGRAPHIC SPREAD MINES IN WATERBERG DISTRICT.	198
MAP 29: MINERALS OF THE FUTURE	199
MAP 30: LITHIUM, COBALT, GRAPHITE, REE, SILVER, MOLYBDENUM, ALUMINIUM, COPPER, MANGANESE (SOURCE: COUNCIL FOR GEOSCIENCE)	200
MAP 31: AGRICULTURE PRODUCTION AREA	203
MAP 32: PROTECTED AREAS	203
MAP 33: VEGETABLE PRODUCTION AREAS	205
MAP 34: GRAIN AND OILSEEDS PRODUCTION AREAS (LEFT) MAP 35: GROUNDNUTS AND SORGHUM PRODUCTION AREAS (RIGHT)	207
MAP 36: CITRUS PRODUCTION AREAS	208
MAP 37: MAKAPAN VALLEY CULTURAL LANDSCAPE	215

ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

ABBREVIATION	INTERPRETATION
B2B	Back to Basics
CBO	Community Based Organization
CIP	Comprehensive Investment Plan
CoGHSTA	Department of Cooperative Governance Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
CPI	Consumer Price Index
DM	District Municipality
DWAS	Department of Water Affairs and Sanitation
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
GOA	Guide to Outcome Approach
GPNPC	Green Paper on National Planning Commission
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IGR	Inter – Governmental Relations Framework
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
KPA	Key Performance Area
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LDP	Limpopo Development Plan
LED	Local Economic Development
LGDP	Local Government Development Program
LM	Local Municipality
MDGs	Millennium Development Goals
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act, No 56 of 2003
MSA	Municipal Systems Act, No 32 of 2000
MTEF	Medium term Expenditure framework
MTDP	Medium Term Development Plan

NDP	National Development plan
NGO/NPO	Non-Governmental Organization/ Non Profit Organization
NPF	National Planning Framework
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act 1 of 1999
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PMS	Performance Management System
PPP	Public Private Partnership
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
SDBIP	Service Delivery Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SIP	Strategic Infrastructure Project
SMME	Small, Medium and Macro Enterprises
SONA	State of the Nation Address
SOPA	State of the Province Address
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
STATSSA	Statistic South Africa
SWOT	Strength, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats
ToR	Terms of Reference
WDM	Waterberg District municipality
WSA	Water Service Authority
WSDP	Water Services Development Plan



WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VISION, MISSION, VALUES, STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND SLOGAN

VISION: In line with the **National Development Plan**, the strategic vision of the **Waterberg District Municipality** remained unchanged and was therefore adopted during the 25/26 strategic planning.

MISSION: The strategic **Missions** defines the purpose of the Waterberg District Municipality.

VALUES: Values are deeply rooted principles or standards which are universally accepted among the Employees, Councillors and Community members of a municipality and which explicitly guide what they believe, their attitude toward service delivery, and ultimately, how they behave.

VISION	<i>"To be the best energy hub and ecotourism destination in Southern Africa"</i>
MISSION	<i>"To invest in a constituency of talented human capital who are motivated and innovative to build a sustainable economy in the field of energy, minerals and eco-tourism for the benefit of all our communities."</i>
VALUES	<i>Honesty, Accountability, Accessibility, Effectiveness, Respect, Fairness, Integrity & Ubuntu</i>

Vision, Mission, and Slogan: The vision and mission of Waterberg District Municipality remain unchanged, reaffirming our commitment to sustainable development and service excellence.

Slogan: The current slogan of Waterberg District Municipality remains highly relevant. It is therefore proposed that the slogan remains unchanged as: *"On the Go for Growth"* as reflected on the WDM logo.

Follow and like us on Facebook @WaterbergDistrictMunicipality

DISTRICT AND LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES VISION & MISSION

MUNICIPALITY	VISION	MISSION
	"To be the best energy hub and ecotourism destination in Southern Africa".	"To invest in a constituency of talented human capital who are motivated and innovative to build a sustainable economy in the field of energy, minerals and eco-tourism for the benefit of all our communities."
	"To be Limpopo's leading municipality in reliable service delivery and sustainable economic growth".	"To strive for excellence in promoting accountable, transparent, and people-centered governance, promoting social and economic development, providing sustainable and affordable basic services, and promoting a sustainable environment for economic growth".
	"A vibrant city and the energy hub".	"Committed to Integrated Development, provision of quality, sustainable and affordable services, financial viability and good governance, local economic development and job creation".
	"Thé Arterial City of Choice".	"Committed to develop communities and promote economic growth by: • providing affordable and quality basic services, • creating a conducive and sustainable environment for social and economic development; and • being consultative, responsive, and accountable".
	"To be a leading municipality in the provision of sustainable and excellent services".	"To uplift the community through the provision of quality services, focusing on responsiveness, sensitivity, and community involvement"
	"We are the prime agricultural hub and eco-tourism destination of choice".	"Commitment to effective and efficient service delivery; • By exploiting opportunities in development and tourism; • By striving for economic growth and job creation; • Promoting a safe, healthy and sustainable environment; • Fostering active community participation and stakeholder involvement"

All WDM Local municipalities, their focus on service reliability, sustainability, agriculture, and urban vibrancy, collectively align with the district's vision of becoming Southern Africa's best energy hub and ecotourism destination, ensuring coherent development, resource efficiency, and strategic investment.

FOREWORD BY THE EXECUTIVE MAYOR

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) review marks the municipal IDP after the municipal local government elections held in 2021. The document serves as a strategic and developmental plan that will guide service delivery within the Waterberg District.

The Waterberg District municipality like any other municipality, has a particular responsibility of to achieve delivery of basic services through various programmes amongst others, water and sanitation, roads, disaster management, fire-fighting, municipal health, job creation, eradication of poverty as well as financial sustainability.

These has to be achieved through the alignment of national and provincial priorities including the implementation of the District Development Model.

The Integrated Development Plan Review for the 2026/27 financial year has been prepared in compliance with the Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000 which compels municipalities the IDP as a singular inclusive and strategic development plan.

The 2026/27 IDP of the Waterberg District Municipality covers amongst others some of the following components:

- A municipal council's vision for the long term development of the district with special emphasis on the most critical development and internal transformation needs.
- An assessment of the existing level of development which include an identification of backlogs on access to basic service delivery needs.
- The district's developmental priorities including its local economic development aims.
- A financial plan which includes budget projection and revenue enhancement strategies.
- Key performance indicators and performance targets.

The municipality is therefore geared towards holding open and honest consultations with all stakeholders including Traditional Leaders and would like to appreciate the role they played in the entire process. The role played by communities is also appreciated by providing the necessary inputs in the development of this strategic document.

Service delivery and infrastructural development are ongoing processes, thus one will find that some of the operational programmes encapsulated in this IDP document are a continuation of activities from the previous Financial Year, whilst some have of necessity had to flow into the next Financial Year.

Although much still needs to be done to alleviate poverty, to create an environment that is conducive to economic growth, and to bring meaning and respectability to the lives of the diverse communities of Waterberg District, I am confident that this IDP document will provide us with the necessary signposts to help us find our direction in development and service delivery, as well as a reliable yardstick to measure our performance against the mandate that we have received from our people.

CLLR M.J. MAEKO
EXECUTIVE MAYOR



MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OVERVIEW

The 2026 /2027, Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is not a routine update. It is our single, binding strategy for planning, budgeting, and execution – mandated by Section 35 of the Municipal Systems Act and anchored in the constitutional imperative (Section 153) to prioritise basic needs and drive socio-economic transformation across every community we serve.

Our 2050 Vision is unambiguous: position Waterberg as Southern Africa's leading energy hub and eco-tourism destination. Through the District Development Model (DDM) One Plan, we are already aligning investment, infrastructure, and institutional capacity across our five local municipalities: Bela-Bela, Lephalale, Thabazimbi, Mogalakwena, and Modimolle-Mookgophong. Integration is no longer an aspiration; it is our operational discipline.

Our strategic focus for 2026/2027 is sharp and prioritised: Municipal health & environmental management, Air quality & climate resilience, Firefighting & disaster management, Abattoir & economic infrastructure, Local Economic growth & tourism, Community participation & good governance, financial viability Roads & stormwater, Institutional capacity, Sports, arts & culture, Water, sanitation, and electricity and Transport development.

The District as a C1 Category municipality is not a water service authority nor a provider. However, under Section 84 of the Municipal Structures Act and the coordination mandate of Section 88(2) of the MSA, we are the strategic integrator – aligning national, provincial, local, private sector, and civil society efforts. Our hand is on the lever of disaster management, firefighting services, municipal health, and district-wide planning. Where we do not have direct powers, we convene, we enforce, and we hold others accountable.

The District Development Model (DDM) is not a government slogan. Launched nationally in 2019, Waterberg was selected as a pilot district because of our economic weight and complexity. Today, the Waterberg DDM Hub is a functioning multi-stakeholder delivery platform – cutting through red tape, harmonising budgets, and ensuring that every rand spent advances our One Plan.

Over the past five years, Waterberg has consistently achieved "Highly Credible" IDP ratings, with every local municipality maintaining "Satisfactory" status and full IDP-SDBIP alignment. This is not merely a badge of honour – it is a standard we are obligated to defend and exceed.

The IDP is our "Bible of the Municipality". Collaboration must translate into concrete projects, completed on time and on budget. Through partnership and our collective focus, Waterberg will remain a beacon of growth, resilience, and sustainable development in Southern Africa.

MR. P RAPUTSOA
MUNICIPAL MANAGER



EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This document is the 2026/27 IDP review of the Waterberg District Municipality (WDM), and it represents the 5th review of the 5-year strategic plan of the Council. The strategic objectives and targets contained herein culminate from the extensive systematic and structured internal and external multi-stakeholder consultation through various Public Participation mechanisms with the Community and stakeholders within the Waterberg District Municipal area of Jurisdiction.

The Waterberg is not just a district; it is a national strategic asset poised for a multi-billion Rand transformation.

Strategically located in Limpopo, South Africa, the Waterberg District Municipality (WDM) presents a once-in-a-generation investment opportunity. As a designated pilot for the national District Development Model (DDM), Waterberg offers a unified, "One Plan, One Budget, One Approach" framework, de-risking investment through unprecedented inter-governmental coordination.

In terms of the Municipal Systems Act (MSA), Section 25(1), every Municipal Council must, within a set period after being elected, adopt a single, inclusive, and strategic plan for the development of the municipality. This plan must integrate and coordinate all other plans, align resources and capacity, and provide a clear roadmap for development.

The status of the IDP is defined in Section 35 of the Act, which makes it the municipality's principal strategic planning instrument. It guides all planning, management, and development decisions. The IDP is binding on the municipality, except where it conflicts with national or provincial legislation, in which case higher legislation prevails. Furthermore, Section 36 requires municipalities to give effect to their IDP and conduct their affairs in line with it.

The IDP is more than a legal requirement — it is the municipality's key tool for achieving developmental local governance. It ensures:

Strategic, participatory, and coordinated planning

Faster service delivery through stakeholder buy-in

A clear framework for government departments and social partners to align efforts

It also strengthens intergovernmental coordination, linking local priorities with provincial and national strategies. The IDP forms the backbone of municipal budgets, infrastructure projects, economic growth initiatives, social development, environmental sustainability, and poverty alleviation. In essence, it is the local expression of government's plan of action.

Our vision is definitive: "*To be the best energy hub and eco-tourism destination in Southern Africa.*" This is not an aspiration; it is a strategy backed by R75+ billion in identified catalytic projects, a wealth of untapped natural resources (40% of SA's remaining coal, vast PGM reserves, critical minerals for the EV revolution), and a UNESCO "Waterberg Biosphere Reserve" - a unique asset where conservation and commerce can thrive together.

Key Investment Highlights:

Strategic Location: A gateway to Southern Africa, sharing borders with Botswana and providing access to Gauteng's massive consumer market.

Resource Abundance: World-class mineral reserves (platinum, coal, iron ore) and the emerging "minerals of the future" (lithium, cobalt, rare earth elements).

Government Backing: A clean, unqualified audit opinion for the District and a formalized DDM Hub to fast-track investor approvals and cut through red tape.

Bankable Catalytic Projects: A pipeline of over 15 high-impact projects, including the R15 billion MCWAP water scheme, a proposed R360 million SABC film studio, and a R1.15 billion Smart City development.

Stable Governance: Demonstrated by consistent "Satisfactory" IDP ratings and functional oversight committees (MPAC, Audit Committee), ensuring accountability.



1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 BACKGROUND OF THE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)

Based on the 2026/2027 Process Plans, the Integrated Development Planning (IDP) guidelines for the upcoming cycle focus on strengthening the 5-year strategic framework (2026-2031) while initiating the 2026/2027 review. The process is mandated by the Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000) and aligns with the 2020 Revised IDP Guidelines from the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA).

Integrated Development Planning (IDP) is a strategic process through which municipalities formulate long-term development plans spanning a five-year cycle. An IDP at the district level is a strategic framework that guides development in a municipality. It ensures coordinated planning and resource allocation across local municipalities within the district.

It serves as a key tool for local government to fulfill its developmental mandate by guiding decisions related to:

- Municipal budgets
- Land management
- Promotion of local economic development
- Institutional transformation

These decisions are made through **consultative, systematic, and strategic processes**.

Origins and Legislative Foundation

The concept of Integrated Development Planning traces its roots to the **United Nations Conference on Environment and Development** (UNCED), held in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. The conference led to the adoption of Agenda 21, a blueprint for sustainable development. As part of global commitments, South Africa integrated the principles of Agenda 21 into municipal planning, forming its own Local Agenda 21—the foundation for IDPs.

The principles of Agenda 21 are embedded in South Africa's Constitution and reflected across various national legislative frameworks. Additionally, IDPs align with multiple global, regional, national, and provincial agreements and priorities, ensuring coherence in governance and development planning.

Legislative Requirements and Municipal Compliance

This IDP is aligned with the National Development Plan (NDP 2030), the District Development Model (DDM), and the priorities outlined in the 2026 State of the Nation Address (SONA). The SONA highlighted infrastructure renewal, economic resilience, and inclusive development as key drivers for South Africa's future. Waterberg District integrates these priorities into local strategies, ensuring coherence between national policy and district implementation.

According to the Municipal Systems Act (MSA) of 2000, all municipalities are legally required to develop IDPs. The IDP holds legal status, making it the overarching plan for development at the local government level.

The municipal budget, which translates the IDP into financial terms, is governed by the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), No. 56 of 2003. The Act outlines specific timeframes that municipalities must adhere to:

Key Budget Deadlines (MFMA)

Section 21(1)(b): By 1 September, the Mayor must present a time schedule in Council outlining key deadlines for:

Budget preparation, tabling, and approval

Annual IDP review (Section 34 of the Systems Act) and budget-related policies

Consideration of amendments to the IDP and budget policies

Section 16(2): By 1 April, the Mayor table the municipal budget at a Council meeting, ensuring sufficient deliberation before implementation.

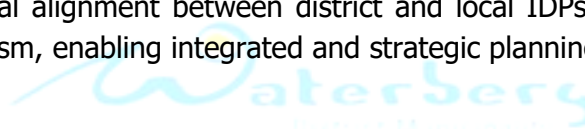
Section 24(1): By 1 June, the Council must consider and approve the annual budget.

Section 24(2)(a): By 1 July, the budget must be formally adopted before the start of the financial year.

Additionally, the MFMA provides for adjustment budgets, which allow municipalities to review and modify financial allocations mid-cycle—typically in December or January.

The Framework Plan: Strengthening Intergovernmental Coordination

The Framework Plan ensures mutual alignment between district and local IDPs to promote cooperative governance (Section 41 of the Constitution). It functions as a coordination mechanism, enabling integrated and strategic planning across municipalities for maximum developmental benefit.



Key Responsibilities of the Framework Plan

- **District Municipality:** Oversees the Framework Plan, securing agreement with local municipalities and guiding Process Plans.
- **Inter-Municipal IDP Management Committee (MC):** Monitors compliance across municipalities, facilitating corrective action when needed.
- **Local Municipalities:** Responsible for ensuring adherence to the Framework Plan and monitoring their own Process Plans.

Participating Local Municipalities:

- Thabazimbi Local Municipality (LIM361)
- Lephalale Local Municipality (LIM362)
- Bela-Bela Local Municipality (LIM366)
- Mogalakwena Local Municipality (LIM367)
- Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality (LIM368)

Each municipality has an IDP Manager to steer its respective IDP processes effectively.

IDP/Budget Review Process

In line with Section 34 of the MSA, municipal councils must annually review the IDP, based on performance evaluations and evolving circumstances. The review process includes:

- Strategic assessment of existing plans
- Alignment with budgetary cycles
- Adaptive consultations responsive to community needs

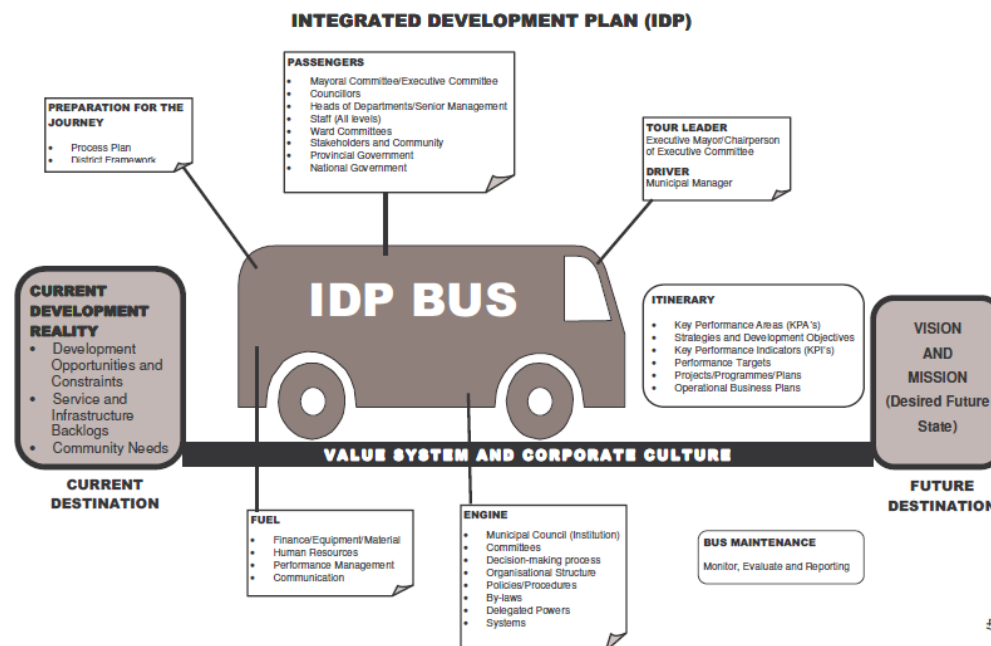
This dynamic approach spans over ten months, ensuring continued relevance and effectiveness in municipal governance and service delivery.

The diagram below illustrates the IDP Process, highlighting the interconnected phases—Preparation, Analysis, Strategies, Projects, Integration, and Approval—that ensure a structured, strategic, and participatory approach to municipal planning.





FIGURE 1: PHASES OF THE IDP REVIEW



MECHANISMS AND PROCEDURES FOR ALIGNMENT AND PARTICIPATION

OVERVIEW

Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 (4, 5), requires the IDP review process to involve an intensive and structured public and stakeholder's participation process. The aspect of public participation has been entrenched in the constitution and chapter 4 of the Municipal Systems Act as a legislative requirement. Participation by interested parties ensures that IDP addresses real issues that are experienced by communities within the local municipality.

The existing IDP Representative Forum will continue to be used as a mechanism for community and stakeholder participation. IDP representative forum meetings will be held four times per financial year at the District level, but however local municipalities ward conferences, consultation, imbizo's, and Representative Forum will be used by both District and Local Municipalities to deepen community and stakeholder participation. Due to the regulations

highlighted above the dates on the Framework/Process Plan may not be held as scheduled. Other mechanisms such as Social media platforms and Website will be used as a form of consultation.

A. Alignment with National and District Frameworks

The municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is firmly anchored in the principles of the National Development Plan (NDP 2030) and the District Development Model (DDM). The NDP provides the long-term vision for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality, while the DDM ensures coordinated planning and implementation across spheres of government.

This IDP translates national priorities into local action by:

Localizing NDP goals into municipal strategies for inclusive growth, infrastructure development, and improved service delivery.

Applying the DDM approach to strengthen intergovernmental collaboration, ensuring that municipal projects align with district-wide catalytic initiatives.

Integrating Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) to benchmark progress against global standards for sustainable cities, clean energy, and poverty reduction.

By embedding the NDP and DDM into this IDP, the municipality ensures that local development contributes directly to national transformation objectives, while fostering coherence and accountability across government levels.

B. Mechanisms and procedures for alignment

Alignment is at two levels, horizontal and vertical. Largely the two levels influence each other. Though one can be done independent from each other, if this is done, a clear picture of what is happening will not be achieved. The strategy that we are going to follow applies to both horizontal alignments between the District and Local Municipalities, and vertical, between the Municipalities, the Province and the National Departments and Parastatals. The alignment that is mentioned in here between Municipalities on the one hand involves ensuring that their planning activities and processes are co-ordinated and addressed jointly.

On the other hand, alignment between Local Government and other spheres of government as well as Parastatals or service providers ensures that the IDP is in line with National and Provincial Policies and Strategies so that it is considered for the allocation of departmental budgets and conditional grants. The District IDP should reflect the Integrated Planning in its IDP in which both Locals and Sector Departments' plans find an aligned expression in the document.

For both alignment types, Horizontal and Vertical, the main responsibility lies with the District Municipality. The role of the IDP Manager at the District level is of utmost importance. IDP unit and external facilitators could be used to support the alignment process. However, the provincial department of local government and office of the Premier play an important role as co-ordinator to ensure alignment above District level and between Districts and Departments within the Province.

Mechanisms for participation

i. IDP/Budget/PMS Representatives Forum (RF)

This Forum will represent all stakeholders and will be as inclusive as possible. Efforts will be made to bring additional organisations into the Representatives Forum (RF) and ensure their continued participation throughout the process. The Representatives Forum will meet as indicated in the attached programme.

- The first RF meeting will involve a presentation of the Process Plan as well as a Gap analysis identifying areas to be addressed in the IDP/Budget Process.
- The other two RF workshops will be held to provide feedback on the IDP/Budget/PMS Process as well as to acquire input from RF members on the Sector Plans and draft Budget.
- Ad-hoc RF meetings will be called as and when needed to inform the PMS Implementation process ie. Setting of targets etc.
- Inputs will be invited via the various Ward Committee meetings and Traditional Authority meetings in conjunction with the respective Local Municipality.

ii. Imbizos / Roadshows

The Waterberg District Municipality (WDM) actively joined the local municipalities' public consultations and road shows, while also conducting Representative Forums and stakeholder engagements. This initiative formed part of the consultation process from the draft to the final Waterberg IDP and Budget (2026/27). During this process, the Mayor and Municipal Officials at both District and Local Municipal levels met directly with residents to present and discuss the final IDPs and Budgets of the District and Local Municipalities. These meetings were widely publicised through the media to ensure transparency and inclusivity.

Various Fora

This is an ongoing consultative process and involves the assimilation of issues raised at the various Fora established at the District and Local level which range from Water Forums, Summits to Community Based meetings.

Media Engagement

Local newspapers will serve as a key communication channel to keep the community informed about the progress of the IDP/Budget/PMS process. To ensure stakeholder participation, public notices will be published at both the initiation and completion stages of the process. These notices will:

- Announce the commencement of the IDP/Budget/PMS process, inviting stakeholders to participate.
- Provide an opportunity for public comment on the final draft IDP/Budget, ensuring transparency and inclusivity.

This media strategy will help broaden community engagement, ensuring that all residents and interested parties remain informed and involved.

Information Booklets

At the completion of each of the Sector Plans, as well as the IDP/Budget/PMS, an information booklet will be prepared in the two dominant languages, namely Northern Sotho and English and consist of a summary of the IDP/Budget/PMS. The members of the Representative Forum, Officials and Councillors will be given copies of these information booklets and will assist in the distribution of the booklets. This should include some training on the content of the booklets to make them more meaningful to the general public. Waterberg District Municipality has included Braille in order to accommodate the people living with disability (blind) to have access to the IDP document.

Virtual Platforms and Social Media

To enhance public engagement and accessibility, various virtual platforms and social media channels are utilized throughout the IDP/Budget/PMS process. These include:

Social Media: Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, and WhatsApp

Virtual Meeting Platforms: Zoom and Microsoft Teams

Strategic meetings are conducted in a hybrid format, while virtual platform sessions may be held either in a hybrid form or entirely online.

Where applicable, additional platforms may be explored to ensure broad participation and effective communication. The municipality remains open to adopting further tools that support inclusive and transparent stakeholder engagement.

Website

The Waterberg District Municipality and its affiliated Local Municipalities actively utilize their official website to provide essential information and updates.

- The website serves as a key resource for:
- Public notices and municipal announcements
- Access to IDP/Budget/PMS documents
- Stakeholder engagement and consultation details
- Policy updates and legislative frameworks

The Waterberg District Municipality website : <https://www.waterberg.gov.za/>

TABLE 1: THE ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE

Internal Role Players and Responsibilities	
Council	•The Municipal Council is the ultimate political decision-making body responsible for adoption of the process plan. •Adoption, and approve the IDP/Budget before the start of the financial year. •Council is responsible for ensuring public consultation and engagement during the drafting and review process. •Approve unforeseen and unavoidable expenses.
Executive Mayor and the elected Exco Members	•Manage the drafting of the IDP; •Assign responsibilities in this regard to the Municipal Manager; •Submit the draft Framework Plan and Process Plan to the Council for adoption; •Submit the final draft IDP to the Council for adoption and approval; •Preparation of Framework Plan; •Preparation of the Process Plan;
Municipal Manager	•Day-to-day management and coordination of the IDP process in terms of time, resources and people, and ensuring: •The involvement of all relevant role-players, especially officials; •That the timeframes are being adhered to; •That the planning process is horizontally and vertically aligned and complies with national and provincial requirements; •That conditions for participation are provided; and •That the outcomes are documented. •Chairing the IDP Steering Committee;
IDP Steering Committee	IDP Steering Committee The IDP Steering Committee consists of a technical working team of dedicated officials who support the Municipal Manager or Strategic Manager to ensure a smooth planning process. Although the Municipal

	Manager is ultimately responsible for the IDP process, they often delegate functions to officials who form part of the Steering Committee. Chairperson: Municipal Manager Secretariat: The secretariat for this function is provided by the IDP Members: Heads of Departments (HODs) Responsibilities: The IDP Steering Committee is responsible for: •Commissioning research studies. •Reviewing and providing feedback on: •Inputs from subcommittees and cluster teams. •Inputs from provincial sector departments and support providers. •Processing, summarizing, and drafting outputs. •Making recommendations to the IDP Representative Forum. •Preparing, facilitating, and recording meeting minutes. •Preparing and submitting reports to the IDP Representative Forum.
External Role Players and Responsibilities	
IDP Representative Forum	The IDP Representative Forum comprises of WDM and its local municipalities, representatives from sector departments, parastatal bodies, NGOs, business people, traditional leaders, and other interested organized bodies. Chairperson: The Executive Mayor or a nominee Secretariat The secretariat for this function is provided by the IDP Unit Membership:
District IDP Management Committee(MC)	Invitations are submitted to the same members as the previous year, including the representatives of the consultative for a Monitor, evaluate progress & provide feedback. •Provide technical guidance to IDP process at district level. •Ensure and maintain Alignment. •Standardise the planning process. •Recommends corrective measures
Social, Institutional & Transformation and Infrastructure & LED Clusters, Climate change Committee	•Ensure both vertical and horizontal alignment •Integrated planning and implementation co-ordination
Government Departments	•Provide sector data and information •Provide sector Budget. •Alignment of budgets with the IDP. •Provide technical and professional support

Implementation, Reporting and Monitoring and Evaluation

It is expected of the District and all the Local Municipalities **to adhere to the timeframes as set out in the programme** above. In terms of monitoring, the district and local Municipalities are expected to submit and make a presentation to the District Management Committee (DMC) which is comprised of all the IDP Managers within the District. That is, the IDP managers of Bela-Bela, Modimolle-Mookgophong, Mogalakwena, Thabazimbi, and Lephalale Local Municipalities. The WDM will hold its meeting as per the above schedule. The process followed in reviewing the Waterberg District Municipal IDP is demonstrated below as per the 2026/2027 IDP/Budget Framework/Process Plan approved by Council on 28 August 2025.

Table 2: Phases of the IDP Review/Development

Phases	Process	Outputs	Timeframe
Pre-planning	During this phase, Waterberg District Municipality developed its IDP and Budget Review Framework and Process Plan in collaboration with its local municipalities and relevant stakeholders. This Framework and Process Plan outlines the key timelines and provides a clear roadmap for how the 2026/27 Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and Budget Review processes will be conducted across the district.	• IDP Process Plan • District Framework for Integrated Development Planning	4 weeks (Jul-Aug) IDP/Budget Framework and Process Plan adopted on the 28 August 2025.
Phase 1: Analysis	This phase focuses on assessing current development conditions in Waterberg District, identifying service delivery gaps, key priorities, and challenges. The outcome is a comprehensive IDP Status Quo or Situational Analysis Report.	This phase involves: • Assessing the current level of development in the district. • Identifying key priority issues and development challenges. • Analyzing the root causes of these priority issues. • Gathering relevant data to inform strategic planning. The findings will form the basis of the IDP Status Quo or Situational Analysis Report.	September to November The district held its analysis phase session on 20 November 2025
Phase 2: Strategy	Departmental and management strategic planning sessions are held to review municipal strategies, long-term development goals, priority projects, and	The strategic planning phase includes the development and review of:	Jan to March The strategic planning process for the IDP review takes place mainly

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

	budget allocations. These sessions guide the alignment of departmental plans with the overall objectives of the IDP.	The Vision: A long-term outlook for the district's development. Objectives: Clear goals aimed at addressing key development needs. Strategies: Broad approaches to achieve the set objectives. Draft Projects: Proposed initiatives aligned with the vision and strategies.	between January and March, following a two-month preparation phase (December–February). Key sessions are scheduled as follows: Departmental Strategic Planning: February 2026. Management Strategic Planning: February 2026 Mayoral Strategic Planning: 10–12 March 2026
Phase 3: Projects	This phase focuses on compiling a detailed list of projects identified during the strategic planning phase. Each project is aligned with the municipality's objectives, strategies, and development priorities to ensure effective implementation of the IDP.	During this phase, each identified project is further defined to include: • Performance Indicators: Measures to track progress and impact. • Project Outputs, Targets, and Location: Clear deliverables, goals, and areas of implementation. • Project Activities & Time Schedule: Key actions and timelines for delivery. • Cost & Budget Estimates: Financial requirements and budget allocations.	April to May 2026
Phase 4: Integration	The district engaged with local municipalities and sector departments to facilitate the integration of plans in a cohesive, inclusive, and continuous manner.	• 5-yr financial plan; • 5-yr capital investment programme for each local municipality; • Integrated Spatial Development framework; • Integrated sectoral programme/projects;	1 April to 23 May 2026

		• Consolidated monitoring/performance management system; • Disaster management plan; • Institutional plan; • Reference to sector plans.	
Phase 5: Approval	Adoption and Approval of the 1 st Draft IDP/Budget	An approved IDP	Draft IDP- 26 March 2026
	After the approval of the Draft IDP/Budget, Waterberg District Municipality held Public Consultation Sessions to ensure broad stakeholder engagement. These stakeholders include Traditional Leaders, Sector Departments, Parastatals, Business and Academic Institutions, as well as NGO/CBOs. During these sessions, stakeholders provide inputs and comments, which are incorporated into the Final Draft IDP. The consolidated feedback from all stakeholders—both within and outside the district—is reported back during the consultation phase, culminating in the final IDP Representative Forum before the document is submitted for Council approval.	Consolidated inputs from all the stakeholders within and outside the District.	April to May 2026
	Approval Final IDP/Budget by Municipal Council.	An approved IDP	Final Approval – 28 May 2026.

1.2 LEGISLATIVE BACKGROUND AND POLICY IMPERATIVES

According to the Municipal Systems Act No. 32 of 2000 section 25, it states that the IDP must be aligned with national and provincial development plans and planning requirements. Thus, this IDP is developed in terms of what the under listed pieces of legislation envisage.

A. POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK

IDP is a management tool for assisting municipalities in achieving their developmental mandates. Every municipality is required by law to develop and adopt its IDP through the legal frame work provided. The following pieces of legislations outline the development and implementation of the IDP.

A1. CONSTITUTION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA (Act 108 of 1996)

Section 151 of the Constitution, states that developmental local government should make provision for a democratic and accountable government for communities. It also encourages municipalities to ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustained manner in order to promote social and economic development.

Local government must promote a safe and healthy environment and encourage community involvement in matters of local government such as municipal transport, municipal health services, municipal roads, and municipal parks and recreation. Section 152 of the Constitution says that local government should provide democratic and accountable government for local communities. It should ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner, promote a safe and healthy environment as well as encourage the involvement of communities and community organizations in matters of local government. Section 153 of the Constitution states that each municipality should structure and manage its administration, budgeting, and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community and to promote the social and economic development of the community. Municipalities should participate in national and provincial programmes and infrastructure development programmes. Section 153 of the Constitution also encourages municipalities to involve communities in their affairs.

A2. WHITE PAPER ON TRANSFORMING PUBLIC SERVICE DELIVERY (BATHO PELE WHITE PAPER OF 1997)

The paper flows from the White Paper on the Transformation of Public Service (1995). In terms of the White Paper, transforming service delivery is identified as one of government's priority areas. The White Paper is primarily about how public services are provided, and specifically about the efficiency and effectiveness of the way in which services are delivered. It "seeks to introduce a fresh approach to service delivery, an approach which puts pressure on systems, procedures, attitudes and behaviour within the Public Service and reorients them in the customer's favour, an approach which puts the people first". The introduction of the concept of Batho Pele, which means putting people first, provides the following eight service delivery principles in an attempt to ensure that the people, as customers to the public institutions, come first.

FURTHERMORE, THE ADOPTION OF THE CONCEPT "CUSTOMER" IMPLIES:

Listening to their views and taking account of them in making decisions about what services are to be provided;
Treating them with consideration and respect;
Making sure that the promised level and quality of services is always of the highest standard; and
Responding swiftly and sympathetically when standards of service fall below the promised standard.

In giving effect to the notion of treating the recipients of government services as customers, the White Paper articulates that public sector, including the local government sphere, should be governed by the following ethos (principles):

Consultation: citizens should be consulted about the level and quality of the public service they receive and wherever possible, should be given a choice about the services that are offered;

Service Standards: Citizens should be told what level and quality of public services they would receive so that they are aware of what to expect;

Access: All citizens should have equal access to the services to which they are entitled;

Courtesy: Citizens should be treated with courtesy and consideration; **Information:** Citizens should be given full, accurate information about the public services that are entitled to receive;

Openness and transparency: Citizens should be told how the national and provincial departments are run, how much they cost, who is in charge;

Redress: If the promised standard of service is not delivered, citizens should be offered an apology, a full explanation and a speedy and effective remedy, when complaints are made, citizens should receive a sympathetic, positive response;

Value for money: Public services should be provided economically and efficiently in order to give citizens the best possible value for money.

A3. WHITE PAPER ON LOCAL GOVERNMENT (1998)

The White Paper on Local Government (1998) paper views that Integrated Development Planning as a way of achieving developmental government. The Integrated Development Planning intends to:

- Align scarce resources around agreed policy objectives;
- Ensure integration between sectors with local government;
- Enable alignment between provincial and local government and
- Ensure transparent interaction between municipalities and residents, making local government accountable (RSA, 1998, 18).

The paper establishes a basis for developmental local government, in which, "local government is committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives". It also encourages public consultation on policy formulation and in the monitoring and evaluation of decision – making and implementation.

A.4. MUNICIPAL SYSTEMS ACT (Act 32 of 2000, as amended)

The Act regulates the IDP. It requires the municipality to undertake developmentally oriented planning so as to ensure that it strives to achieve the objectives of local government set out in Section 152 and 153 of the Constitution. Section 25 (1) requires the Municipal Council, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, to adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality which:

Links, integrates, coordinates and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality;
Aligns the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the plan;
Forms the policy framework and general basis on which annual budgets must be based;
Complies with the provisions of Chapter 5, and
Is compatible with the national and provincial department plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation.
Section 26 of the Act further outlines the core components of the integrated development plan of a municipality. It requires the integrated development plan of the municipality to reflect:

The municipal council's vision for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation needs;

An assessment of the existing level of development in the municipality, which must include an identification of communities which do not have access to basic municipal services;

The council's development priorities and objectives for its elected term;

The council's development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of the legislations;

The council's development strategies which must be aligned with any national or provincial sector plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of the legislations;

A spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system of the municipality;

The council's operational strategies;

Applicable disaster management plan;

A financial plan, which must include budget project for at least the next three years, and

The key performance indicators and performance targets determined in terms of section 41.



A.5. MUNICIPAL FINANCE MANAGEMENT ACT (ACT 56 OF 2003)

The Municipal Finance Management Act (56 of 2003) was promulgated to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of municipalities and other institutions in the local sphere of government. The Act provides a mandatory provision that relate to financial and performance management. Section 2 of the Act stipulates that the object is to secure sound and sustainable management of the financial affairs of the local government institutions to which this Act applies by establishing norms and standards for:

Ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities;

The management of revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities and the handling of financial dealings, budgetary and financial planning processes;

The coordination of those processes with those of the other spheres of government,

Borrowing;

Supply chain management; and

Other financial matters.

Waterberg District Municipality's involvement in the budget process is to ensure compliance with the provision of the Municipal Finance Management Act. It is crucial that the IDP review process facilitate community participation, provide ward level information, encourage discussion on priorities and provide an opportunity for feedback.

The government's review of the White Paper on Local Government aims to modernize municipal governance by addressing service delivery failures, financial sustainability, and governance inefficiencies, ensuring municipalities are more effective and accountable. Public engagement is open until June 30, 2025, with the final revised policy expected by March 2026.

THE MAIN STRATEGIC OUTPUTS OF THE BUDGET REFORM ARE TO ENSURE:

Modernizing financial management and improving accountability;

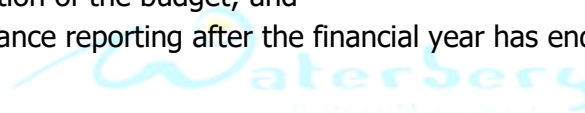
Multi – year budgeting;

Deepening and improving the budget preparation process, by involving the political leadership and community;

Ensuring that the IDP and budgets are linked, and that the IDP takes account of budgetary resources, and contain proper capital and maintenance plans;

Improving the in – year implementation of the budget; and

Improving the auditing and performance reporting after the financial year has ended.



A.6. TRADITIONAL LEADERSHIP AND GOVERNANCE FRAMEWORK AMENDMENT ACT (ACT 41 of 2003)

This Act makes clear the role of the traditional leadership in the democratic and co – operative governance. The Act envisages an active involvement of the traditional leadership in the formulation and the implementation of the integrated development plans. Section 4 of the Act provides for the establishment of traditional councils that should:

Support municipalities in the identification of community needs;

Facilitate the involvement of the traditional community in the development or amendment of the integrated development plan of a municipality in whose area that community resides;

Participate in the development of policy and legislation at the local level; and

Promote the ideals of co – operative governance, integrated development planning, sustainable development and service delivery to promote indigenous knowledge systems for sustainable development and disaster management.

Section 5 (2) of the Act affirms that any partnership between a municipality and a traditional council must:

- a. Be based on the principles of mutual respect and recognition of the status and roles of the respective parties; and
- b. Be guided by and based on the principles of co – operative governance.

One village resides in traditional authority governed area. To this effect, Bela Bela Municipality has involved the traditional leader in both the IDP review process and any other developmental matter involving their areas of governance.

A.7. INTER – GOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS FRAMEWORK ACT (ACT 13 of 2005)

The Act is a response to the limited successes in the alignment efforts among the three spheres of government. The Act creates a framework to support intergovernmental cooperation and coordination as required by the Constitution in its definition of “cooperative governance”. It provides for the obligation of all spheres to participate in the planning processes of the municipality and in turn allow their own planning processes to be influenced by the municipal IDP’s. Municipal IDPs are regarded as important planning frameworks to integrate both the national and provincial programme in specific local area. The municipality is participating in the district – planning forum, district – municipal managers’ forum, district – mayor’s forum and as well as in the Premier’s Intergovernmental Forum. The participation is aimed at ensuring proper alignment and coordination of local, district and provincial plans. The Act establishes structures and processes that enhance inter – governmental planning and monitoring processes for local, provincial and national spheres of governance.

A.8. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A municipality's Performance Management System provides a structured approach to planning, measuring, reviewing, reporting, and improving performance. It defines roles and ensures processes are effectively organized and managed.

Key Aspects of Implementation:

- **Integration with the IDP:** Political leaders, managers, and staff must actively embrace and implement the Integrated Development Plan (IDP).
- **Structured Performance Planning:** Clearly define objectives, outputs, and performance expectations, with measurable standards and targets.
- **Ongoing Performance Assessment:** Monitor, measure, and evaluate progress to enhance efficiency and effectiveness.

Alignment with Strategic Goals:

- Ensure municipal employees understand their contributions.
- Optimize resource allocation for economic, effective service delivery.
- Involve communities and stakeholders in decision-making and evaluation.
- Foster continuous learning, improvement, transparency, and accountability.
- Uphold Batho Pele principles, promoting good governance and service excellence.

POLICIES AND LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORKS

TABLE 3: BINDING LEGISLATION, POLICIES AND PLANNING REQUIREMENTS AT NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL LEVEL



Category	Legislation & Policies
National Legislative Framework	Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)
Local Government	Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998), Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000), Municipal Finance Management Act (Act 56 of 2003), etc.
Finance	Division of Revenue Act (Act 1 of 2007), Public Finance Management Act (Act 2 of 1999), Municipal Finance Management Act (Act 56 of 2003)
Land and Agriculture	Development Facilitation Act (Act 67 of 1995), Land Use Management Bill (2001), White Paper on Agriculture (1995)
Transport	National Land Transport Bill (1999), National Land Transport Transitional Act (1999), White Paper on National Transport Policy (1996)
Housing	Housing Act (Act 107 of 1997)
Water and Sanitation	Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997), National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998), National Water Amendment Act (Act 45 of 1999)
Provincial Legislative Framework (Limpopo)	Limpopo Employment Growth, Limpopo Development Plan, Provincial Spatial Development Framework
Environmental, Forestry, and Climate Policy	National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998), Climate Change Act (Act 22 of 2024), White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management (2000)
Tourism	White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism (1996), Tourism in Gear (1997)

1.3 THE IDP STRATEGIC APPROACH AND ALIGNMENT WITH ALL SPHERES OF GOVERNMENT

The development of IDP is informed by international, national, provincial and local strategic policies. The developmental goals of such policy frameworks have informed the development of the municipality's strategic direction in order to ensure vertical and horizontal alignment. This report is also informed by relevant developmental policies presented in the Table below.



TABLE 4: LIST OF POLICY FRAMEWORKS APPLICABLE TO WDM

KEY POLICIES /STRATEGIES/ PLANS
• Global Frameworks: 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) ; Agenda 2063: The Africa We Want
• National Frameworks: National Development Plan (Vision 2030); Medium Term Strategic Framework ; New growth plan; National Spatial Development Perspective.
• Provincial and District Frameworks: Limpopo Development Plan; Spatial Development Framework; State of the Nation (SONA), Province (SOPA), State of the District Address (SODA) and Budget speeches); Local Government Strategic Agenda; District Development Model (One Plan, One Budget, One Approach); Municipalities Integrated Development Plans

1.3.2 SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS

In September 2015, the United Nations General Assembly adopted the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, which outlines 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). Rooted in the principle of “leaving no one behind,” the Agenda promotes a holistic and inclusive approach to achieving sustainable development for all, including persons with disabilities.

The SDGs as shown in Figure below provide a global framework for sustainable development, guiding municipal IDPs toward inclusive growth, resilient infrastructure, and environmental sustainability. By aligning local priorities with these goals, municipalities can enhance economic development, improve healthcare and education, expand access to resources, drive innovation, and foster transparent governance, ensuring impactful and sustainable policies.

The WDM is one of the municipalities that are nominated to Localisation of United Nations Sustainable Development Goals. These goals are outlined below, as 17 SDGs which Country Reports are development by the signatories.





Figure 2: The 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) – A Global Framework to Transform Our World

#Envision2030: Advancing Inclusion Through the 17 Sustainable Development Goals

1.3.1 TRANSFORMING OUR WORLD: THE 2030 AGENDA FOR SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT IN WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

The Sustainable Development Goals are a universal commitment to create a more equal, wealthy, and sustainable world. Adopted by 193 UN member countries at the 2015 Sustainable Development Summit, these 17 goals and 169 targets are a blueprint for progress, spanning economic growth, social inclusion, and environmental sustainability.

Although these goals are global in nature, their realization is dependent on local action. Each country—and indeed each municipality—must adapt them to its own realities, capacities, and priorities. For the Waterberg District Municipality, this means integrating the SDGs into our Integrated Development Plan (IDP) so that they serve our communities, economy, and environment. Our challenge is not only to acknowledge the SDGs but to turn them into a living

reality—through infrastructure, conservation initiatives, and social services that give a voice to the most vulnerable. In adopting this agenda, we progress from past initiatives, such as the Millennium Development Goals, so that no one in our district will be left behind.

As Waterberg moves ahead, the principles of the 2030 Agenda will help to shape policy decisions, resource distribution, and strategic alliances towards a sustainable future that reflects our local priorities while contributing to global progress.

The Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) will shape the trajectory of economic and social progress across the globe from 2016 to 2030. Sustainable development is achieved when there is a balance among three key elements: environmental sustainability, economic sustainability, and socio-political sustainability. In contrast to the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), the SDGs will rely on collaborations among governments, civil society, and the private sector. Member States have embraced the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development along with Agenda 2063: The Africa We Want from the African Union. They are urged to consistently evaluate their implementation frameworks and mechanisms to promote inclusive growth and development. The 2030 Agenda encourages member States to carry out regular, inclusive, country-led, and country-driven assessments of their progress at both national and subnational levels. This review process should be thorough and founded on reliable evidence and accurate data.

This involves civil society, the private sector, academia, women, children, youth, and other pertinent groups. To achieve all 17 Sustainable Development Goals, a comprehensive, rights-based, and gender-sensitive approach to development is necessary. The President of the Economic and Social Council encourages countries to officially present their voluntary national reviews at the high-level political forum on sustainable development, which takes place annually under the auspices of the UN Council. The Voluntary Local Review (VLR) assesses the implementation of the SDGs in a specific local context, allowing local governments to determine their unique priorities. This initiative began with cities seeking to enhance the Voluntary National Reviews (VNRs) and track progress toward the 2030 Agenda. In 2018, both New York and three municipalities in Japan were among the first to participate.

Unlike the VNR, the VLR process lacks an official relationship with the UN reporting framework. As a result, there are no rigid requirements, guidelines, or procedures for executing and reporting the VLR. The WDM initiated its inaugural Voluntary Review in 2024 and made slight revisions in 2025, collaborating with various organizations: SALGA, African Monitor Network (NGO group), National COGTA, and the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP). The municipality is currently evaluating its VLR to submit it to SALGA for inclusion in the Voluntary National Review, which will be presented at the High-Level Political Forum in July 2026. The WDM is in the process of reviewing its VLR for submission to SALGA for inclusion in the Voluntary National Review to be presented at the High Level Political Forum in July 2026.

1.3.3 AGENDA 2063: THE AFRICA WE WANT

A global strategy to optimize Africa's resources for the benefit of all Africans

Agenda 2063 serves as a transformative blueprint for Africa's socio-economic development, ensuring that past lessons inform present actions and future aspirations. Rooted in inclusive growth and sustainable progress, the framework fosters discussions among all stakeholders to shape a prosperous Africa.

The WDM IDP for 2026/2027 is aligned with this strategic vision, incorporating long-term, evidence-based planning to capitalize on available opportunities across the short, medium, and long term. By strategically leveraging resources, fostering economic resilience, and promoting sustainable development, WDM aims to contribute to Africa's collective transformation over the next 50 years.

Annexures 3 and 4 of the Agenda 2063 Framework outline key goals, priority areas, targets, and indicative strategies that guide the integration of its aspirations into municipal planning. The Waterberg District Municipality IDP embraces these aspirations as follows:

- A prosperous Waterberg District—anchored in inclusive economic growth, equitable resource distribution, and sustainable development.
- An integrated district aligned with Pan-African ideals—leveraging regional cooperation and developmental partnerships to strengthen governance.
- Commitment to good governance and democratic principles—ensuring transparency, justice, and rule of law in municipal processes.
- A peaceful and secure district—strengthening social cohesion and community safety initiatives.
- A district that celebrates its cultural identity—preserving heritage, promoting ethical leadership, and reinforcing shared values.
- A people-driven approach to development—empowering youth, women, and marginalized groups in decision-making and economic participation.
- Waterberg as a strategic player in Africa's development—positioning the district as a resilient and influential hub for sustainable growth.

1.3.4 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN: VISION FOR 2030

The South African Government Cabinet in 2012 endorsed the National Development Plan (NDP), to serve as a guideline for the work that still needs to be accomplished to achieve the desired outcomes in respect of socio-economic development and growth of this nation by the year 2030. The NDP aims to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. The NDP gives a vision for the long term and points towards the role that the different sectors of society need to play in order to achieve that vision. Municipal IDPs should be employed more strategically in order to call attention to main priorities of the NDP that concern the mandate of local government such as spatial planning, infrastructure, and basic services. IDPs should point out areas of the NDP that are central to a municipality's mandate.





Figure 3: Thirteen (13) National Development Plan Priorities

The Waterberg District Municipality IDP for 2026/2027 aligns with Agenda 2063, Africa's long-term strategy for socio-economic transformation. By leveraging resources, fostering sustainable development, and promoting economic resilience, the IDP contributes to Africa's collective growth. The plan integrates key principles, including inclusive prosperity, good governance, regional cooperation, social cohesion, cultural preservation, and people-driven development, ensuring Waterberg plays a strategic role in Africa's future.

1.3.5 THE GOVERNMENT OF NATIONAL UNITY PRIORITIES

The South African Government of National Unity has set three strategic priorities to address in the next five years.

- **Foster Inclusive Growth and Job Creation:** This priority aims to stimulate economic growth, create employment, and promote inclusivity to ensure that all South Africans benefit from the economic growth of the nation.

- **Reduce Poverty and Cost of Living:** The government will come up with strategies to reduce poverty, equality, and cushion the effect of the high cost of living among the poor.
- **Build an Able, Moral, and Developmental State:** This agenda is based on improving the ability of the state to deliver services, moral leadership, and stimulate development through effective planning and implementation.

1.3.6 Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024–2029

The Medium Term Development Plan (MTDP) 2024–2029 sets South Africa’s strategic priorities for the next five years, focusing on building “A Nation That Works for All.” Its core priorities include economic transformation and job creation, improved service delivery, social protection, sustainable development, and strengthened governance.

Key Priorities of the MTDP 2024–2029

- Economic Transformation & Job Creation
- Service Delivery & Human Development
- Social Protection & Inclusion
- Sustainable Development & Climate Action
- Governance, Accountability & Institutional Capacity

Alignment with Waterberg District Context

The MTDP priorities resonate strongly with:

- Energy hub development: Leveraging Limpopo’s role in renewable energy and mining transition.
- Eco-tourism and agriculture: Supporting catalytic projects that align with local comparative advantages.
- Municipal capacity building: Addressing persistent challenges in planning cycles, participation gaps, and service delivery.

1.3.7 BACK TO BASICS: SERVING OUR COMMUNITIES BETTER

The Presidential Local Government Summit adopted the Back-to-Basics intervention in September 2014 as a short-term action plan to create effective local government to enhance service delivery to communities by getting the basics right. Municipal government has been a key focus for service delivery in South

Africa since 1994. The Department of Cooperative Governance (DCoG) was tasked with strengthening and developing the capability and accountability of the municipalities. The department has developed a set of indicators for reporting monthly based on the pillars of the Back-to-Basics strategy. These indicators will indicate whether and how municipalities are doing on the five 'basics'.

Five (5) Pillars of the Back to Basics

- Putting people and their needs first.
- Building institutional resilience and administrative capacity.
- Providing effective financial management and accounting; and
- Promoting good governance, transparency, and accountability.
- Enabling the delivery of municipal services to the right quality and standard.

In alignment with this national directive, the Waterberg District Municipality actively participates in and facilitates the Back-to-Basics initiative in collaboration with local municipalities. Through this engagement, WDM remains committed to strengthening governance, improving service delivery, and ensuring sustainable municipal development in line with the five foundational pillars.

1.3.8 TWELVE NATIONAL OUTCOMES

In particular, the WDM aligns with Outcome 9 in the IDP by promoting responsive, accountable, effective, and efficient local governance, particularly by enhancing service delivery, strengthening ward committee systems, and building administrative and financial capacity.

- Outcome 1: Improved quality of basic education.
- Outcome 2: A long and healthy life for all South Africans.
- Outcome 3: All South Africans are and feel safe.
- Outcome 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth.
- Outcome 5: A capable and skilled workforce to underpin an inclusive growth path.
- Outcome 6: An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network.
- Outcome 7: Vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all.
- Outcome 8: Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life.
- **Outcome 9: A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system.**
 - ❖ Output 1: Implement a differentiated approach to municipal financing, planning and support.
 - ❖ Output 2: Improving access to basic services.

- ❖ Output 3: Roll-out of the Community Work Programme.
- ❖ Output 4: Activities in support of the human settlement outcome.
- ❖ Output 5: Strengthen democracy through an improved Ward Committee model
- ❖ Output 6: Administrative and financial capacity
- ❖ Output 7: A window of coordination.
- Outcome 10: Well-protected environmental assets and natural resources continuously developed.
- Outcome 11: Develop a better South Africa and a better and safer Africa and World.
- Outcome 12: An efficient, effective and development-oriented public service and an empowered, equitable, and inclusive citizenship.

1.3.9 REVIEWED LIMPOPO DEVELOPMENT PLAN (LDP)

The province has developed the Limpopo Development Plan 2020-2025 to guide integrated planning, resource allocation and service delivery for the 6th term of administration. The LDP Development Strategy is defined in terms of the following eight (8) priorities, as aligned with the MTSF priorities for making a contribution towards the achievement of the overall NDP Vision 2030:

Eight (8) Priorities of the LDP 2020-2025

- Transform the public service for the provision of effective and efficient service.
- Provincial economy modernisation and transformation
- Quality education system and quality health care
- Integrated and sustainable socio-economic infrastructure development
- Accelerate social change and improve the quality of the lives of Limpopo's people.
- Spatial transformation towards integrated socio-economic development
- Boost crime prevention and social cohesion.
- Creation of jobs and economic transformation via regional integration.

In support of this provincial framework, the Waterberg District Municipality aligns its developmental agenda with the Limpopo Development Plan 2020-2025. Through collaboration with provincial stakeholders and other sector departments, WDM actively contributes to achieving the LDP's eight priorities, ensuring integrated planning, sustainable resource allocation, and enhanced service delivery for the district's communities.



1.3.10 DISTRICT DEVELOPMENT MODEL WATERBERG DISTRICT ONE PLAN

Overview of the District Development Model (DDM)

The DDM was launched in the Waterberg in Lephalale Local Municipality on 26 November 2019, followed by the establishment of the DDM Hub on 5 September 2020 to institutionalize integrated development and service delivery.

The model is designed to strengthen cooperative governance through aligned planning, budgeting, and implementation across national, provincial, and local government. By integrating stakeholder and community involvement, the DDM drives a capable, ethical, and responsive developmental state.

Purpose of the Waterberg District One Plan

The Waterberg One Plan operationalizes the DDM, aiming to:

- Enhance **service delivery and development impact** through joint planning and collaborative budgeting.
- Achieve the **National Development Plan (NDP)** objectives, aligning with **NSDF, IUDF**, and other socio-economic policies.
- Develop a **cohesive vision** addressing **current and future challenges** in Waterberg.
- Restructure the local economy from **mining and agriculture** to **manufacturing and beneficiation**.
- Create an **investment-friendly environment**.
- Stabilize governance and **financial management practices**.
- **Capacitate vulnerable groups** (women, youth, and persons with disabilities) through skills development.
- Prioritize **infrastructure planning, maintenance, and expansion**.

The One Plan and Waterberg's Strategic Position

The One Plan provides a framework to coordinate public and private investment across six DDM Transformation Areas:

- Demographic Change & People Development
- Economic Positioning
- Spatial Restructuring & Environmental Sustainability
- Infrastructure Engineering
- Integrated Service Provisioning
- Governance & Management



By fostering a self-reinforcing sustainability cycle, the Waterberg One Plan seeks to position the district as a well-managed, investment-friendly, and diversified economy. The One Plan formulation process followed the seven DDM stages roadmap as depicted in the following diagram.

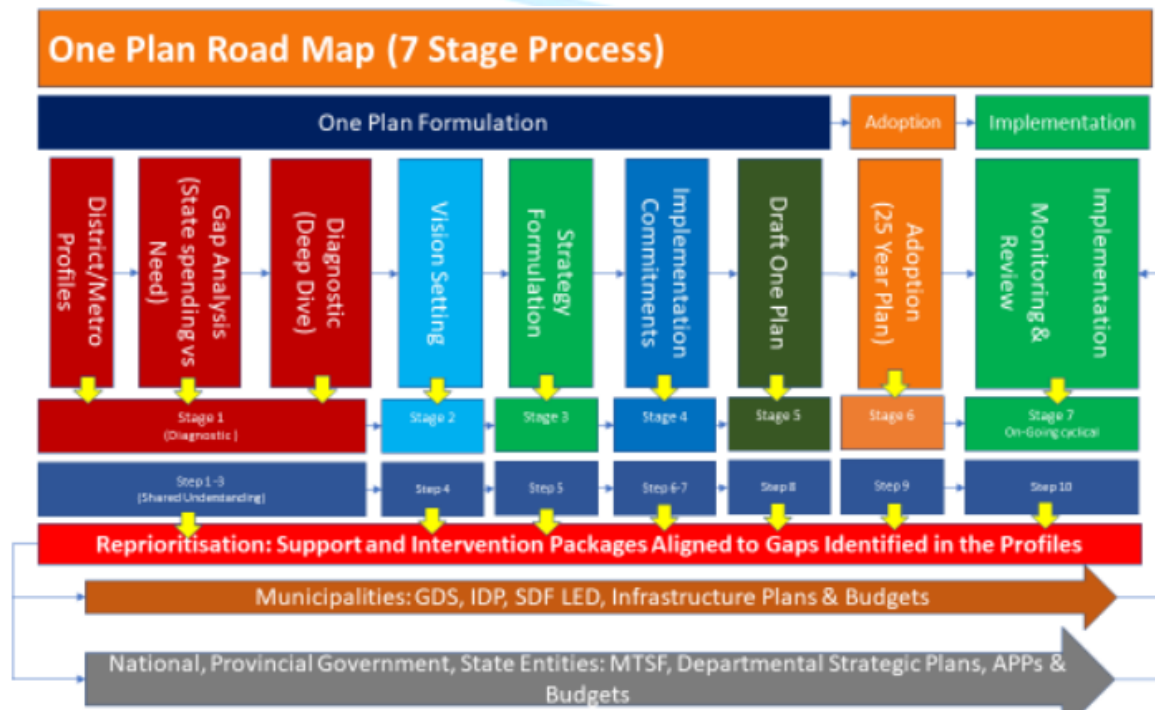


FIGURE 4:The DDM road map process

Strategic Vision for Waterberg

The WDM stands at a unique geographic and economic crossroads, leveraging its proximity to Gauteng, international trade routes, mineral resources, and world heritage sites. The One Plan envisions a balanced economic transition, moving away from reliance on mining and agriculture toward manufacturing, beneficiation, and innovation-driven sectors. The WDM overall 2050 vision statement *is to be Southern Africa's leading energy hub and ecotourism destination, driven by innovation that advances sustainable development, strengthens service delivery, optimizes resources, and nurtures community prosperity.*

To achieve this vision, the One Plan prioritizes:

- Strengthening governance and financial management practices

- Enhancing intergovernmental collaboration through the DDM Hub
- Ensuring sustainable service delivery through infrastructure maintenance and development
- Creating an enabling environment for investment
- Empowering vulnerable groups, including women, youth, and persons with disabilities, through skills development
- Promoting renewable energy and water security for long-term sustainability

The One Plan content, catered on the Waterberg Vision 2050, follows the DDM theory of Change and logical framework and is structured in relation to the six DDM Transformation Focal Areas or Goals to ignite the self-reinforcing sustainability cycle of the district by establishing Waterberg as a well-managed district that enables a participative, investment-friendly and diversified economy. Waterberg - A tourism and energy hub that enables a participative, investment friendly and diversified economy

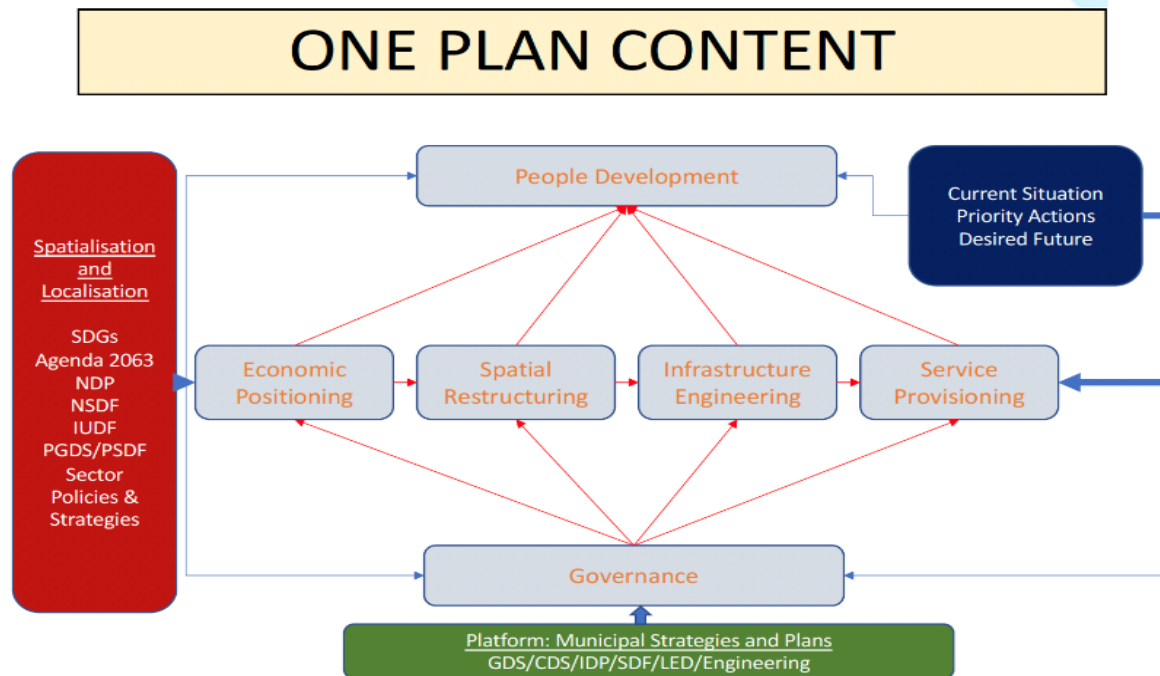


Figure 5: Vision framework

Figure below, highlights the self-reinforcing upliftment and sustainability cycle which indicates the interplay of the 21 strategies and various programmes emanating from the diagnostics. The sequencing is informed by the root causes and vision alignment. There are no one to one strategy and theme relationship.



Waterberg

One Plan Strategies

The strategic goals below provide direction for all of government and the private sector in order to bring about the desired future in the Waterberg district and achieve the set vision. The strategies for each goal are outlined in this section and these strategies of a competitive nature, as well as strategies related to the operations of public sectors active in the district.

DDM Focal Area	Strategic Goal
Demographic change and People Development	To focus on economic participation
Economic Positioning	Improve investor confidence in the Waterberg economy
Spatial Restructuring and Environmental	Accelerate growth through optimised functional linkages between activities
Infrastructure Engineering	Focus on appropriate service delivery, centralised management, and existing asset maintenance.
Integrated Service Provisioning	Focus on people, activity accessibility and integrated sustainable human settlements.
Governance and Financial Management	Focus on restructuring the district financial governance framework.

Figure 7: One Plan Strategic Goals

Table 5: POWERS AND FUNCTIONS OF THE DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

POWERS AND FUNCTIONS	RESPONSIBLE DEPARTMENT
Integrated Development, Planning for the district municipality as a whole.	Municipal Manager's Office
Refuse dumps and solid waste.	Social Development & Community Services
Cemeteries and crematoria.	Social Development & Community Services
Municipal Health Services	Social Development & Community Services
Firefighting services	Social Development & Community Services
Air Quality	Social Development & Community Services
Municipal roads which form an integral part of road transport system for the district area as a whole	Infrastructure and Development
Municipal Abattoir	Planning & Economic Development
Promotion of local tourism for the area of the district municipality.	Planning & Economic Development
Municipal transport planning	Planning & Economic Development

1.4 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY PRIORITIES

Integrated Development Plans are aligned to many other international conventions, Regional commitments, National and Provincial commitments and priorities.

The National Sphere of government provided five (5) Key Performance Areas (KPAs) that local government must adhere to, to implement the National vision. These KPAs are:

- Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development;
- Local Economic Development;
- Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development;
- Good Governance and Public Participation; and
- Financial Viability and Development.

The WDM objectives; projects; strategies; and budget are therefore guided and are in line with the above mentioned KPAs.

TABLE 6: THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY AND ITS LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES TOP 10 PRIORITIES

Mun	Waterberg District	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Bela- Bela	Mogalakwena	Modimolle-Mookgopong
1	Municipal Health & Environmental Management	Water, Sanitation, Electricity, Roads and Storm - water	Sustainable and integrated rural development and human settlement	Water, Sanitation Electricity, Roads and Storm water & Refuse removal	LED & Unemployment	LED & Unemployment
2	Air Quality	Local Economic Development	Financial management (revenue, expenditure, and supply chain)	Land and Housing	Roads & Storm water	Roads & Storm water
3	Fire fighting Services	Land for development	Maintenance and upgrading of infrastructure and quality services in all municipal areas	Good Governance and Public Participation	Housing	Housing
4	Disaster Management	Institutional Development and Financial Viability	Sustainable local economic development (manufacture, buy and employ local)	Local Economic Development	Refuse & Solid Waste Management	Refuse & Solid Waste Management

5	Abattoir	Waste Management and Environment	Environmental management	Municipal Support and Institutional Arrangements	Water & Sanitation	Water & Sanitation
6	Local Economic Development & Tourism	Community participation and Communication	Relationships with stakeholders	Sports, Arts and Culture	Crime Prevention, Safety & Security	Crime Prevention, Safety & Security
7	Community Participation and Good Governance	Sports, Arts and Culture	Community empowerment (special projects)	Financial Viability	Electricity	Community Participation and Good Governance
8	Financial Viability	Disaster Management	Infrastructure development through public/private partnerships.		Health & Welfare	Financial Viability
9	Municipal Roads & Storm Water	Transport and Community Safety	Innovative and proactive thinking.		Education	Municipal Roads & Storm Water
10	Municipal Support & Institutional Development				Community Facilities	Municipal Support & Institutional Development

1.5 MEC FINAL IDP ASSESSMENT REPORT FOR 2025/26

In terms of Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 a municipality should submit a copy of the Council approved IDP to the MEC for Local Government. The MEC comments have largely provided guidance on the preparation of the 2026/27 IDP. All the MEC comments on the 2025/26 IDP are noted in compiling the current IDP 2026/27 Annual review. The 2025/26 MEC IDP Assessment Report evaluates the credibility of Integrated Development Plans (IDPs), ensuring they comply with legislation, are budgeted for, and align with Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plans (SDBIPs). The assessment focuses on six Key Performance Areas (KPA's): spatial planning, service delivery, economic development, governance, financial viability, and organizational transformation.

The report takes a solution-oriented approach, incorporating the District Development Model (DDM) and provincial resolutions to improve IDPs across Limpopo Province. While all 27 municipalities meet basic IDP requirements, some require better alignment between their IDPs and SDBIPs. Waterberg District Municipality and its local municipalities have demonstrated strong consistency in integrating projects across their IDPs and SDBIPs, reflecting strategic planning and implementation.



Table 7: Limpopo MEC's IDP Credibility Ratings and IDP/SDBIP Ratings 2025/26

Municipality	IDP Indicator Outcome	IDP-SDBIP Alignment
Mogalakwena	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained
Bela Bela	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained
Thabazimbi	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained
Lephalale	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained
Wateberg	Satisfactory	Aligned-Sustained

1.6 PROCESS OVERVIEW

Waterberg District Municipality adopted a 2026/27 IDP Review Framework and Process Plan, which informed all 5 local municipality's process plans and it was adopted by the Municipal Council. The main purpose of the Process Plan is to integrate all the processes and activities, institutional arrangements and time frames of the various sector departments, NGOs, Parastatals, etc. The Framework /Process Plan was adopted by Council on the 28TH of August 2025. The Process Plan will guide the municipality in terms of Legislative requirements and the timeframes thereof by informing the budgets and Service Delivery Programs of various government departments and service agencies.

ADOPTION PROCESS

Once the District Framework Plan has been adopted, each Local Municipality must prepare and adopt its own Process Plan. This plan serves as a roadmap to guide how the municipality will plan, draft, adopt, and review its Integrated Development Plan (IDP).

In line with Section 28 of the Municipal Systems Act, the Process Plan must be written down and should ensure that:

The IDP process meets minimum quality standards.

Proper coordination takes place between municipalities and across different spheres of government.

The municipality is bound to follow the adopted Process Plan, which must be aligned with the District Framework Plan.

Key Requirements of the Process Plan

According to Section 29(1) of the Act, the drafting and adoption of the IDP must:
 Follow a predetermined programme with clear timeframes for each step.
 Use mechanisms that allow for community consultation on development needs and priorities.

Enable community participation in drafting the IDP.
 Ensure organs of state, traditional authorities, and other stakeholders are identified and consulted.
 Identify all plans and legal requirements binding on the municipality under national and provincial legislation.
 Remain consistent with any additional regulations that may apply.

What the Process Plan Must Contain

Every municipal Process Plan should include:

A programme with timeframes for each planning step.

Clear mechanisms for consultation and participation of communities, organs of state, traditional authorities, and other stakeholders.

Identification of all plans and requirements binding on the municipality under national and provincial law.

Community Consultation and Communication

Before adopting the Process Plan, municipalities must consult their local communities. Once adopted, they must give public notice of the process they intend to follow.

This involves:

Presenting draft Process Plans at consultation forums and holding special meetings with stakeholders and communities.

Informing communities of the adoption of the Process Plan through municipal communication channels.

Table 8: IDP REVIEW PROCESS (TO REVIEW THE CURRENT IDP)

IDP Phases	Alignment Activity	Timeframe
Phase 0: Adoption of Framework Plan and Process Plan	Adoption of the final District IDP Framework Plan	August 2025
Phase 1: Analysis	Assessment of previous IDP performance, level of development & backlogs (IDP Steering Committee). District-wide outreach issues coordinated to align with Key Development Priorities	October-November 2025

IDP Phases	Alignment Activity	Timeframe
Phase 2: Refinement of Objectives and Strategies	Strategic Lekgotla. Gap analysis of municipal key development priorities. Development of strategies aligned with national and provincial sectoral plans. Facilitation of local municipalities' DDM structures and IDP Technical workshops with sector departments and stakeholders	February-March 2026
Phase 3: Projects	Consolidation of municipal issues into district-wide priorities. Project identification for the financial year informed by local municipalities' priorities. Project Planning Coordination	January – February 2026
Phase 4: Integration (IDP/Budget)	Internal IDP Steering Committee meeting to discuss prioritised projects for 2026–2027 FY. Integration of sector department projects and programmes. Submission of draft IDP to MEC CoGHSTA and National Treasury. Draft IDP advertised for public comments	March – April 2026
Phase 5: Adoption of Final Reviewed IDP	Adoption of Annual Budget and IDP for 2026/27 FY. Submission of Final IDP to MEC CoGHSTA and National Treasury. Final Reviewed 2026/27 IDP advertised for public notice	May – June 2026
Public Participation	Public comments and stakeholder engagement and jointly public participations with local municipalities	Ongoing
Implementation and Monitoring	Execution of adopted IDP and continuous monitoring	Ongoing

NB!! IDP steering committee meetings will be held before representatives' forum (sector departments to be part of the 2nd and 3rd Steering Committee meetings). Each Municipality will decide on the dates of the meeting. Section 30 of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 gives direction on the composition of the IDP Steering Committee.

The way forward is for all Municipalities to prepare Process Plans in conjunction with the District Framework Plan and set out the following:

- **HOW** the planning process will unfold per Municipality;
- **WHAT** actions are required;
- **WHO** will be responsible for implementing these actions;
- **WHEN** will the action have to be implemented; and
- **WHAT** will the actions COST?

The achievement of an aligned IDP process depends on the co-operation of all Municipalities in order to achieve their developmental objectives in a spirit of co-operative governance.



SUMMARY OF COMMUNITY NEEDS FOR ALL LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

SPATIAL RATIONAL

- Land
- Housing

BASIC SERVICES

- Electricity
- Water
- Refuse removal
- Sanitation
- Roads

1.7. STATE OF NATION & STATE OF THE PROVINCIAL ADDRESS 2026 AND ALIGNMENT TO THE DISTRICT IDP

Key Issue	SONA (President)	SOPA (Limpopo Premier Dr. Poppie Ramathuba)
Municipal Infrastructure & Service Delivery	Infrastructure rollout as a catalyst for growth; R1 trillion+ public investment in transport, water, energy, and ICT; emphasis on better service delivery.	Strong focus on socio-economic infrastructure: roads, water, electricity, ICT; approx. R2.5 billion invested in road networks; prioritizing service delivery improvements across municipalities.
Municipal Funding Model	Commitment to new funding models (Infrastructure Fund, bonds, PPPs) to leverage private investment.	Calls for adequate funding for provincial infrastructure; highlights resource allocation challenges, especially for roads; oversight concerns raised in NCOP.
Local Government Reform	Building a capable, ethical, developmental state; governance reforms and professionalism in public service.	Strengthening local governance capacity; emphasis on ethical leadership and developmental state objectives; aligns with national priorities.
District Development Model (DDM)	National agenda to improve coordination across spheres of government; linked to NDP implementation.	Integration of development planning at district level; implementation through provincial programmes such as MERRP; coordination highlighted in service delivery.
Digital Transformation	Digital infrastructure as a growth driver; ICT investment part of infrastructure priorities.	ICT infrastructure investment mentioned as part of provincial infrastructure planning; digital transformation implicit in service delivery modernization.

Key Issue	SONA (President)	SOPA (Limpopo Premier Dr. Poppie Ramathuba)
Youth Employment & Skills Development	Presidential Youth Employment Intervention; focus on job creation and skills pipeline.	Youth development initiatives prioritized; Limpopo Youth Development Fund supports enterprise and employment; skills development linked to provincial growth.
Housing & Spatial Planning	Housing addressed through social infrastructure delivery; expanding access to accommodation.	Social infrastructure development emphasized; housing less detailed, but service infrastructure broadly prioritized.
Economic Growth & Investment	Inclusive economic growth and job creation as strategic priorities.	Economic growth and job creation central to provincial development; aligned with national Medium-Term Development Plan.
Public-Private Partnerships (PPPs)	PPPs and innovative financing mechanisms part of infrastructure strategy.	Partnerships emphasized in service delivery and economic programmes (e.g., SANRAL collaboration for roads).
Social Assistance & Welfare	Reducing poverty, strengthening social protection, tackling cost-of-living pressures.	Poverty reduction and cost-of-living relief highlighted as provincial priorities; aligned with national social protection agenda.

1.9. SUMMARY OF THE 2026 NATIONAL BUDGET SPEECH AND THE 2026 LIMPOPO PROVINCIAL BUDGET SPEECH

Key Area	National Budget Speech (Minister Enoch Godongwana, 25 Feb 2026)	Limpopo Provincial Budget Speech (MEC Kgabo Mahoai, 10 Mar 2026)
Economic Outlook	GDP growth projected at 1.6% (2026), rising to 2% (2028). Inflation declined to 3.2% (2025). Debt-to-GDP ratio stabilizing.	Provincial economy aligned with national growth agenda; focus on stimulating local industries, agriculture, and tourism.
Fiscal Measures	R20 billion-tax hike scrapped; fuel levy increases cancelled. Division of Revenue Bill, Appropriation Bill, and Budget Review tabled.	R95.856 billion allocated to provincial departments. Largest shares to Education (47.8%) and Health (29.9%).
Expenditure Focus	Infrastructure, energy transition, and social services prioritized.	Education: R45.821 billion; Health: R28.684 billion; Roads & Infrastructure: R6.474 billion; Social Development: R2.476 billion.
Household Impact	Tax relief eases burden, but food, transport, and utility costs remain high.	Welfare and community programs expanded to support vulnerable groups; focus on service delivery backlogs.
Strategic Priorities	Structural reforms for energy security, logistics, and investment. Sustainable funding for health, education, and municipal services.	Infrastructure recovery (roads, schools, hospitals). Economic growth through agriculture and tourism. Social development and welfare expansion.

Key Area	National Budget Speech (Minister Enoch Godongwana, 25 Feb 2026)	Limpopo Provincial Budget Speech (MEC Kgabo Mahoi, 10 Mar 2026)
Debt Management	Debt-service costs reduced, freeing resources for service delivery.	Fiscal discipline emphasized; allocations tied to SOPA, Limpopo Development Plan, and national priorities.
Risks & Challenges	Cost-of-living pressures persist; growth remains modest and vulnerable to shocks; poor alignment of local-national priorities noted.	Service delivery backlogs, resource allocation challenges, and need for stronger alignment with national priorities.

Risks and Challenges

- Household Strain: Relief measures may be offset by persistent cost-of-living increases.
- Growth Fragility: Economic growth remains modest, vulnerable to global shocks and domestic structural bottlenecks.
- Participation Gaps: As seen in municipal planning, poor alignment of local and national priorities could weaken implementation.
- Service Delivery Gaps: Persistent infrastructure backlogs may slow progress.
- Healthcare Strain: Rising demand for services could outpace funding.
- Education Quality: Large allocation must translate into measurable improvements in learner outcomes.
- Economic Fragility: Growth depends on effective implementation of reforms and investment projects.

The 2026 Budget strongly supports IDP priorities, especially those focusing on infrastructure, social development, economic transformation, and good governance. It balances fiscal consolidation with inclusive development, while positioning South Africa for sustainable growth and resilience.

IDP Priority	Budget Alignment
Infrastructure Development	Over R1 trillion invested in infrastructure, especially transport, energy, water, and sanitation.
Job Creation & Economic Growth	Fiscal stability and infrastructure investment expected to attract private investment and create jobs.
Social Services & Human Development	Increased funding for education, health, social grants, and ECD.
Governance & Financial Sustainability	Reforms in fiscal management, reduction of waste, and strengthening municipal finances.
Environmental Sustainability & Resilience	Emphasis on renewable energy investments and improving basic service delivery capacity in municipalities.
Digital Transformation & Smart Cities	Allocation for Home Affairs digitisation and Operation Vulindlela's digital infrastructure goals.

1.10 STRATEGIC PERFORMANCE OVERVIEW

ANNUAL REPORT

Table 9: 2024/25 INSTITUTIONAL SCORE CARD

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
KPA 1: Spatial Rationale												
1.	Spatial rational e	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism developme nt	Integrated Planning	Number of Highly rated IDP	OMM	1	1X highly rated IDP attained by 30 June 2024	1/1 satisfact ory rated IDP	0	2024/25 Satisfactory rated by the MEC of COGHSTA	None	MEC IDP assessment report.
2.	Spatial rational e	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism developme nt	Integrated Planning	Number of IDP (s) Approved by council by 31 May 2024	OMM	1/1	1X 2024/25 IDP Approved by 30 May 2024	1	0	Final 2024/25 IDP approved by council 23 May 2024	None	Council resolution



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
3.	Spatial rational e	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism developme nt	Integrated planning	Number of DMPT Meetings held	PED	13/4	4X DMPT Meeting held by 30 June 2024	9	5	9/4 DMPT meeting held: Q1: 01/09/2023 13/09/2023 Q2: 16/11/2023 Q3: 13/02/2024 Q4: 08/05/2024 09/05/2024 24/05/2024 18/06/2024 27/06/2024	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register
KPA 2 Basic Service Delivery												
4.	Basic service delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Municipal Health	Number of Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance	SDCS	94	160 X Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance by 30 June 2024	288	160	Q1: 48 Q2: 61 Q3: 52 Q4: 110 271/160 certificate of compliance issued to food Outlets	None	288 X Set of Signed copies of certificates



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
5.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.	Municipal Health	Number of permitted land fill site inspections conducted	SDCS	New	36 X Number of land fill site inspections conducted by 30 June 2024	36	0	Q1: 9 Q2: 9 Q3: 9 Q4: 9 36 reports were generated through monitoring of the sites.	None	Monitoring reports and checklists
6.	Basic Service Delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Air quality management	Number of monitoring of emissions from listed activities	SDCS	4	4X Number of Monitoring of emissions from listed activities by 30 June 2024	4	0	Q1: 1 Q2:1 Q3:1 Q4:1 4/4 Monitoring of emissions reports submitted	None	Monitoring reports.
7.	Basic Service Delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to services	Disaster Management	Number of Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held.	SDCS	8	4 X Disaster Management stakeholder consultative meetings held by 30 June 2024	4	0	4/4 meetings held: Q1: 28/09/2023 Q2: 07/12/2023 Q3: 28/03/2024 Q4: 27/06/2024	None	Invitation Agenda Minutes & Attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
8.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.	Fire fighting	Number of Fire-fighting reports submitted by local stations	SDCS	20	24 X Fire-fighting reports submitted by local stations by 30 June 2024	24	0	Q1: 6 Q2: 6 Q3: 6 Q4: 6 24/24 report submitted by local stations	None	24 X Set of Fire-fighting reports
KPA 3: Financial Management and Viability												
9.	Financi al manage ment and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilizatio n	Expenditur e Managem ent	Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	ALL	20,31%	≤10% of Operating budget variance attained by 30 June 2024	5%	5%	5% Opex variance as at 30 June 2024.	None	Financial Reports
10.	Financi al manage ment and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilizatio n.	Reporting	Number of sections 71 MFMA reports submitted	BTO	12/12	12 X Section 71 MFMA reports submitted within 10 working days of the start of each Month by 30 June 2024	12	0	Q1: 3 Q2: 3 Q3: 3 Q4: 3 12/12 s71 reports submitted to National Treasury.	None	Financial reports
KPA 4: Local Economic Development												

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
11.	Local Econom ic Develop ment	To create a conducive environme nt for radical economic developme nt.	Economic developme nt	Number of LED forum meetings held	PED	4	4 X LED forum meeting held by 30 June 2024	4	0	4/4 LED Meetings held: Q1: 11/07/2023. Q2: 10/10/2023 Q3: 15/03/2024 Q4: 25/06/2024	None.	4 X Set of invitations, agenda, minutes, attendance register and resolutions
KPA 5: Good Governance and Public Participation												
12.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated manageme nt & governanc e systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of section 72 Reports-Mid-year Budget and performanc e Assessment Report submitted	OMM	1/1 25/01/2 023	1 X (MFMA Section 72 Report) Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report submitted by 25 January 2024	1	0	2023/24 Mid-Year Budget and Performance Report submitted NT, PT and CoGHSTA 25 January 2024.	None	Submission letters to NT/PT
13.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated manageme nt & governanc e systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Submission of Annual Performanc e Report (APR) and Annual Financial Statement (AFS)	OMM	1/1-APR 1/1-AFS	1X APR and 1x AFS submitted to AGSA by 31 August 2023.	1X APR 1X AFS 31/08/20 23	0	APR and AFS submitted on the 31 st August 2023 to NT, PT, AGSA and CoGHSTA	None	Submission letters.

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
14.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem nt and governanc e systems	Auditing	AG -Audit outcome/O pinion	ALL	Unqualif ied with no findings .	Unqualified attained by 30 November 2023	Unqualifie d with findings	0	Unqualified with findings (30 November 2023)	None	AGSA audit report
15.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem nt and governanc e systems	Auditing	Percentage of AG Audit queries resolved	ALL	100% 10/10	100% of Prior Year audit queries resolved by 30 June 2024	100% 16/16	0%	16/16Audit Queries resolved.	None	2022/23 Post Audit action plan
16.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem nt and governanc e systems	Auditing	Percentage of Identified risks mitigated	ALL	50% 9/18	100% of Identified risks mitigated by 30 June 2024	100% 21/21	0%	100% mitigated. Risk	None	Risk register
17.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem nt and governanc e systems	Auditing	Percentage of internal audit queries resolved	ALL	70% 14/20	100% of internal audit queries resolved by 30 June 2024	56% 5/9	44%	56/100% internal audit queries resolved. 4 Outstanding audit findings: 1.Integrated Waste Management Plan	1. Departme	Internal audit action plan

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2023/24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achievement.	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
										2.Environmental Health and Safety. 3.Occupational Health and Safety.	nt of Local Economic Development and Tourism and Department of Forestry and Fisheries and Environment will assist the municipality to develop the Integrated waste management Plan in House. 2. Air quality By-law – awaiting quotation from government printing for gazetting.	

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
										4.Fire Service Unit Is Understaffed	3.88% of the Occupatio nal Health and Safety Standards have been addressed	
18.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated manageme nt and governanc e systems	Auditing	Number of Audit committee meetings held	OMM	4	4 X Audit committee meetings held by 30 June 2024	8	4	8/4 Meeting held: Q1: 25/08/2023 15/09/2023 Q2: 24/11/2023 29/11/2023	None	4 X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and Attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
										Q3: 24/01/2024 15/03/2024 Q4: 14/05/2024 28/06/2024		
19.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem ent and governanc e systems	Governanc e	Percentage of Council resolutions implement ed.	ALL	88.3% 83/94	100% Council resolutions implemented by 30 June 2024	87% 26/30	13%	87% Council resolutions implemented. 4 outstanding: 1.Adoption of the draft By-Laws	1. Two By-laws were gazetted on 20/10/20 23 and currently busy with the procurem ent process with regard to the other three By-laws.	Council resolutions register.



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
										2. Filling of a post of Manager Infrastructure Development	2. The Position has been re-advertise d.	
										3. Filling of a post of Manager Planning And Economic Development.	3.The Position has been re-advertise d.	



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2023/24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achievement.	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
										4.Filling of Post of Manager Social Development and Community Services	4.The vacancy was advertised and it closed on 05 July 2024. Currently in the process of scheduling shortlisting, thereafter vetting and interviews will follow.	
20.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Public Participation	Number of IDP Representative Forum meetings convened	OMM	4/4	4 X IDP Representative Forum meetings convened by 30 June 2024	4	0	4/4 IDP Representative Forum meetings held: Q1: 11/08/2023 Q2: 28/11/2023 Q3: 20/03/2024 Q4: 15/05/2024	None	4X Set of Invitations, Agenda, minutes & attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
21.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem ent and governanc e systems	Governanc e	Number of MPAC meetings held	ALL	6/6	4 X MPAC meetings held by 30 June 2024	4	0	Q1: 13/09/2023 Q2: 16/11/2023 Q3: 15/03/2024 Q4: 15/05/2024	None	4X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register
22.	Good Govern ance and Public Particip ation	To develop and implement integrated managem ent and governanc e systems	Governanc e	Number of 2022/23 Oversight report approved by council	OMM	1/1	1 X 2022/23 Oversight report(s) approved by council by 31 March 2024	1	0	1/1 MPAC Oversight report approved by council 27/03/2024	None	Council resolution and 2022/23 oversight report
KPA 6: Transformation and Organisational Development												
23.	Transfo rmation and Organis ational Develop ment	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Human Resources Managem ent	Number of Senior Managers with signed Performanc e Agreement s	OMM	6/6	6 X Senior Managers with signed Performance Agreements by 31 July 2024	6	0	All 6 Managers signed the 2023/24 Annual Performance Agreement	None	Signed Performance Agreements



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2023/24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achievement.	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
24.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Capacity building and Training (HRD)	Number of officials and Councillors capacitated	CSSS	21	40 X Officials and Councillors capacitated by 30 June 2024	103	63	103/40 Official and councillors trained in 2022/23 FY: Q1: 38 Q2: 36 Q3: 8 Q4: 21	None	Attendance registers.
25.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To Improve, attract, develop and retain best human capital	Occupational Health and Safety	Number of OHS Committee meetings held	CSSS	4/4	4 X OHS Committee meetings held by 30 June 2024	4	0	4/4 OHS meetings held: Q1: 08/08/2023 Q2: 24/10/2023 Q3: 15/02/2024 Q4: 12/04/2024	None	4X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register
26.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Information and Communication Technology	Number of ICT Steering Committee Meetings Held	CSSS	4	4X ICT Steering Committee Meetings Held by 30 June 2024	4	0	4/4 ICT steering committee meetings held: Q1: 24/07/2023 Q2: 27/10/2023	None	4X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Program me / Focus area	Performa nce Indicator s	Respon sible Depart ment	Baselin e 2023/ 24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achieve ment.	Varian ce	Remarks	Remedia l Action	Evidence
										Q3: 31/01/2024 Q4: 24/05/2024		
27.	Transfo rmation and Organis ational Develop ment	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Organisatio nal Developme nt	Number of approved 2024/25 SDBIP by the Executive Mayor	OMM	1-SDBIP 20 June 2023	1 X 2024/25 SDBIP Approved by the EM by the 28 June 2024	1	0	1/1 2024/25 SDBIP approved by Executive Mayor on the 13 June 2024	None	Approved 2024/25 SDBIP
28.	Transfo rmation and Organis ational Develop ment	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of 2022/23 Annual Performanc e evaluation conducted	OMM	1/1	1X 2022/23 Annual Performance evaluation conducted by 30 June 2024	1	0	1/1 Annual Performance Evaluations conducted 20/06/2024	None	Minutes and attendance register
29.	Transfo rmation and Organis ational Develop ment	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Annual report (section 121) adopted & submitted to MEC	OMM	1 AR approve d 30 March 2023	1 X Annual Report (sec 121) adopted & submitted to MEC by 31 March 2024	1	0	1/1 Annual Report approved by 27/03/2024 and submitted to MEC 08/04/2024	None	Annual report, council resolution and submission letter to the MEC
30.	Transfo rmation and Organis ational	To improve Administrat ion and Governanc e Capacity	Legal Services	Number of litigation reports compiled and	CSSS	4	4X litigation reports compiled and submitted to	4	0	Q1: 1 Q2: 1	None	4 X Set of Litigation Reports with Council Resolutions

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Responsible Department	Baseline 2023/24	Annual Target 2024-2025	Annual Achievement.	Variance	Remarks	Remedial Action	Evidence
	Development			submitted to council			council by 30 June 2024			Q3: 1 Q4: 1 4/4 litigation reports noted by council.		
31.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Human Resource Management	Number of LLF meetings held by 30 June 2024	CSSS	4	4 X LLF meetings held by 30 June 2024	5	1	5/4 meetings held: Q1: 13/09/2023 Q2: 20/10/2023 05/12/2023 Q3: No Meeting Q4: 10/04/2024 20/05/2024	None	4 X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register

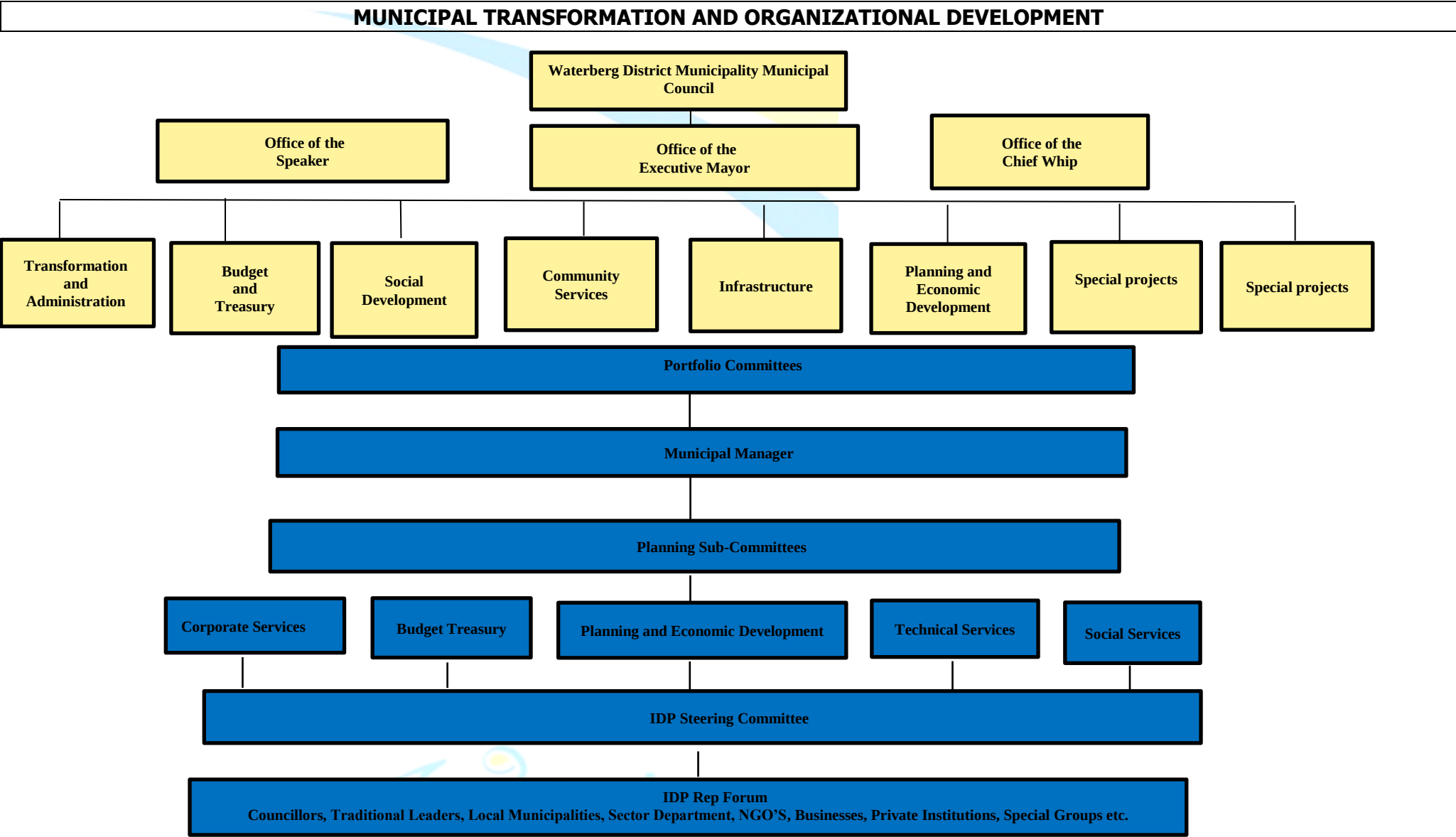


Table 10:WDM PROVISION OF BASIC SERVICE AS PER THE MUNICIPAL STRUCTURE ACT 119 OF 1998

Powers	Authority	Municipality	Waterberg District	Bela-Bela	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Mogalakwena	Thabazimbi
Municipal Public works only in respect of the needs of municipalities in the discharge of their responsibility to administer functions specially assigned to them under this constitution or any other Law	Schedule part B 4	Both District & locals	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Municipal Public Transport	Schedule part B 4	Both	N	N	N	N	N	N
Municipal Roads	Schedule part B 5	Both	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Refuse removal, refuse dumps, solid waste disposal	Schedule part B 5	Both	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Water and Sanitation services limited to poTable water supply systems and Domestic waste-water and sewage disposal system	Schedule part B 4	District	N	Y	Y	Y	Y (bulk)	Y
Electricity and Gas reticulation	Schedule part B 5	District	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Cleansing	Schedule part B 5	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Storm water management systems in built-up areas	Schedule part B 4	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Street lighting	Schedule part B 5	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Traffic and parking	Schedule part B 5	Locals	N	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Housing	Schedule part A 4	Possible	N	Y Accredited	N	N	N	N



Table 11: INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENT



CHAPTER 2: SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

2. INTRODUCTION

2.1 MUNICIPAL PROFILE

The STATSSA has been the main source of information, coupled with the administrative records sourced within the district and the local municipalities and government departments.

The following sources were utilised to compile the situational analysis:

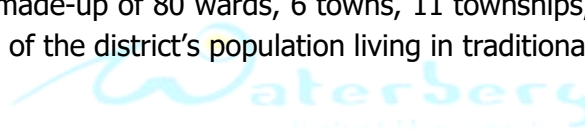
The situational analysis was compiled using diverse sources, including census data, municipal reports, budget consultations, and sector departmental insights. Key references include STATSSA Census (2011 & 2022), the Municipal Demarcation Board, WDM's Annual Report (2024/25), and IDPs from local municipalities. Additionally, spatial and environmental frameworks informed the assessment, alongside input from Provincial Treasury, LEDET, DWS, RAL, and the Department of Agriculture, ensuring a comprehensive, data-driven approach to municipal planning.

2.3 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY CONTEXTUALISATION

DESCRIPTION OF MUNICIPAL AREA

The Waterberg District Municipality is a Category C municipality located in the South Western part of Limpopo Province, which is South Africa's most Northern Province. The district was formed in 2000 and is one of the five District Municipalities in the Limpopo Province. The district is strategically located in sharing its borders with Capricorn District Municipality in the north and Sekhukhune District Municipality in the east. The south-western boundary abuts the Northwest, while the Gauteng Province lies on the south-eastern side. The municipality is the biggest district in the province, making up just more than a third of its geographical area. It shares its five-border control points with Botswana, namely Groblersbrug, Stockpoort, Derdepoort, Zanzibar and Platjan.

The largely rural district is made-up of five local municipalities, namely; Bela-Bela LM, Lephalale LM, Modimolle-Mookgopong LM, Mogalakwena LM, and Thabazimbi LM. The District is also made-up of 80 wards, 6 towns, 11 townships, 216 villages, and 30 informal settlements. In addition, the district has 11 Traditional Councils with about 47% of the district's population living in traditional authority areas making up about 7.3% of the landmass of the district.



In 2022, the total population in the Waterberg District Municipality was 762 862 which is 1.3% of South Africa's total population and it is ranked 5th in the Limpopo Province in terms of population size. The largest local area is Mogalakwena, with a population of 378.2K making up 49.58% of the district's total population.

Between 2011 and 2022, the population growth averaged 1.27% per annum, which was just below the growth rate of the province and South Africa at 1.3% and 1.57%, respectively. Lephalale LM experienced the largest increase in population in the district, with an average annual growth rate of 2.87% between 2008 and 2018, while Modimolle/Mookgopong LM experienced an average annual decline of 0.38% in the same period. The high population growth rates in Lephalale can be attributed to the growth of the mining and energy sectors, whereas decline in the Modimolle-Mookgopong can be attributed to the dearth in opportunities as result of lesser traffic on the R101.

The main economic sectors of the District

The economy of the Waterberg DM is largely dominated by three (3) sectors, namely; mining, tourism and agriculture. The greatest contributor to Waterberg's Gross Value

Add (GVA) is mining with 56%, Agriculture (3%), manufacturing (3%), electricity (3%), construction (2%), trade (9%), transport (4%), finance (8%), community services (12%) (<https://municipalities.co.za/>).

Table 12: The economic sectors of the Waterberg District

Sector	Contribution to GVA (%)
Mining	56%
Community Services	12%
Trade	9%
Finance	8%
Transport	4%
Agriculture	3%
Manufacturing	3%
Electricity	3%
Construction	2%



Table 13: Limpopo Province Ranking By District

The population distribution across the five municipalities highlights Vhembe as the most populous district, followed closely by Capricorn, Mopani, and Sekhukhune. Waterberg, with a population of 762,862, ranks fifth. This demographic breakdown provides insight into regional planning needs, resource allocation, and development priorities, ensuring equitable service delivery across all districts.

Municipality	Population Size	Rank
Vhembe	1 653 022	1
Capricorn	1 447 103	2
Mopani	1 372 873	3
Sekhukhune	1 336 805	4
Waterberg	762 862	5

Table 14: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPAL FIVE LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES MUNICIPALITY AND SOME ITS TOWNS

Municipality and Its Code	Municipal Sub-category	Population	Area (km ²)	Towns	% of WDM
Bela Bela (LIM366)	Category B	64, 306	3 406	Bela-Bela Town and Pienaarsrivier	7, 6
Modimolle-Mookgopong (LIM368)	Category B	130, 113	10,368	Vaalwater, Modimolle , Mookgophong	7,9
Lephalale (LIM362)	Category B	125, 198	13,794	Lepalale, Marapong	30,7
Thabazimbi (LIM361)	Category B	65, 047	11,190	Thabazimbi, Amandelbult, Northam	24,9 %
Mogalakwena (LIM367)	Category B	378, 198	6,156	Mokopane	28,9 %
Waterberg District (DC36)	Category C	762, 862	44,914	Modimolle- administrative capital	100 %

Its racial persona consists of the following:

- African: 91.3%; Coloured: 0.3%; Indian/Asian: 0.4%; White: 8.1%

Languages spoken in the district:

Northern Sotho (Sepedi): 56.4%; Setswana: 11.5%; Tsonga: 8.3%; Afrikaans: 7.7%

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

And other multi-lingual: 16.1% (include Isindebele, Sesotho, Isixhosa, English, Tshivenda, Isizulu, and Siswati etc)

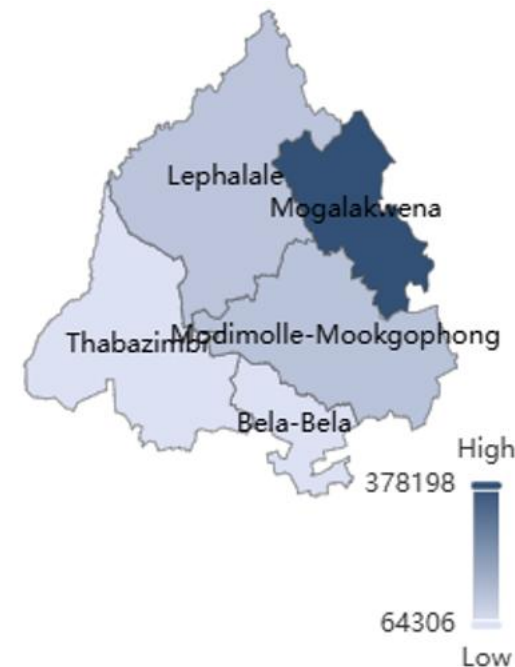
Geographically:

The Waterberg District Municipality contains most of the Waterberg Biosphere which falls under UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), designated as a Biosphere Reserve with the area of 654,033 hectares

The district is one of the first regions in the north to host a Biosphere Reserve by UNESCO

Its ecosystem may be characterised as a dry deciduous forest or Bushveld

MAP 1: Waterberg District Municipality Regional Context (A,B) as located within the Province

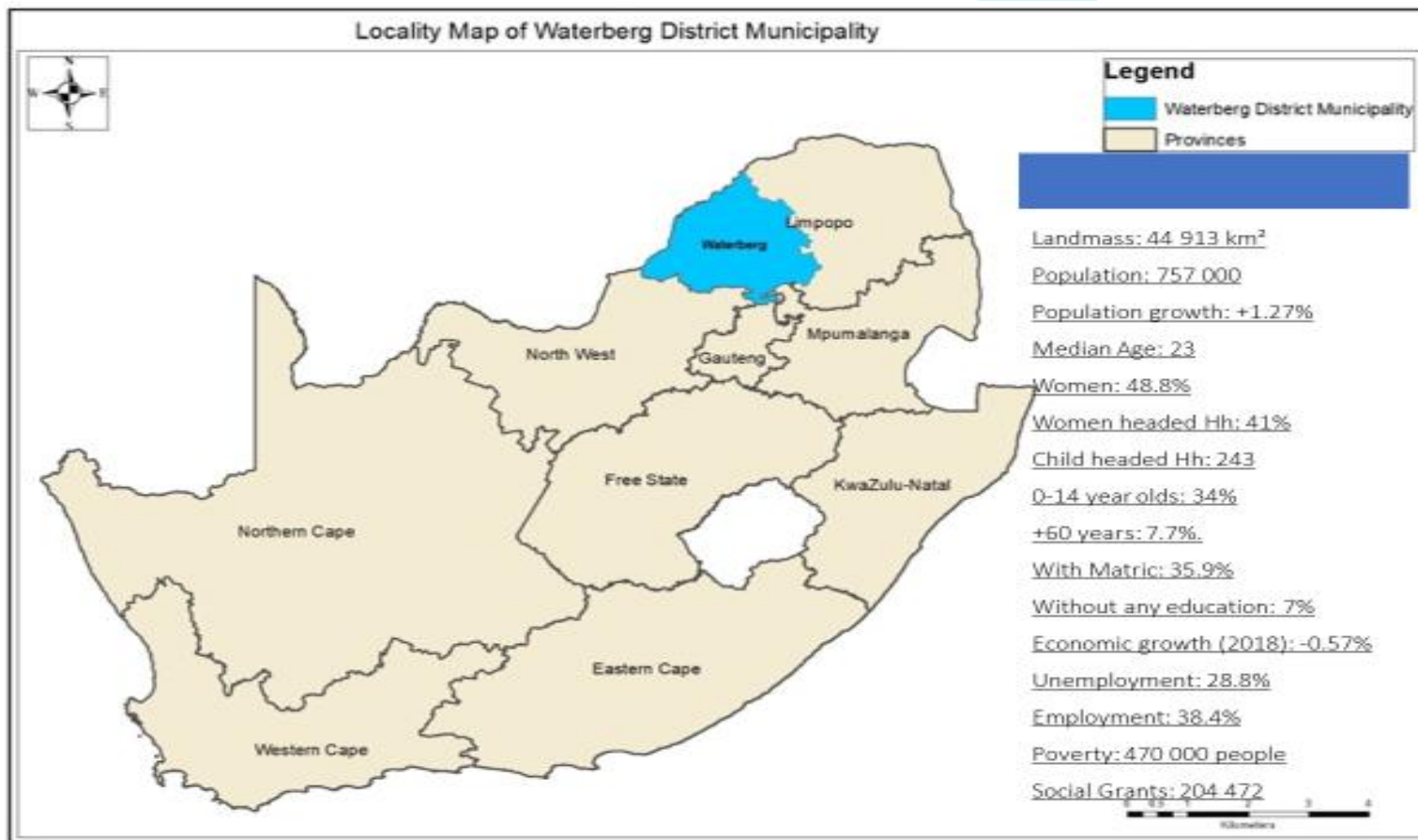


Main Economic Sectors:

The Waterberg District Municipality highlights the economic contributions of various sectors to the district's Gross Value Added (GVA). The primary sectors are: Mining (56%); Community Services (12%); Trade (9%); Finance (8%); Transport (4%); Manufacturing (3%); Electricity (3%); Agriculture (3%); Construction (2%)

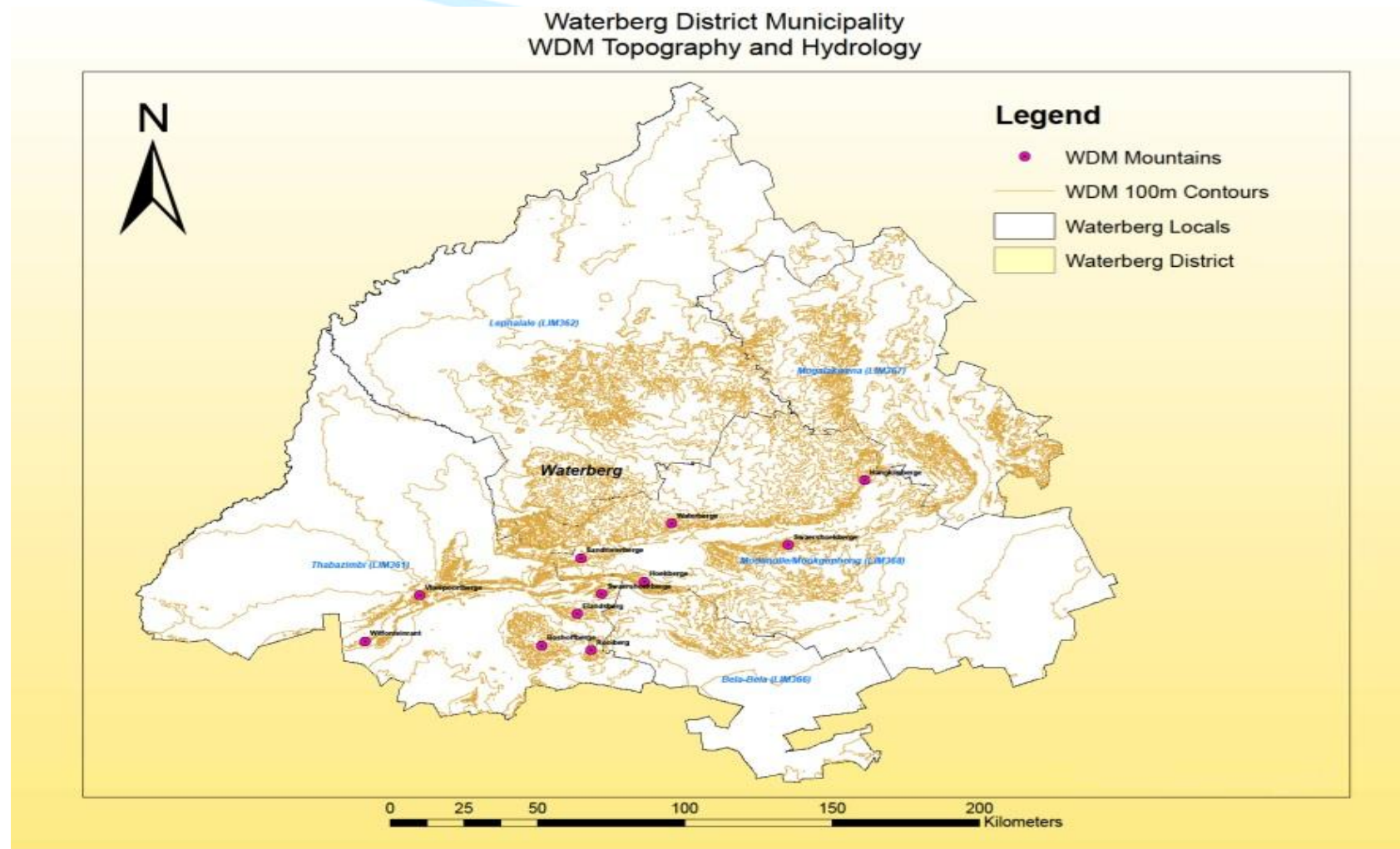
Mining remains the dominant contributor to the district's economy

MAP 2: Locality Map of Waterberg District- National Context



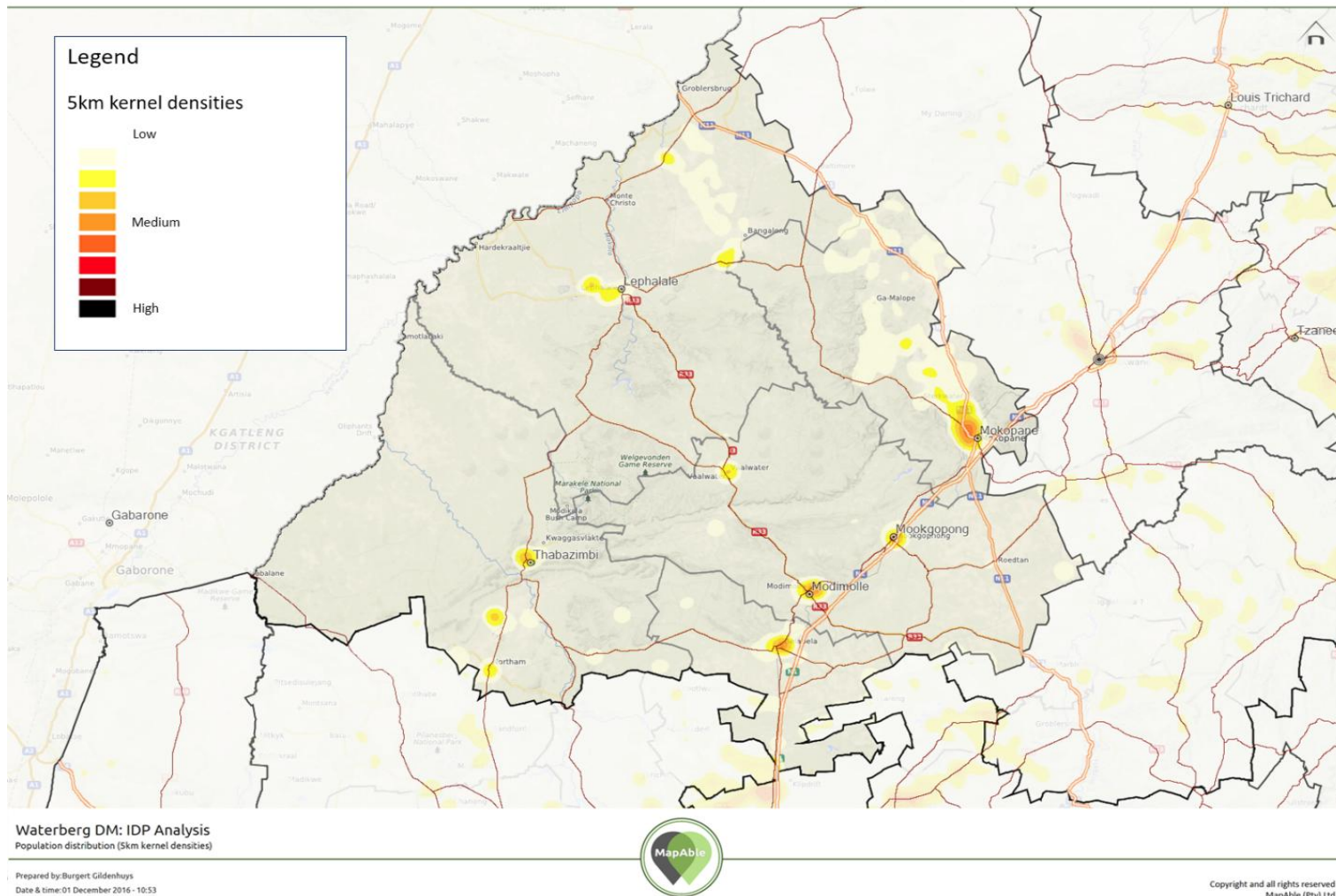
GEOGRAPHIC LOCATION MAP

MAP 3: WDM Topography and Hydrology



Waterberg
District Municipality

MAP 4: Population distribution



2.4 DEMOGRAPHIC PROFILE

Waterberg District Municipality - 2022 Census Demographics

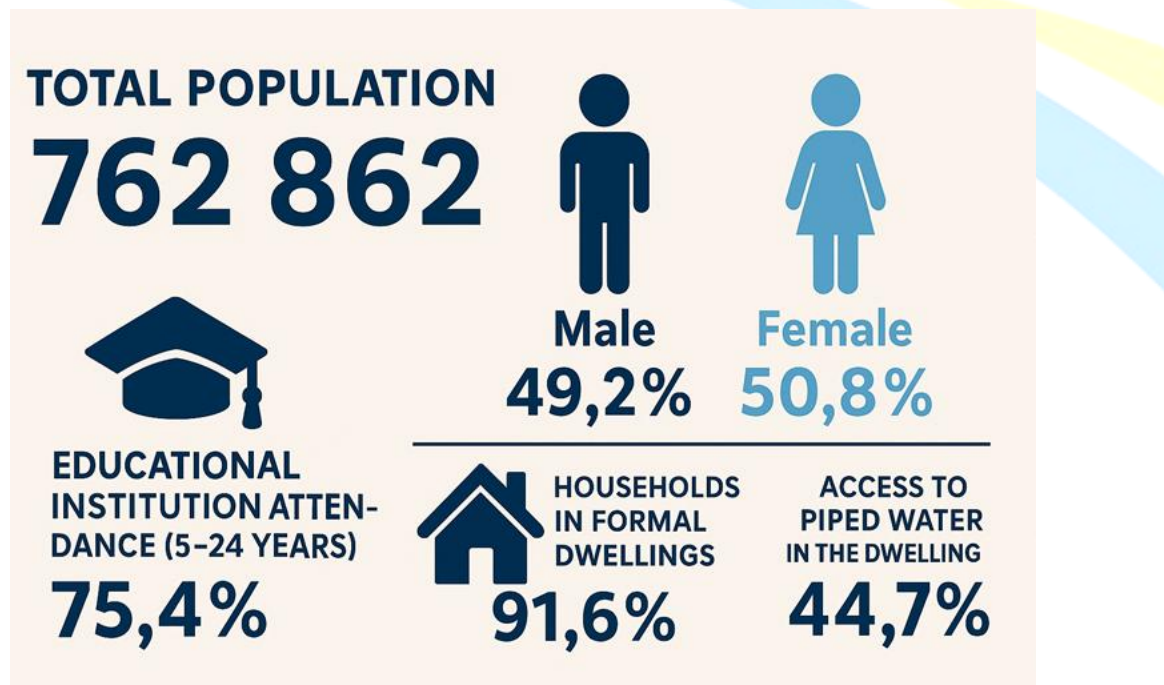


FIGURE 8: **WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY DEMOGRAPHIC**

"Demographics", or "population characteristics", includes analysis of the population of a region. Distributions of values within a demographic variable, and across households, as well as trends over time are of interest.

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Waterberg District Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, the Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.



2.5 WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY AT A GLANCE

Waterberg District ranked 5th and smallest populated district in Limpopo in 2022

CENSUS 2022

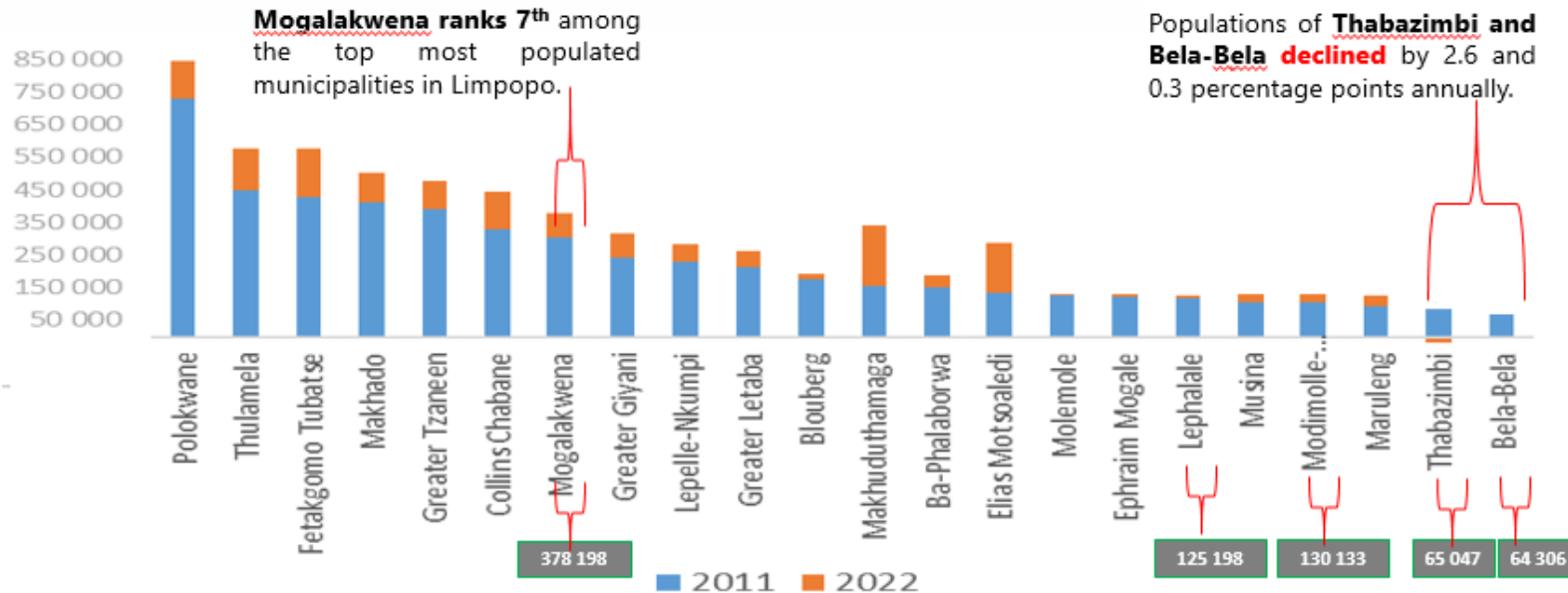


FIGURE 9: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITIES POPULATION IN 2011 VERSUS 2022 COMPARED WITH OTHER LIMPOPO MUNICIPALITIES (CENSUS 2022)

POPULATION

Population statistics is important when analysing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income. This Table below presents municipality categories and population data from 2016 to 2022 for various municipalities within Waterberg District.

MIIF Category: Classifies municipalities based on infrastructure investment needs.

Population Trends: Most B3 municipalities (Thabazimbi, Lephalale, Bela-Bela) experienced declines, while Mogalakwena (B2) and Modimolle-Mookgophong (B3) saw growth.

Waterberg District (C1) showed steady population growth, increasing from 745,758 in 2016 to 762,862 in 2022

Table 15: Total Population Size: Person Indicator Per Municipality

Municipality	MIIF Category	2016	2022
Thabazimbi (Lim361)	B3	96232	65 047
Lephalale (Lim362)	B3	140240	125 198
Bela-Bela (Lim366)	B3	76296	64 306
Mogalakwena (Lim367)	B2	325291	378 198
Modimolle-Mookgophong (Lim368)	B3	107698	130 113
Waterberg	C1	745758	762 862

Source: Census 2016 and 2022

The Table below presents key statistics for the 2022 census for the Waterberg District, offering a snapshot of its demographic and household profile.

Summary of Key Demographic and Service Delivery Trends (2011–2022)

- **Population Growth:** Increased from 679,336 to 762,862, with an aging population as elderly (65+ years) rose from 5.8% to 7.5%.
- **Education Improvements:** More people have higher education, while those without schooling decreased.
- **Housing & Infrastructure:** Significant improvements in formal housing, flush toilets, piped water access, and electricity, though gaps remain in service delivery.
- **Household Growth & Size:** The number of households grew, while average household size decreased, suggesting changing family dynamics and living conditions.

Implications for Planning

- **Infrastructure & Housing:** Increased demand for affordable housing, sanitation, and water services requires better urban planning and service expansion.
- **Social Services:** An aging population will need expanded healthcare, social support, and pension planning.
- **Education & Skills Development:** With more people attaining higher education, economic strategies must focus on job creation, upskilling, and workforce integration.
- **Service Delivery Improvements:** Access to water, sanitation, and refuse collection still needs attention, requiring funding allocations and efficiency measures.
- **Household & Community Planning:** The shift to smaller households suggests changing housing needs and land-use planning adjustments.

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Table 16: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY KEY STATISTICS (Source: Census 2022)

Names	2022	2011
Total population	762 862	679 336
Young children (0-14 years)	27,9%	29,9%
Working age population (15-64 years)	64,5%	64,3%
Elderly (65+ years)	7,5%	5,8%
Dependency ratio	54,9	55,5
Sex ratio	96,7	102,1
No schooling (20+ years)	8,3%	12,4%
Higher education (20+ years)	9,7%	8,5%
Number of households	248 526	179 858
Average household size	3,1	3,8
Formal dwellings	91,6%	87,0%
Flush toilets connected to sewerage	57,6%	47,8%
Weekly refuse disposal service	52,6%	44,2%
Access to piped water in the dwelling	44,7%	30,7%
Electricity for lighting	92,9%	86,7%

WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY POPULATIONPER AGE

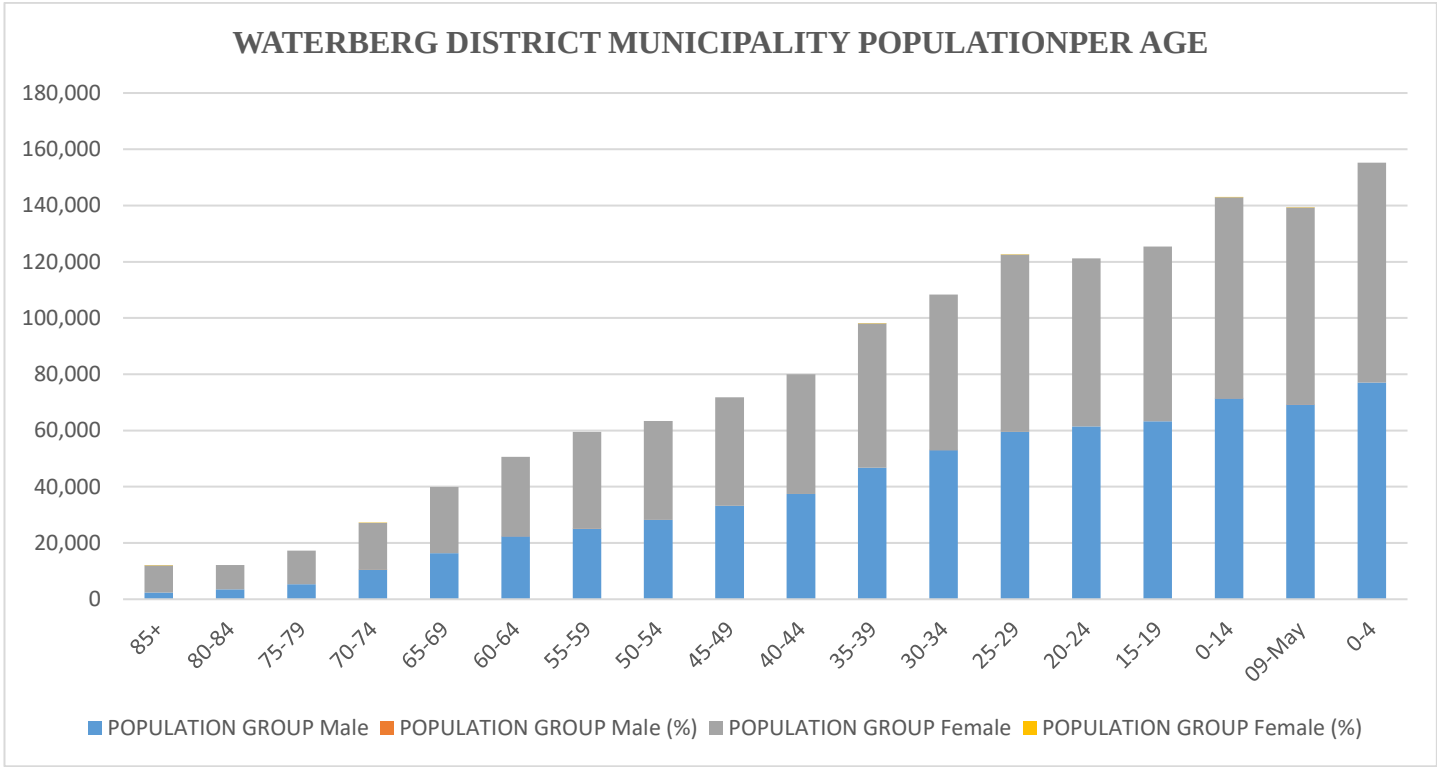


FIGURE 10: POPULATION GROUP IN THE WDM SOURCE: CENSUS 2022



Table 17:POPULATION BY GENDER SOURCE

Gender	Number	%
Male	374 965	49.2%
Female	387 897	50.8%

Source: Census 2022

POPULATION GROUP

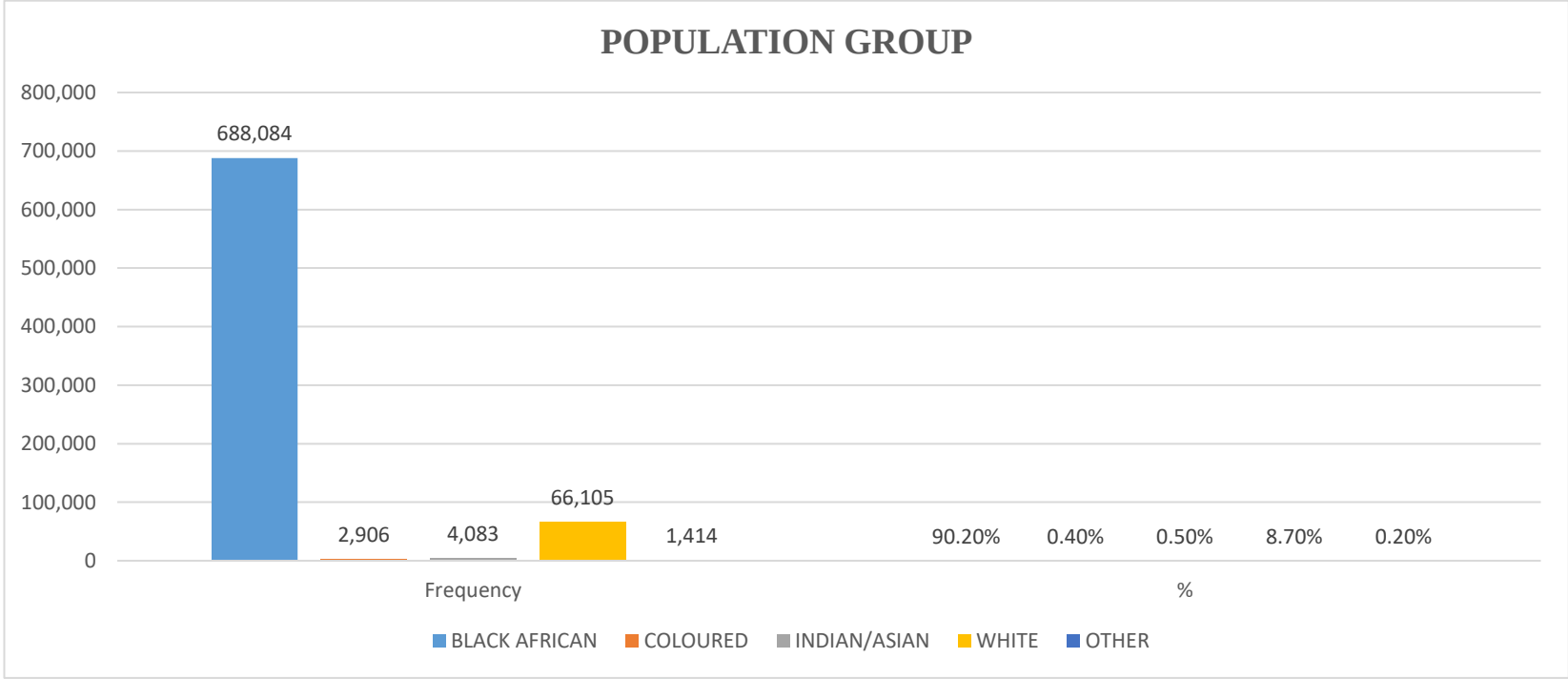


FIGURE 11: POPULATION GROUP CENSUS 2022



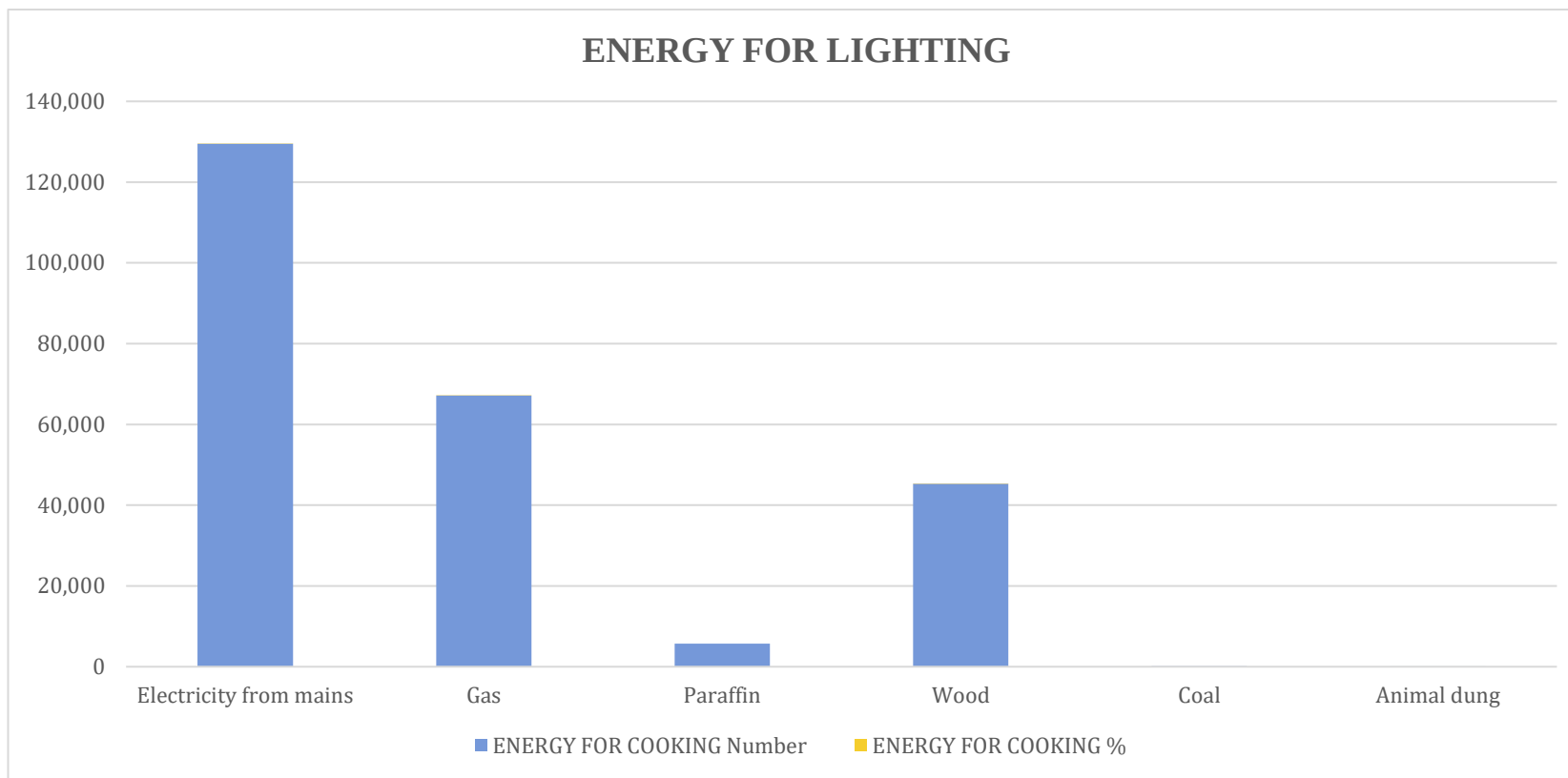


Figure 12: **ENERGY FOR LIGHTING Source: Census 2022**



ENERGY FOR COOKING

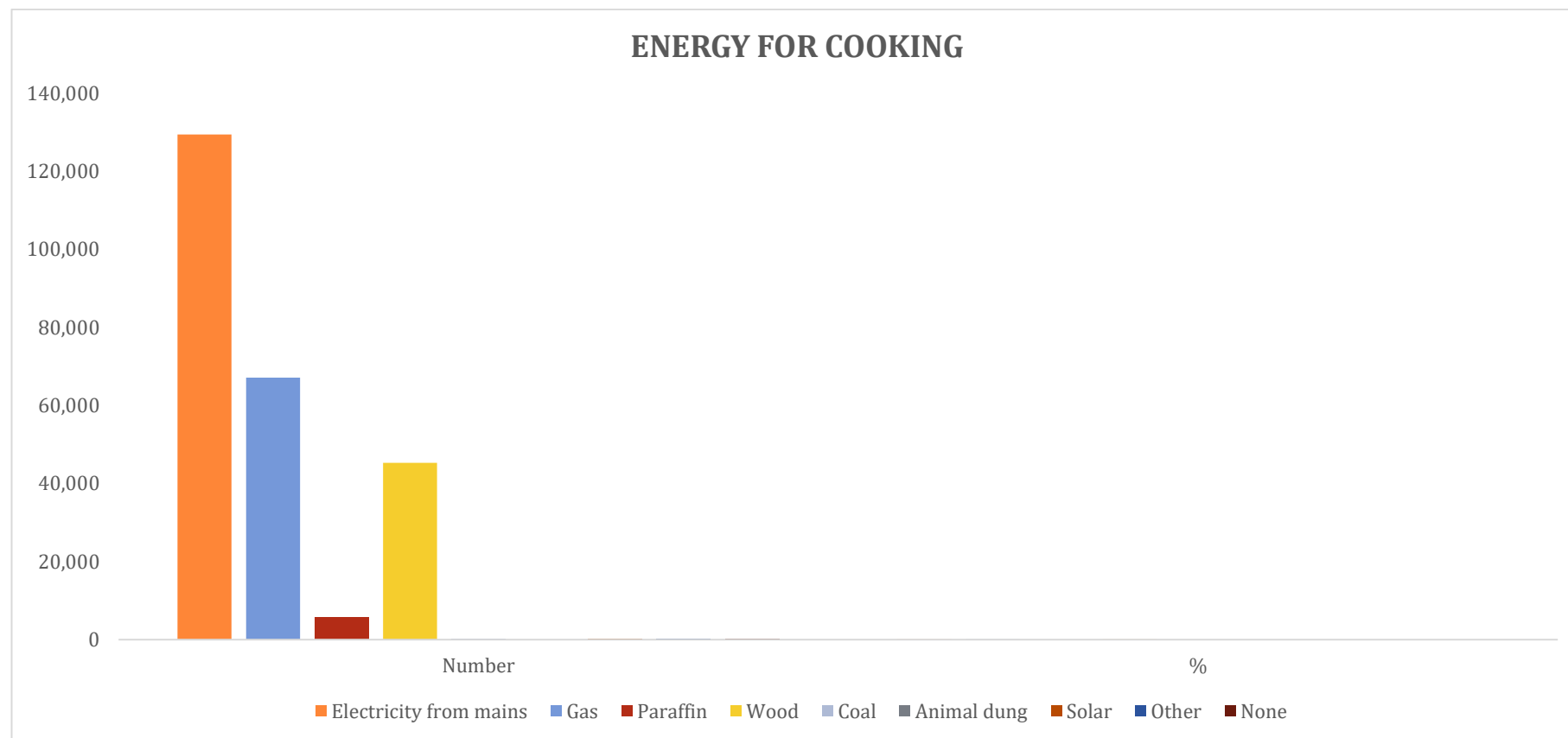


FIGURE 13: SOURCE OF ELECTRICITY- ENERGY FOR COOKING IN WDM

Table 18: REFUSE DISPOSAL

Name	Number	%
Removed by local authority at least once a week	130 737	52,6%
Removed by local authority less often	3 091	1,2%
Communal refuse dump	5 170	2,1%

Communal container/central collection point	4 410	1,8%
Own refuse dump	88 583	35,6%
No Rubbish Disposal	14 706	5,9%

Source: Census 2022

Table 19: MAIN TOILET FACILITIES

Name	Number	%
Flush toilet	143 044	57,6%
Chemical toilet	3 238	1,3%
Pit toilet	92 423	37,2%
Bucket toilet	3 637	1,5%
Other	2 090	0,8%
None	4 093	1,6%

Source: Census 2022

Table 20: ACCESS TO PIPED WATER

Name	Number	%
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling	111 19244	7%
Piped (tap) water inside the yard	77 84731	3%
Piped (tap) water on community stand	31 46912	7%
No access to piped water	28 01811	3%

Source: Census 2022



Table 21: DWELLING TYPE WATERBERG

Name	Number	%
Formal dwelling	227 552	91,6%
Traditional dwelling	1 459	0,6%
Informal dwelling	18 717	7,5%
Other	798	0,3%

Source: Census 2022**EDUCATION****Table 22: ATTENDANCE AT EDUCATIONAL LEVEL (5-24 YEARS)**

Educational Level	Number	%
Yes	184 357	75,4%
No	60 127	24,6%

Source: Census 2022**Table 23: HIGH LEVEL OF EDUCATION (20+YEARS)**

HIGH LEVEL OF EDUCATION (20+YEARS) Waterberg		
Education	Number	%

No Schooling	37 638	8,3%
Some Primary	35 013	7,7%
Completed Primary	16 097	3,6%
Some Secondary	162 211	35,9%
Grade 12/Std10	152 142	33,6%
Higher Education	43 990	9,7%
Other	5 064	1,1%

Source: Census 2022

2.6 EMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT

EMPLOYMENT

Total employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. In 2018, Waterberg employed 201 000 people which is 15.19% of the total employment in Limpopo Province (1.32 million) and 1.25% of total employment in South Africa (16.1 million). Employment within Waterberg increased annually at an average rate of 3.22% from 2008 to 2018. The Waterberg District Municipality average annual employment growth rate of 3.22% exceeds the average annual labour force growth rate of 2.66%, resulting in unemployment decreasing from 25.61% in 2008 to 17.54% in 2018 in the district municipality.

The economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2018 were the trade sector with 45 000 employed people or 22.4% of total employment in the district municipality. The community services sector with 36 100 people or 17.9% employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 1 980 (1.0%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Waterberg District Municipality, followed by the transport sector with 5 980 (3.0%) people employed. The number of formally employed people in Waterberg District Municipality counted 149 000 in 2018, which is about 74.07% of total employment, while the number of people employed

in the informal sector counted 52 100 or 25.93% of the total employment. Informal employment in Waterberg increased from 35 200 in 2008 to an estimated 52 100 in 2018.

UNEMPLOYMENT

In 2018, there were a total number of 42 200 people unemployed in Waterberg, which is a decrease of -5 200 from 47 400 in 2008. The total number of unemployed people within Waterberg constitutes 12.65% of the total number of unemployed people in Limpopo Province. The Waterberg District Municipality experienced an average annual decrease of -1.16% in the number of unemployed people, which is lower than that of the Limpopo Province, which had an average annual decrease in unemployment of -1.20%.

When comparing the unemployment rate among local municipalities within Waterberg District Municipality, Mogalakwena Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 22.2%, which has decreased from 31.3% in 2008. The Lephalale Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 11.6% in 2018, which decreased from 17.8% in 2008.

LABOUR

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e. people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

Table 24: **UNEMPLOYMENT RATES**

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Unemployed	8 562	10 100	9 339	6 002	31 609	65 612
Discouraged work-seeker	1 236	1 565	2 330	1 057	10 072	16 260
Unemployment Rate	20.6%	22.2%	45.70%	23%	42%	28.1%

Source: Census 2022

Table 25: UNEMPLOYMENT RATES PER GENDER IN LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES

Municipality	Male				Female				Grand
	Employed	Unemployed	Discouraged work-seeker	Other economically not active	Employed	Unemployed	Discouraged work-seeker	Other economically not active	Total
Thabazimbi	23458	3782	487	12034	9460	4780	748	10404	65153
Lephalale	23065	4352	628	17575	12262	5748	937	16124	80691
Modimolle-Mookgophong	19079	4148	1005	10830	12726	5192	1325	13471	67776
Bela-Bela	12114	2759	429	7384	8606	3244	627	8715	43878
Mogalakwena	25679	13777	4133	39248	21359	17832	5940	51396	179363
Grand Total	103395	28816	6683	87071	64414	36796	9577	100110	436861

Source: Stats SA Community Survey, 2016

With regard to economic sectors contribution to employment in the region, mining contributes 33% of employment, followed by trade (17%), personal services (12.5%), government (10%), agriculture (7.1%), finance (6.1%), construction (5.8), manufacturing (4.4%), transport (2.6%) and utilities (0.4%).

In general, over the period 2008 to 2018 there has been a rise in employment in parts of the district, notably in Lephalale, Thabazimbi, Bela-Bela and Makopane. However, there has been a decline in employment in smaller towns/settlements. It will therefore critical to undertake sector specific analysis in order to determine factors that are contributing to the decline of employment in these areas. It will also be important to consider the dependence of towns/settlements on single economic sectors. Growth in Lephalale, for example, is linked largely to mining/energy, which also indicates a risk.



Table 26:WORKING AGE POPULATION IN WATERBERG 2009 AND 2019 [NUMBER]

AGE	WATERBERG	
	2009	2019
15-19	66,400	51,000
20-24	75,000	63,500
25-29	66,200	85,100
30-34	53,100	80,100
35-39	50,100	59,000
40-44	40,100	44,200
45-49	32,000	43,600
50-54	25,000	37,000
55-59	19,200	27,700
60-64	15,500	19,000
Total	443,000	510,000

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

The working age population in Waterberg in 2019 was 510 000, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.43% since 2009.

The graph below combines all the facets of the labour force in the Waterberg District Municipality into one compact view. The chart is divided into "place of residence" on the left, which is measured from the population side, and "place of work" on the right, which is measured from the business side.

Table 27:WATERBERG POPULATION BY INCOME LEVELS

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	District	Total
No income	3 518	3 745	1 145	1 828	2 320	12 223	24 779
R 1 - R 4800	686	958	320	566	556	4 124	7 210
R 4801 - R 600	1 027	1 876	665	1 275	1 030	8 406	14 279
R 9601 - R9 600	3 165	4 876	2 415	3 292	3 522	18 303	35 573
R 19 601 -R8 200	4 048	6 046	2 465	4 149	4 430	17 572	38 710

R 38 201 - R 76 400	5 021	4 608	1 409	2 796	2 798	8 074	24 706
R 76 401 - R 153 800	3 517	3 354	748	1 815	1 657	5 043	16 134
R 153 801 - R 307 600	2 474	2 358	451	1 158	1 083	3 501	11 025
R 307 601 - R 614 400	1 160	1 417	208	460	460	1 541	5 246

Census 2016

DISABILITY PREVALENCE

According to the Census 2011 and Community Survey 2016, disability prevalence in Limpopo is 6,4%, with the coloured population recording the highest disability prevalence in the Waterberg District Municipality at 13,6%.

Table 28: PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Belabela	Mogalakwena	Waterberg
No difficulty	70 464	96 565	91 797	57 301	273 353	589480
Some difficulty	1 740	2 313	2 709	1 658	8 375	16795
A lot of difficulty	231	344	437	243	1 303	1255
Cannot do at all	176	258	209	99	597	1339
Do not know	103	107	233	38	722	1203
Cannot yet be determined	2 880	4 516	4 520	2 559	14 875	29350
Unspecified	2 983	3 420	2 783	2 114	6 716	15033
Not applicable	6 657	8 245	1 465	2 488	1 741	20596
TOTAL	85 234	115 768	104 153	66 500	307 682	679 337

Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2016



Table 29: TOTAL POPULATION OF WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL 2013-2024 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

YEAR	WATERBERG	LIMPOPO	NATIONAL	WATERBERG AS % OF PROVINCE	WATERBERG AS % OF NATIONAL
2013	694,385	5,550,000	53,700,000	12.8%	1.32%
2014	702,062	5,610,000	54,600,000	12.8%	1.31%
2015	709,845	5,660,000	55,500,000	12.8%	1.31%
2016	717,742	5,720,000	56,400,000	12.9%	1.31%
2017	725,741	5,780,000	57,200,000	12.9%	1.26%
2018	733,766	5,830,000	58,100,000	12.9%	1.26%
2019	741,867	5,880,000	59,000,000	12.47%	1.27%
2020	750,087	6,015,000	59,062,000	12.51%	1.26%
2021	758,438	6,060,000	60, 014,000	11.67%	1.24%
2022	762,862	6,572,721	62 027 503	12.50%	1.23%
2023	775,316	6,200,000	63,002,000	12.50%	1.22%
2024	783,835	6,270,000	64,015,000	12.50%	1.22%
Average Annual growth					
2013-2024	1.18%	0.89%	1.61%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

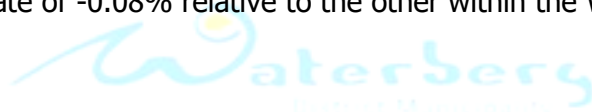
Between 2013 and 2024, the population of the Waterberg District Municipality grew from approximately 702,000 to 784,000, reflecting an average annual growth rate of around 1.1%. In 2019, Waterberg was home to about 750,000 people, accounting for 1.27% of South Africa's total population. While this growth rate is slightly below the national average of 1.61%, it remains higher than Limpopo Province's average annual growth rate of approximately 0.89% over the same period. This indicates that Waterberg has been growing at a moderate yet consistent pace, contributing a sTable share to both the provincial and national population totals.

Table 30: TOTAL POPULATION - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2014, 2019 & 2022 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	2014	2019	2022	Average Annual growth
Thabazimbi	95,400	106,000	65 047	-32% decrease
Lephalale	133,000	148,000	125 198	-8% decrease
Bela-Bela	72,700	79,200	64 306	-15% decrease
Mogalakwena	310,000	320,000	378 198	13% increase
Mookgopong/Modimolle	107,000	109,000	130 113	20,8% increase
Waterberg	718,104	761,546	762 862	1.13 % increase

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

The Lephalale Local Municipality increased the most, in terms of population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.6%, the Thabazimbi Local Municipality had the second highest growth in terms of its population, with an average annual growth rate of 2.4%. The Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -0.08% relative to the other within the Waterberg District Municipality.



POPULATION PROJECTIONS

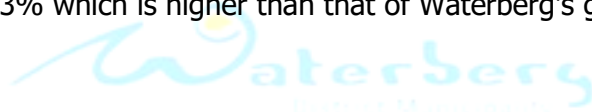
Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Waterberg's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 0.8% from 762 000 in 2019 to 794 000 in 2024.

Table 31: POPULATION PROJECTIONS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2019-2024 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
2019	762,000	5,880,000	59,000,000	12.9%	1.29%
2020	769,000	5,930,000	59,800,000	13.0%	1.29%
2021	775,000	5,980,000	60,600,000	13.0%	1.28%
2022	782,000	6,030,000	61,500,000	13.0%	1.27%
2023	788,000	6,080,000	62,300,000	13.0%	1.27%
2024	794,000	6,130,000	63,100,000	13.0%	1.26%
Average Annual growth					
2019-2024	0.85%	0.82%	1.35%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

The population projection of Waterberg District Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 0.8% between 2019 and 2024. The average annual growth rate in the population over the forecasted period for Limpopo Province and South Africa is 0.8% and 1.3% respectively. The Limpopo Province is estimated to have average growth rate of 0.8% which is lower than the Waterberg District Municipality. The South Africa as a whole is estimated to have an average annual growth rate of 1.3% which is higher than that of Waterberg's growth rate.



POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY 2019 VS. 2024 [PERCENTAGE]

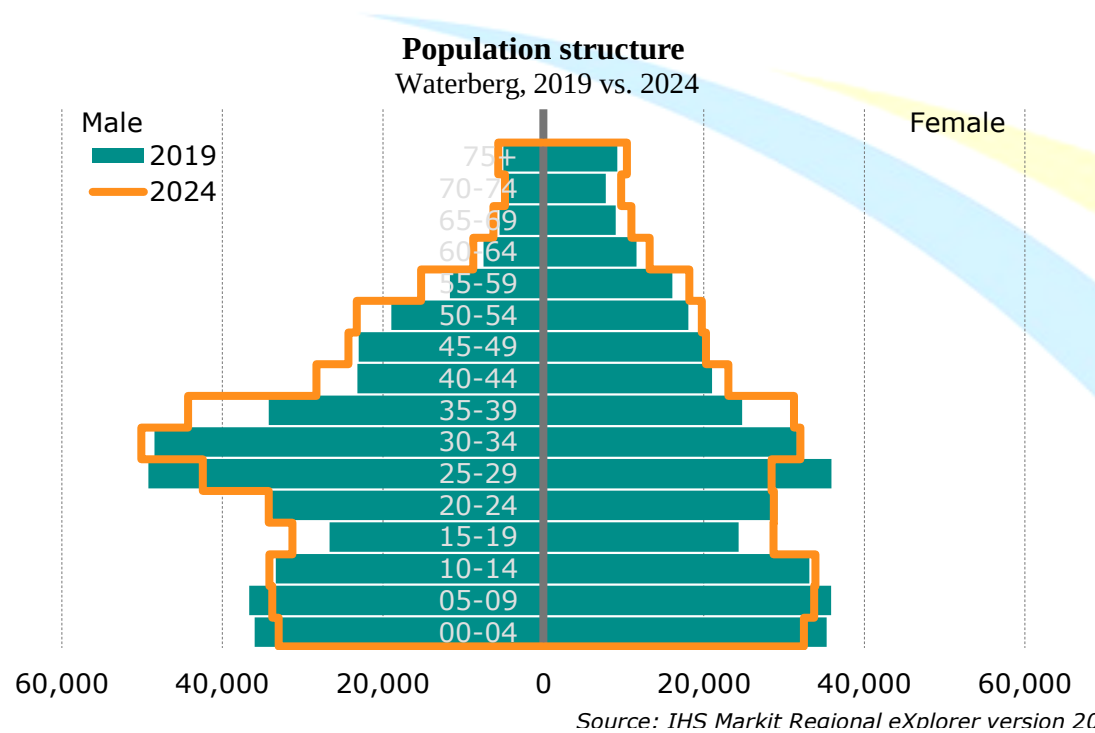


FIGURE 14: POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY 2019 VS. 2024 [PERCENTAGE]

The population pyramid reflects a projected change in the structure of the population from 2019 and 2024. The differences can be explained as follows:

In 2019, there is a significantly larger share of young working age people between 20 and 34 (30.0%), compared to what is estimated in 2024 (27.2%). This age category of young working age population will decrease over time. The fertility rate in 2024 is estimated to be slightly higher compared to that experienced in 2019.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is projected to be significant smaller (25.3%) in 2024 when compared to 2019 (27.6%). In 2019, the female population for the 20 to 34 years age group amounts to 12.7% of the total female population while the male population group for the same age amounts to 17.3% of the total male population. In 2024, the male working age population at 16.0% still exceeds that of the female population working age population at 11.2%, although both are at a lower level compared to 2019.

Waterberg District Municipality's male/female split in population was 109.5 males per 100 females in 2019. The Waterberg District Municipality has significantly more males (52.28%) relative to South Africa (48.96%), and what is typically seen in a stable population. This is usually because of physical labour intensive industries such as mining. In total there were 363 000 (47.72%) females and 398 000 (52.28%) males. This is different from the Limpopo Province as a whole where the female population counted 3.1 million which constitutes 52.71% of the total population of 5.88 million.

Table 32: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY – CENSUS 2022 (POPULATION BY AGE, RACE AND GENDER)

Age Group	African Female		African Male		White Female		White Male	
00–04	33,500	34,000	1,480	1,600	200	203	104	143
05–09	34,200	34,700	1,490	1,620	97	203	102	83
10–14	31,600	31,600	1,350	1,500	133	122	111	93
15–19	22,900	25,200	1,150	1,110	109	166	127	120
20–24	27,400	32,300	1,420	1,510	258	301	139	244
25–29	34,100	46,900	1,390	1,650	274	352	107	341
30–34	29,700	46,000	1,570	1,680	237	392	88	378
35–39	23,100	31,900	1,400	1,580	166	347	151	369
40–44	19,400	21,100	1,360	1,610	108	176	98	274
45–49	18,900	21,200	1,510	1,470	108	169	106	175
50–54	16,500	17,300	1,410	1,380	109	156	69	137
55–59	14,500	10,000	1,500	1,400	74	100	33	95
60–64	9,880	5,750	1,600	1,550	69	93	55	52
65–69	7,200	4,040	1,730	1,340	39	48	56	30
70–74	6,140	3,160	1,550	1,450	25	12	50	29
75+	6,670	3,100	2,500	1,840	13	8	23	35
Total	336,000	368,000	24,400	24,300	2,020	2,850	1,420	2,600

Source: IHS Markit Regional Explorer version 2070

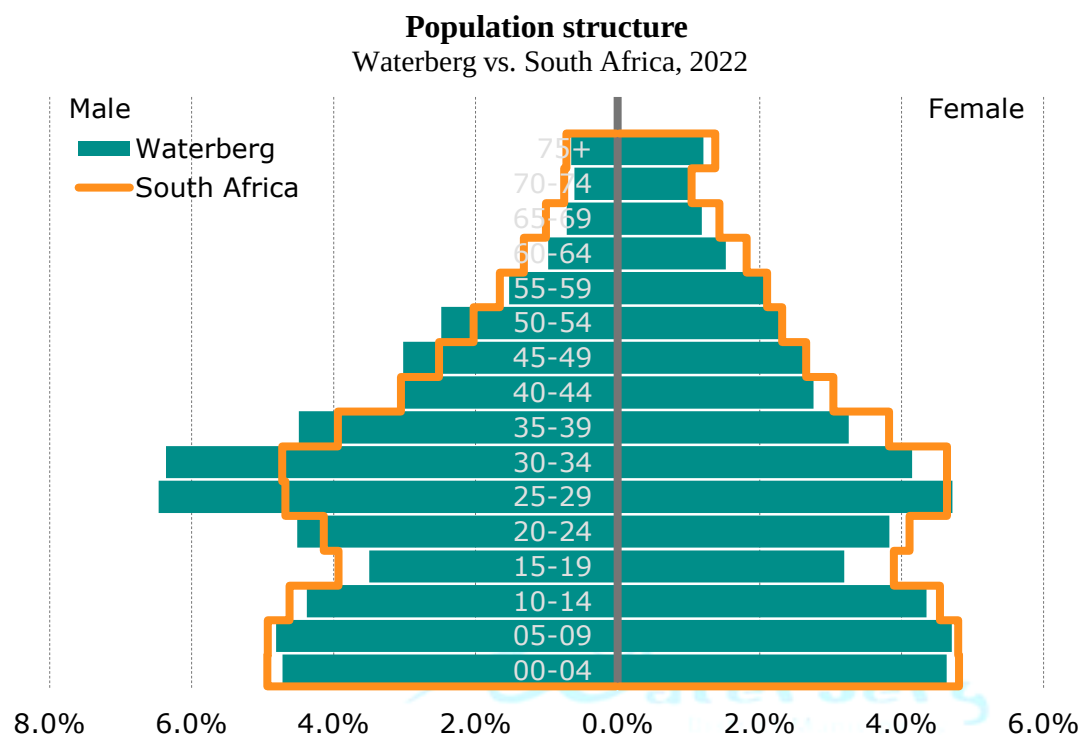
In 2022, the Waterberg District Municipality had a total population of approximately 761,190 people. Of this, 92.4% (704,000) were African, 6.4% (48,700) were White, 0.6% (4,870) were Coloured, and 0.5% (4,020) were Asian, reflecting a demographic profile largely consistent with that of 2019. The largest share of the population fell within the young working-age group (25–44 years), comprising an estimated 268,000 people, or 35.2% of the total population. This was followed by the children and youth (0–14 years) age group, which accounted for approximately 210,000 people or 27.6%. The older working-age group (45–64 years) made up about 127,000 people, while the retired or elderly population (65 years and older) remained the smallest group at roughly

41,100 people. These distributions highlight a predominantly youthful population structure with a strong labour force base, as reflected in the population pyramids below.

POPULATION PYRAMIDS

A population pyramid is a graphic representation of the population categorised by gender and age, for a specific year and region. The horizontal axis depicts the share of people, where the male population is charted on the left-hand side and the female population on the right-hand side of the vertical axis. The vertical axis is divided in 5-year age categories. With the African population group representing 92.4% of the Waterberg District Municipality's total population, the overall population pyramid for the region will mostly reflect that of the African population group. The chart below compares Waterberg's population structure of 2022 to that of South Africa.

POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VS. SOUTH AFRICA, 2022 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

FIGURE 15: POPULATION PYRAMID - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY VS. SOUTH AFRICA, 2022 [PERCENTAGE]

By comparing the population pyramid of the Waterberg District Municipality with the national age structure, the most significant differences are:

There is a significantly larger share of young working age people - aged 20 to 34 (30.0%) - in Waterberg, compared to the national picture (26.9%).

The area appears to be a migrant receiving area, with many of people migrating into Waterberg, either from abroad, or from the more rural areas in the country looking for better opportunities.

Fertility in Waterberg is slightly higher compared to South Africa as a whole.

Spatial policies changed since 1994.

The share of children between the ages of 0 to 14 years is significant smaller (27.6%) in Waterberg compared to South Africa (28.6%). Demand for expenditure on schooling as

percentage of total budget within Waterberg District Municipality will therefore be lower than that of South Africa.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP

A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categorise a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

Table 33: NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2011-2022 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Year	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total	Waterberg as % of province	Waterberg as % of national
2011	188,000	1,400,000	14,400,000	13.4%	1.31%
2012	191,000	1,420,000	14,700,000	13.4%	1.30%
2013	195,000	1,450,000	15,000,000	13.5%	1.30%
2014	198,000	1,470,000	15,300,000	13.5%	1.30%
2015	206,000	1,520,000	15,700,000	13.5%	1.31%
2016	211,000	1,560,000	16,100,000	13.6%	1.31%
2017	215,000	1,580,000	16,400,000	13.6%	1.31%
2018	218,000	1,610,000	16,700,000	13.6%	1.31%
2019	221,000	1,620,000	17,000,000	13.6%	1.30%
2020	236,175	1,577,502	16,657,299	15.0%	1.42%
2021	242,351	1,605,544	16,953,401	15.0%	1.43%

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

2022	248 526	1 811 565	17 828 778	13.7%	1.39%
Average Annual growth					
2011-2022	2.59%	2.37%	1.95%		

Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

In 2022, the Waterberg District Municipality comprised approximately 248,526 households, up from 188,000 households in 2011. This equates to an average annual growth rate (AAGR) of 2.59% in the number of households from 2011 to 2022. Over the same period, the population of Waterberg grew at an average annual rate of 1.95%, implying a decline in average household size.

This trend is confirmed by the data, which shows that the average household size in Waterberg decreased from approximately 3.5 individuals per household in 2011 to around 3.1 persons per household in 2022.

Relative to Limpopo Province, where the number of households grew at an average annual rate of 2.37% over the same period, Waterberg experienced a higher household growth rate. However, South Africa as a whole had an average annual household growth rate of 1.95%, which is lower than Waterberg's rate, indicating that Waterberg's household growth has been relatively strong in the national context.

In terms of household composition by population group (as of the most recent data available), 90.7% of households in Waterberg are ascribed to the African population group, which remains the majority. The White population group accounts for 8.3%, ranking second, followed by the Asian population group at 0.6%, and the Coloured population group representing the smallest share at 0.4%.

NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2019 [PERCENTAGE]

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.83% per annum between 2009 and 2019, which translates in the number of households increasing by 33 200 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2009 and 2019 at 4.50%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for all the other population groups has increased with 1.74%.



HIV+ and AIDS estimates

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people who are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

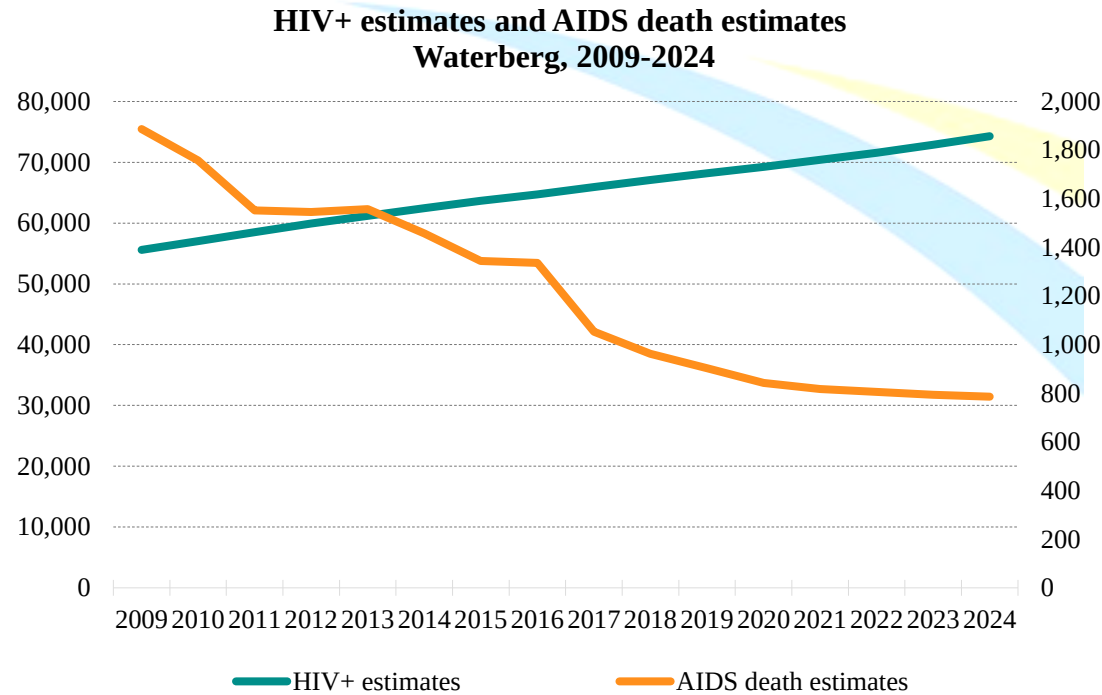
The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates at the provincial level. IHS slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2008 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV prevalence rate per population group, as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular, the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

From 2011 to 2022, the Waterberg District Municipality saw a consistent increase in the number of people infected with HIV. In 2022, 76,000 people in Waterberg were estimated to be living with HIV, reflecting an average annual growth rate of 2.06% since 2011. This represented about 13.3% of the district's population. For the Limpopo Province, HIV cases increased at an average annual growth rate of 1.95% during the same period, with an estimated 570,000 people living with HIV in 2022. South Africa as a whole experienced an average annual growth rate of 2.32% in the number of people infected with HIV, with 7.8 million people estimated to be living with HIV by 2022.

The lifespan of people that are HIV+ could be prolonged with modern ARV treatments. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV can live for 10 years and longer before they reach the final AIDS stage of the disease.



AIDS profile and forecast - Waterberg District Municipality, 2009-2024 [numbers]



Source: IHS Markit Regional eXplorer version 2070

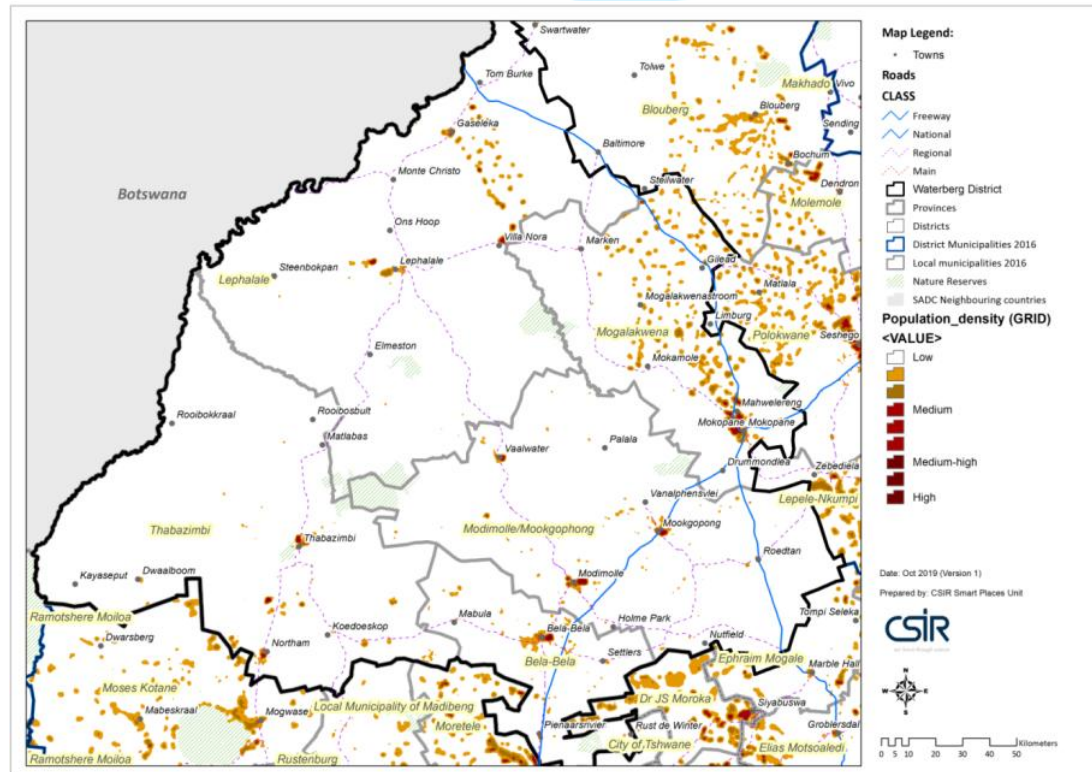
FIGURE 16: HIV+ ESTIMATES AND AIDS DEATH ESTIMATES WATERBERG, 2009-2024

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 1890 in 2009 and 903 for 2019. This number denotes an decrease from 2009 to 2019 with a high average annual rate of -7.10% (or -984 people). For the year 2019, they represented 0.12% of the total population of the entire district municipality.



MAP 5: Population distribution/ density

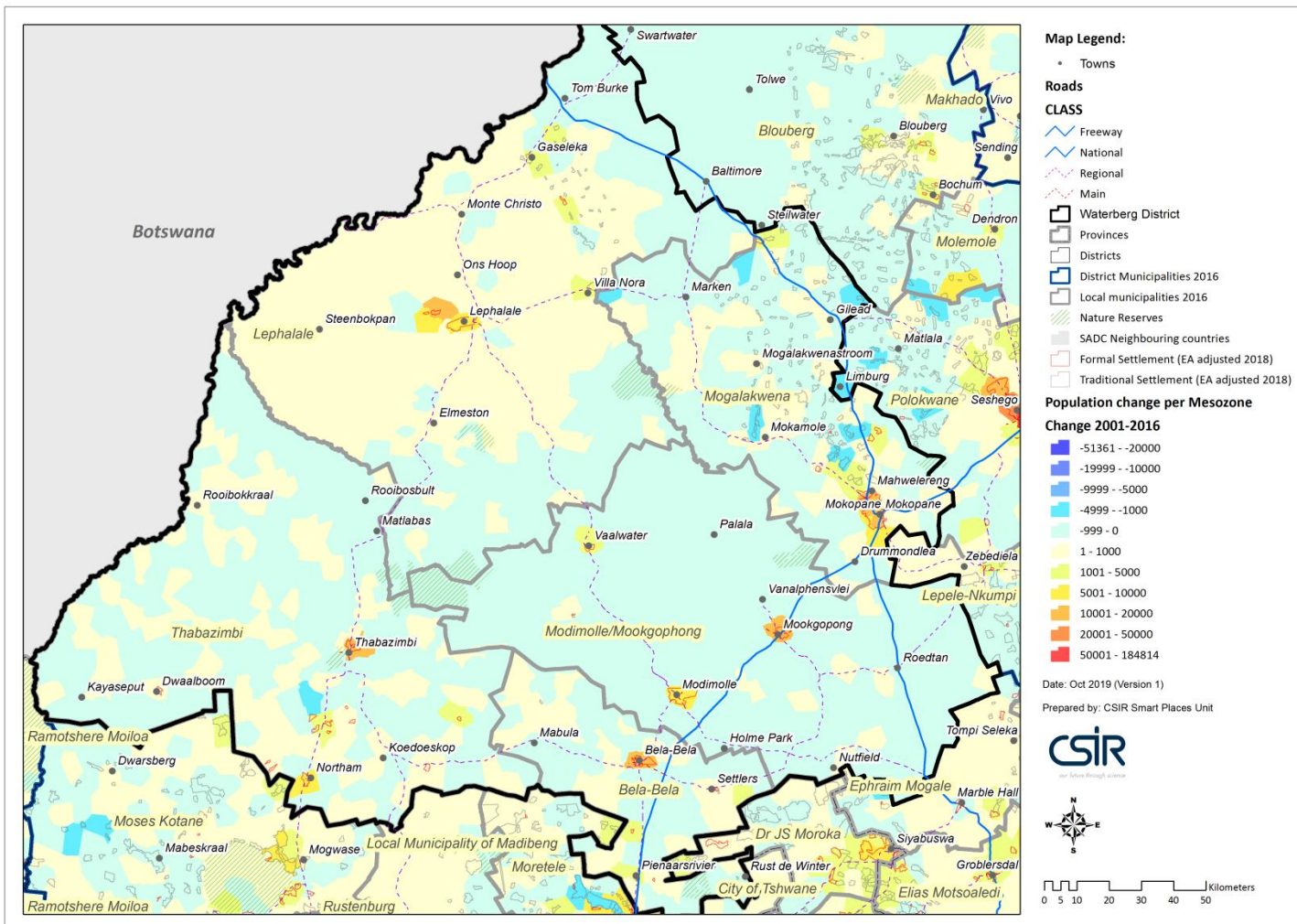
Notes:



This region is dualistic when considering population settlement as depicted in Figure 5. For the most part this region is sparsely settled with most residents living in Rural centres and small towns. This is due to the use of land for commercial agriculture, game farming and conservation. More dense scattered settlement is found along the northern fringe of the region – dominated by mostly traditional settlements.

Settlement services are more easily provided in formal towns. Rural settlement areas require a different approach. In the NSDF Small towns has been identified to form focus areas for service provision.

MAP 6: Population Change



Notes:

Figure 6 indicates population change using the mesozones for the period 2001-2016. A number of trends can be observed: Rural population in the southern parts of the district has decreased. Similarly, in the north-Eastern portion of the district (bordering the Polokwane district) reflects a decline in some of the rural settlements. In contrast the larger centres show population growth. See places such as Lephalale, Mokopane, Mook-gopong, Modimille, Bela-Bela and Thabazimbi. These reflect the national trend of urbanisation as inhabitants seek to be closer to employment possibilities and services.

Table 34:BI Monthly Grant Stats

Grant Type		Number Beneficiaries	Of	Number Of Children	Estimated Amount	Number Of Grants
Old Age Grant		42 051			R83 681 490	42 051
	> 75 Years	16 545			R33 082 830	16 545
Disability Grant	Permanent Disability	8 769			R17 450 310	8 769
	Temporary Disability	3 283			R6 533 170	3 283
Foster Care Grant				4 233	R4 529 310	4 233
Grant-In-Aid		11 101			R5 328 480	11 101
Care Dependency Grant				1 762	R3 506 380	1 762
Child Support Grant	(< 1 Year)			9 443	R4 532 640	9 443
	(1 Year)			12 949	R6 215 520	12 949
	(2 Years)			14 049	R6 743 520	14 049
	(3 Years)			13 344	R6 405 120	13 344
	(4 Years)			13 183	R6 327 840	13 183
	(5 Years)			12 565	R6 031 200	12 565
	(6 Years)			12 321	R5 914 080	12 321
	(7 Years)			12 281	R5 894 880	12 281
	(8 Years)			13 054	R6 265 920	13 054
	(9 Years)			13 022	R6 250 560	13 022
	(10 Years)			12 632	R6 063 360	12 632
	(11 Years)			12 648	R6 071 040	12 648
	(12 Years)			11 806	R5 666 880	11 806
	(13 Years)			11 346	R5 446 080	11 346
	(14 Years)			11 565	R5 551 200	11 565
	(15 Years)			10 890	R5 227 200	10 890
	(16 Years)			10 955	R5 258 400	10 955
	(17 Years)			9 425	R4 524 000	9 425
Grand Total		81 749		223 473	R258 501 410	305 222

Source: SASSA

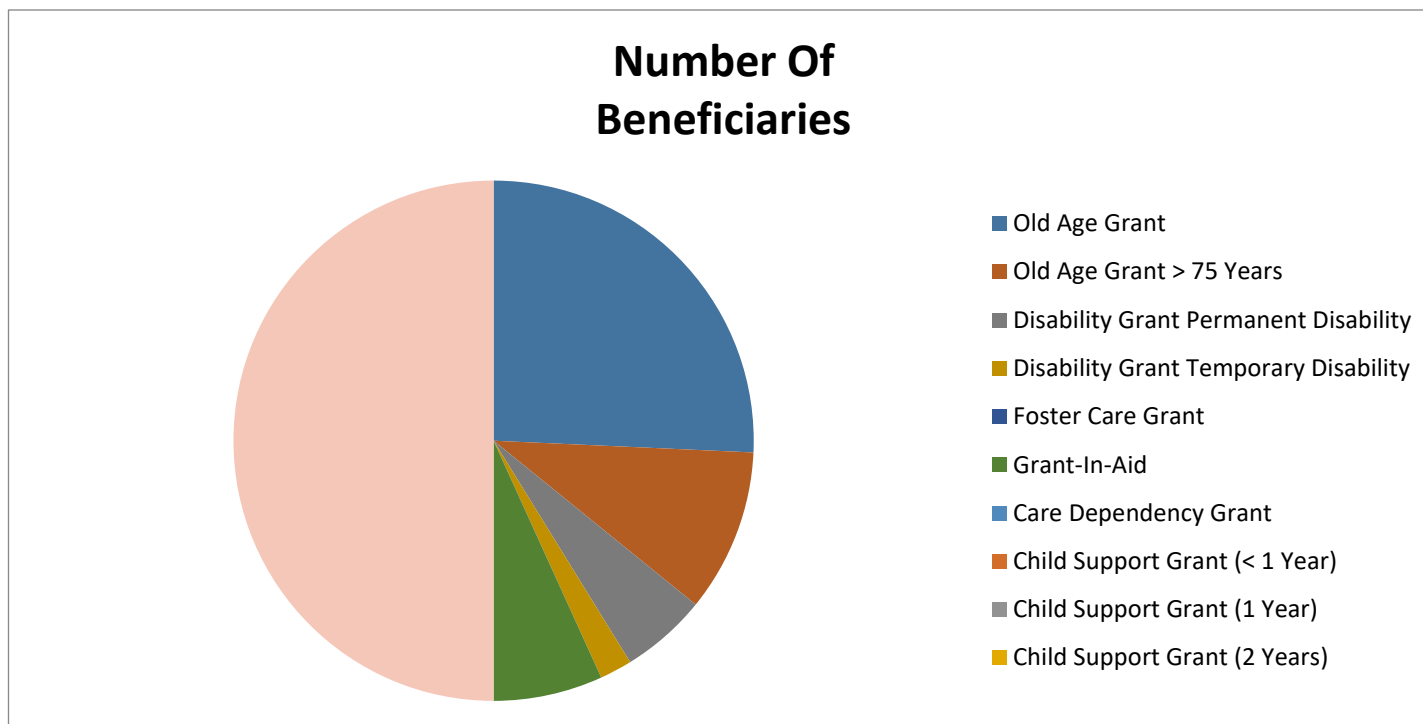


FIGURE 17 : **NUMBER OF BENEFICIARIES**

Table 35: **POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY LOCAL MUNICIPALITY WALKING AND CLIMBING STAIRS DISABILITY STATUS**

PERSONS USING WHEEL CHAIRS IN WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY					
Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Belabela	Mogalakwena	TOTAL
1 880	1 645	1 943	1 309	4 270	1 047

Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2016



3. INTRODUCTION

Inclusion of the Spatial Development Framework (SDF) in the District Plan (DP) The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) plays a pivotal role in shaping the strategic spatial planning and development trajectory of the district. It aims to facilitate balanced and sustainable growth through well-coordinated urban expansion, rural housing development, and infrastructure upgrades. By ensuring equitable access to resources and services across the municipality, the SDF also supports economic activities and long-term developmental stability.

The Waterberg SDF outlines the following spatial vision for the district: "A spatially functional and equitable district that is a conducive living environment for all, an energy hub, and an eco-tourism destination. This vision underscores the district's commitment to creating inclusive spaces that foster economic, environmental, and social sustainability.

3.1 SPATIAL RATIONALE

3.2. SPATIAL PLANNING LAND USE MANAGEMENT IMPLEMENTATION

Integration of SPLUMA in Municipal Spatial Planning

The inclusion of SPLUMA (Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act) in the IDP reinforces the municipality's role in effective spatial governance and development.

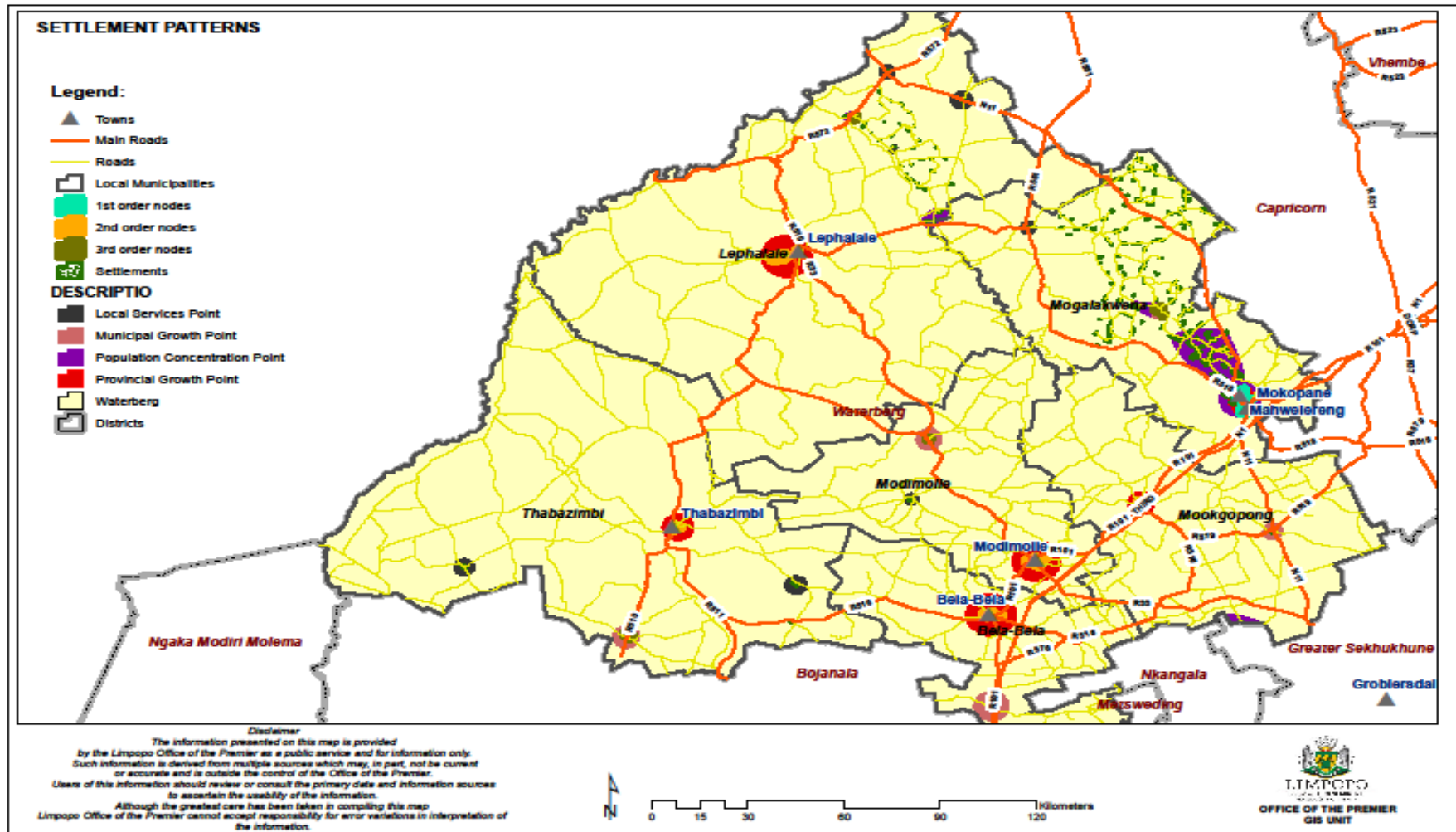
The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) provides municipalities with the legislative framework to fulfill their developmental role effectively. By applying directive principles and land use schemes, municipalities serve as the primary regulators in land use decision-making, ensuring sustainable development practices and spatial equity. SPLUMA's provisions align with environmental legislation and other municipal laws, strengthening integrated governance. Within the district:

- Bela-Bela, Mogalakwena, and Modimolle-Mookgophong municipalities support the District Municipal Planning Tribunal (DMPT) and actively participate in adjudicating spatial planning matters.
- Thabazimbi Local Municipality (LM) has submitted an application to join the District Municipal Planning Tribunal to further enhance coordinated planning efforts.
- Lephalale Local Municipality (LM) has established its own Municipal Planning Tribunal, ensuring localized adjudication of spatial planning applications specific to its development priorities.



MAP 7: Settlement Patterns/Hierarchy of Settlement

SETTLEMENT PATTERNS/HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENTS



SETTLEMENT PATTERNS AND DEVELOPMENT

Table 36: MAJOR TOWNS/SETTLEMENTS

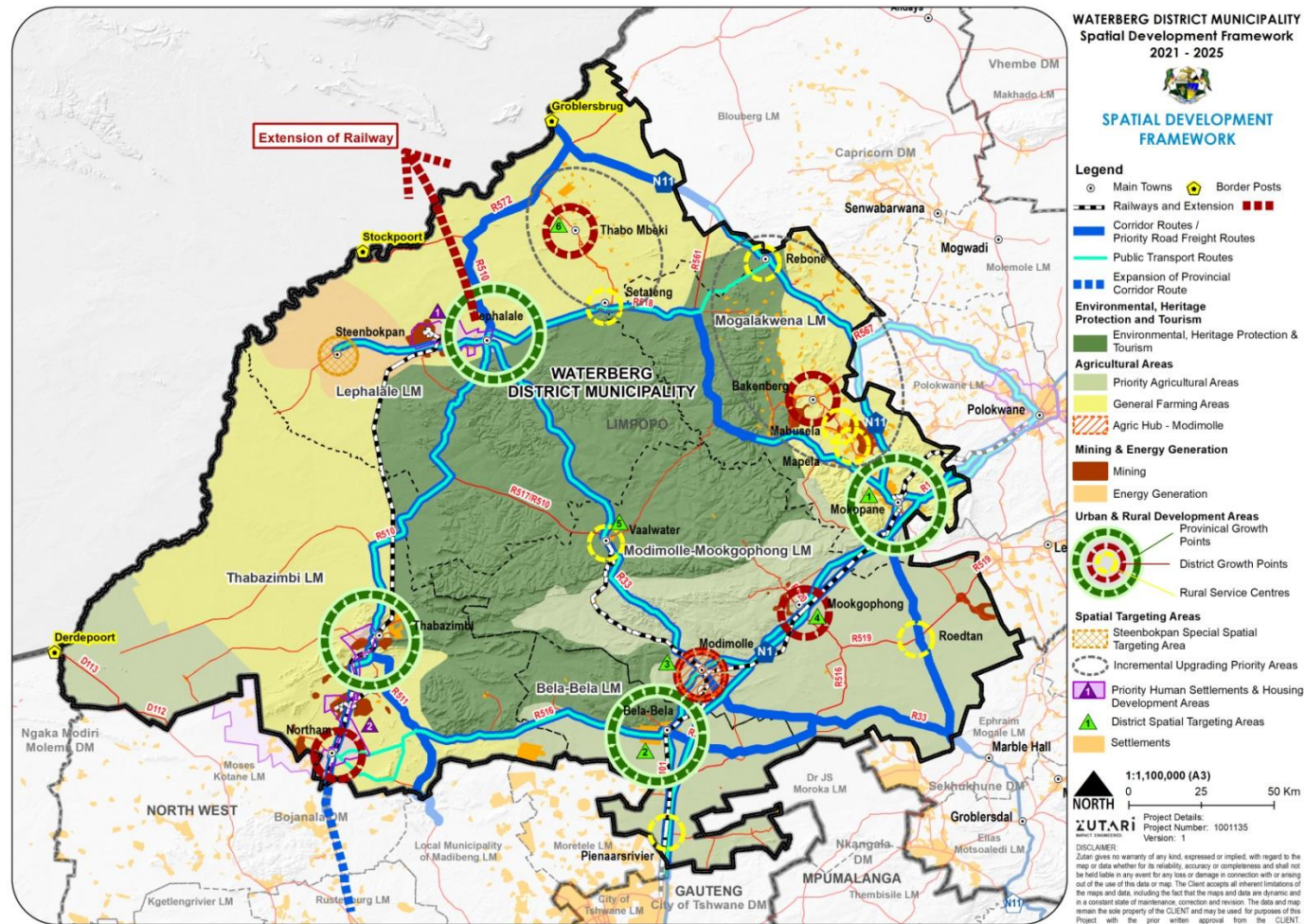
TOWN/SETTLEMENT	BRIEF HISTORY
Mokopane	It was established by the Voortrekker leader Hendrik Potgieter in 1852 and named Vredenburg as symbol of reconciliation between himself and the other Voortrekker leader, Andries Pretorius. Due to continuous skirmishes between the early settlers and the local tribes as well as the heavy toll malaria had on the people, the town was evacuated and only re-established in 1890. It was awarded municipal status 1939. The name was changed again in 2002 to Mokopane after the Ndebele chief who moved to the Waterberg area in the nineteenth century.
Mookgophong	Was established in 1886 as a halfway house between Pretoria and Polokwane. It served as a trading post until 1907 when it was proclaimed as a town.
Modimolle	Was established by a group of pioneers known as the Jerusalem Trekkers who believed they have reach the Nile and had been close to the Holy Land. The river flowed north and the koppie (Modimolle) looked like a pyramid. The town was established in 1866.
Bela Bela	Tshwana people settled in the 1860 around the warm water springs. The town was established in 1882 and it got municipal status in 1932.
Thabazimbi	Was established only in 1953 after iron ore discovered was discovered in 1919. The ore deposits were bought for Iscor and the town established for the employees.
Lephalale	It is the youngest town in the WDM area. It was established in 1960 and got municipal status only in 1986.

Table 37: DISTRIBUTION OF SETTLEMENTS WITHIN THE DISTRICT

Municipality	No of settlement	No. of wards
Bela Bela	7 Farms & Small holding	9
Modimolle-Mookgophong :	33	14
Mogalakwena	178 villages, 2 Townships, 1 Town	32
Lephalale	38 villages, 1 Town, 2 Township	12
Thabazimbi	1 Town, 1 Township	12
Total for District	216 Villages, 6 Towns, 11 Townships	79

MAP 8: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas

The Spatial Development Framework of the Limpopo Province classifies the towns and villages in First, Second and Third Order Settlements to accommodate development and investment.



Source: WDM SDF 2021

TABLE 38: MUNICIPAL PLANNING TRIBUNAL AND SPATIAL PLANNING POLICIES STATUS QUO

Municipality	Spatial Development Framework	Land Use Scheme	SPLUMA BYLAWS	MPT (Municipal Planning Tribunal)
WDM	Adopted Review 2026	Not applicable	Not applicable	WDM MPT Functional
Bela-Bela	Adopted BBLM SDF, 2025 Under Implementation	Adopted BBLM LUMS, 2017 Planned to be reviewed during 2026/27 FY	Adopted BBLM SPLUMA BY-LAW, 2017 Aligned and under implementation	WDM MPT Functional
Mogalakwena	Approved and Adopted by council	Under development Due for public participation	Adopted	WDM MPT Functional
Modimolle – Mookgophong	Adopted 2021	Adopted 2023	Adopted 2019	WDM MPT Functional
Thabazimbi	Adopted 2014 Need for review	Adopted 2024 Need for review	Adopted 2015 Under review	WDM MPT Functional
Lephalale	Under review	Under review	Gazetted September 2017 (to be reviewed to intensify provisions for areas under Traditional Leadership)	Re-establishment at an advanced stage. Awaiting submission of representatives from sector departments.

The table above outlines, The District Municipal Planning Tribunal is operational and includes three participating local municipalities: Bela-Bela, Mogalakwena, and Modimolle-Mookgophong. These municipalities collaborate to oversee spatial planning decisions at the district level. Additionally:

Lephalale Local Municipality has established its own Municipal Planning Tribunal, handling local planning applications independently.

Thabazimbi Local Municipality has applied to join the Waterberg District Tribunal, further enhancing regional coordination.

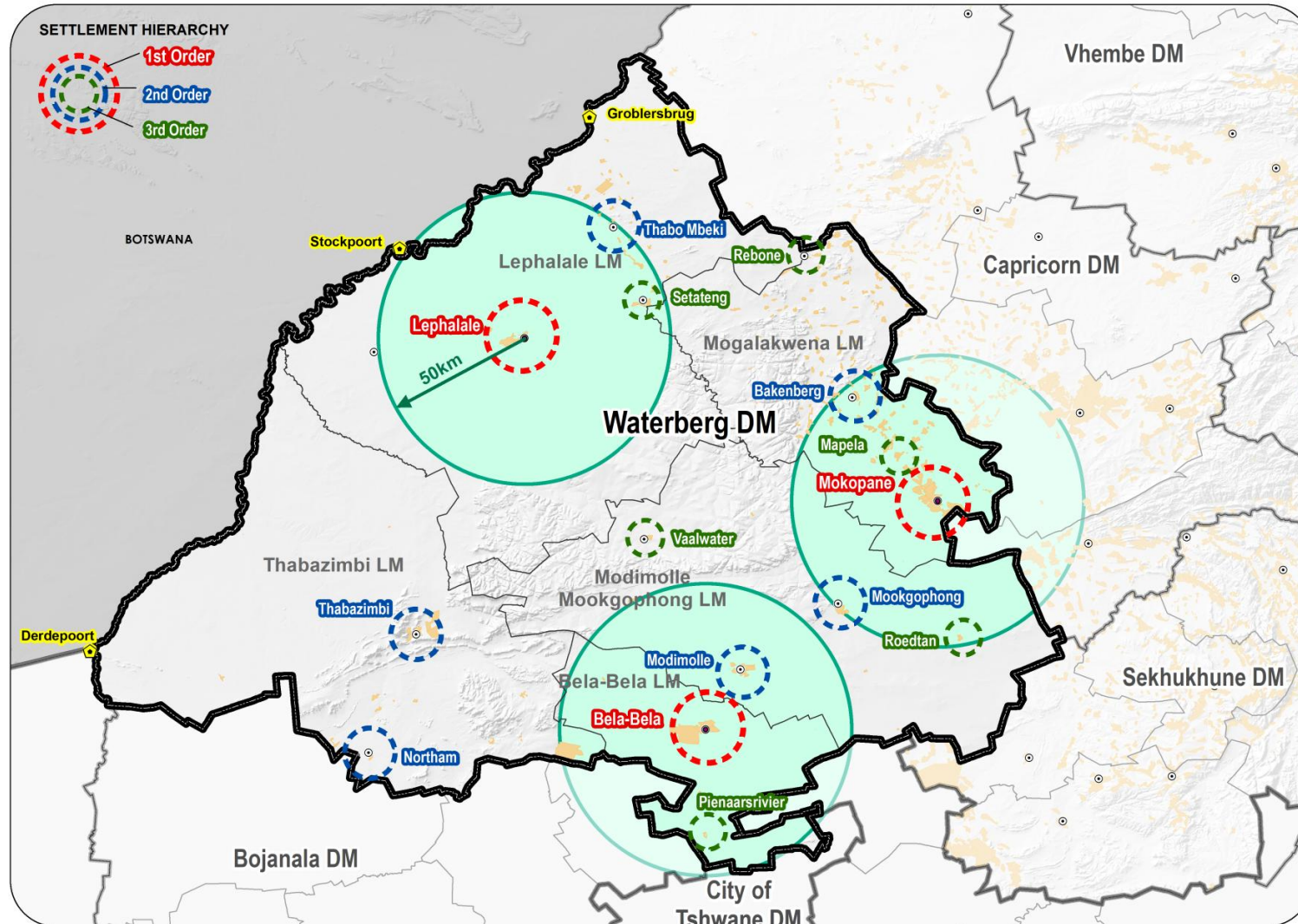


Table 39: HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT / GROWTH POINTS AREAS

Nodes	Settlements	Est. 2016 pop	%total pop
1st order (small to medium towns)	Bela-Bela Lephalale & Marapong Mokopane & Mahwelereng	48,814 36,901 67,628	
Sub-total 1st order		153,343	19.9%
2nd order (small towns)	Thabazimbi & Regorogile Northam Modimolle & Phagameng Mookgophong Bakenberg Thabo Mbeki	32,731 13,696 46,328 23,874 9,148 4,949	
Sub-total 2nd order		130,726	17.0%
3rd order (small towns and isolated regional service centres)	Roedtan & Thusang Pienaarsrivier Mabatlane (Vaalwater) Setateng Rebone Ga-mabusela	1,510 2,868 4,823 10,484 6,137 3,863	
Sub-total 3rd order		29,685	3.8%
4th order (villages)	e.g. Abbotspoort & Makaunyane; Ga-Seleka; Tshamahansi; Masodi; Vingerkraal		
Sub-total 4th order		329,569	42.9%
5th order (remote villages)	e.g. Tom Burke; Marnitz; Madibaneng; Radium		
Sub-total 5th order		22,913	2.9%
Other	Farm, working towns, prisons, etc Informal settlements	81,475 20,367	
Sub-total other		101,842	13.2%
Total		768,078	



MAP 9: Hierarchy of Settlement / Growth Points Areas



Source: WDM SDF 2021

Table 40: LAND USE COMPOSITION - LAND USE MANAGEMENT SCHEMES AND SDFS (WDM SDF)

MUNICIPALITY	LAND USE SCHEME	USE	IMPLEMENTED	SDF	SPLUMA BYLAWS	LED Strategies	ITPs
Bela Bela	Proclaimed land use scheme is in place		Implemented	Available	Adopted	Adopted	No ITP
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Proclaimed land use scheme under development		Not Implemented	Available	Adopted	Due for Development	No ITP
Mogalakwena	Proclaimed land use scheme is in place		Implemented	Under Review Process	Adopted	Under review	Awaiting adoption Council
Lephalale	Proclaimed land use scheme outdated		Not Implemented	Outdated	Adopted	Adopted	Adopted
Thabazimbi	Proclaimed land use scheme under development		Not Implemented	Under review process	Adopted	Due for Review	NO ITP
WDM	N/A		N/A	N/A	Adopted	Due for Review	Due for review

The settlement patterns in the Waterberg District have been developed based on the following forces:

Townships, Local Service points, Towns, The rural nature of large parts of the district.

NB: These have created a number of small settlements with no clear hierarchy based on size.



AREAS OF NATIONAL IMPORTANCE

There are three elements of national importance within the Waterberg District.

The Medupi Power Station that will supplement existing power generation and is of critical importance to ensure sufficient energy capacity for the entire country over the long term;

The Waterberg coal fields located adjacent to Medupi, as identified by the National Development Plan; and a heavy haul corridor from the Lephalale area to the south.

Land Claims & Illegal occupation of land: Land claims and land restitution is a very important albeit a contentious issue. However, from a spatial planning point of view land ownership does not necessarily determine the preferred use of land. The exceptions are, as is the case with tribal land, where uses are restructured through restricted ownership practices, and where land restitution leads to commercially productive land becoming unproductive. The land restitution process can restrict investment and economic activity over the short and medium term but should not have an impact on the long term use of the land.

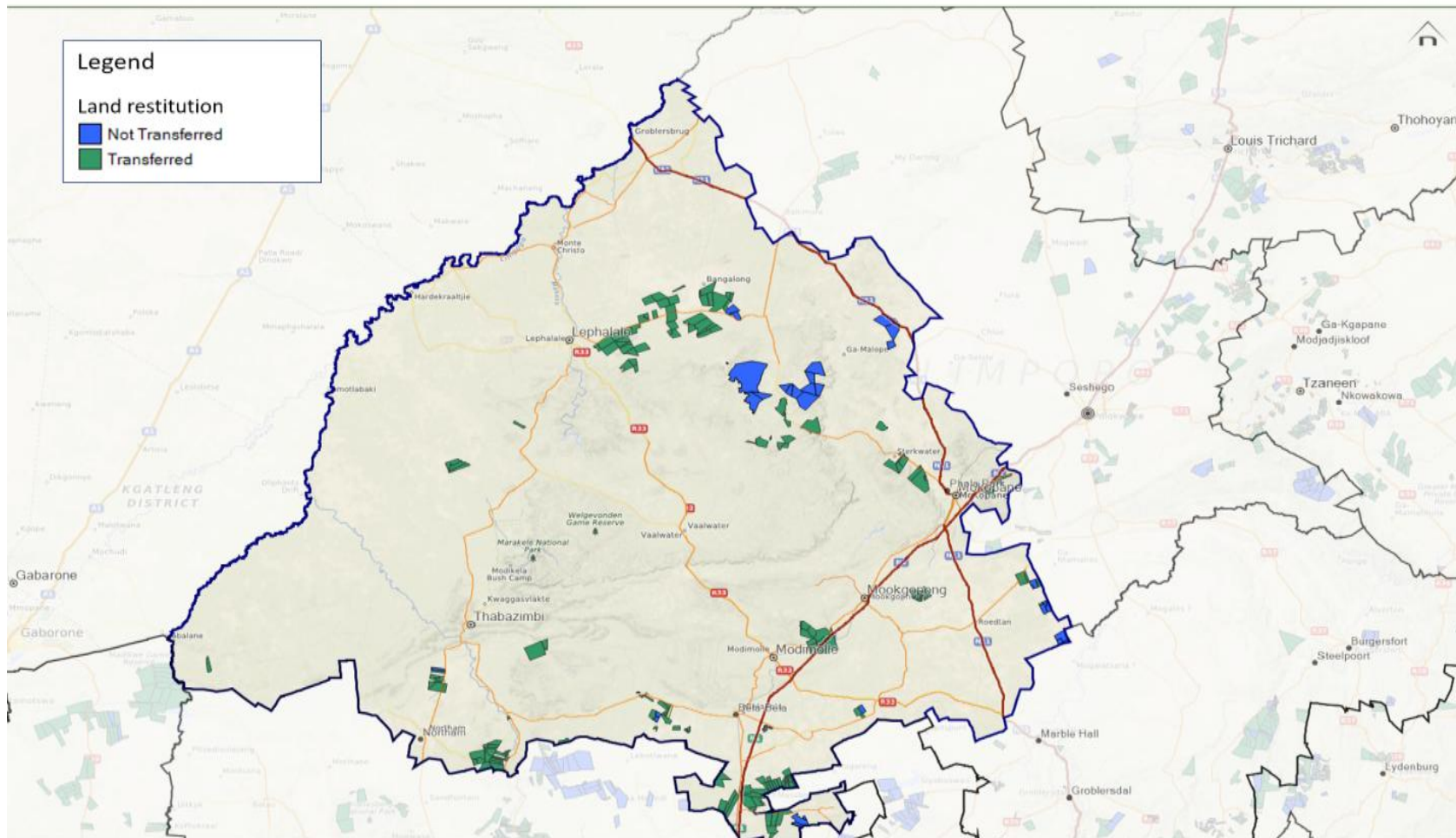
Table 41: WDM SETTLED LAND CLAIMS

PROJECT NAME	PROPERTIES RESTORED	TOTAL AREA(ha)	NO. OF HOUSEHOLDS
Moretele (pienansrevier) phase 1, 2 & 3 Bela Bela Municipality	Vaalboschblt 66 JR Ptn 1& 13	1,966	111
Letlhakaneng (phase 1, 2 & 3)	Turffontein 499KR Ptn 24, 25, & 39. Phase 2 ptn 17, 19 23, 29, 32, 34 and 35 (152. 6582) ptn 18, 20, 32 and 33 of farm Turffontein 499	305	95
Mawela family	Farm Gruispan 16 JR	1,392	37
Bela Bela (phase 1 & 2) Bela Bela Municipality	ptn 2, 4, 5 and ptn 8 of Olieventein 475 KR, R/E of Olieventein 562 KR, ptn 3, 31 and R/E of ptn 34 of the farm Rietspruit 527 KQ and ptn 1 of Zandspruit 472 KR (Phase 1) Ptn 11, 14, 16, 20, 21, 22, R/E of ptn 24, 25 & 38 of the farm Rietspruit 527 KR R/E of ptn 9 & 10 of the form Zoete-inval 484 KR Ptn 4 of the Farm Aliwal 486 KR	6,724	90

Ga Mashong Matlala (phase 1 to 3)	Haakdoringfontein 85 JR: R/E Ptn 1, 2, 3 4, 6, 7, Kameelrevier 77 JR: Ptn 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13 Kliprand 76 JR: R/E Ptn 1, 2, 3, 7, 8, 9, 13, 15, 17, Elandsoewer 707 JR, Uitvlugt 709 JR Apiesdoring 78 JR, Kumnandi 67 JR	6, 042	174
Nosijeje/Maurine Patience	R/E of Ptn 21, 22, 32, 33, 34, and 35 of the farm Buiskop	62	0
	R/E of ptn 4 of Middelkopje 33 JR, ptn 11, 5, 6, 7 R/E of ptn 8 of Middelkopje 33 JR ptn 12, 13, 14, R/E of De Kuil 28 JR, Turflaagte 35 JR Ptn 5 of Turflaagte 35 JR R/E of Palmietgat 34 JR R/E of ptn 3 of Palmietgat 34 JR Ptn 4 of Turflaagte 35 JR Ptn 1 of Granspan 37 JR R/E OF Kalkheuvel 73 JR Ptn 1 of Vaalbosch 38 JR Ptn 1, 2, & 3 of the farm Turflaagte 35 JR	8,217 59	0



MAP 10: WDM Settled Land claims



Waterberg DM: IDP Analysis
Land claims

Prepared by: Burgert Gildenhuys
Date & time: 30 November 2016 - 12:16



Copyright and all rights reserved
MapAble (Pty) Ltd

Waterberg
District Municipality

Table 42: ILLEGAL OCCUPATION OF LAND

Waterberg District Informal Settlements per Local Municipality

INFORMAL SETTLEMENT: WATERBERG DISTRICT			
District	Municipality	Number of informal settlement	Status
Waterberg	Mogalakwena	2	Shacks /informal structures
	Thabazimbi	5	Shacks /informal structures
	Lephalale	3	Shacks /informal structures
	Modimolle- Mookgophong	9	Shacks /informal structures
	Bela-Bela	3	Shacks /informal structures
Total		22	

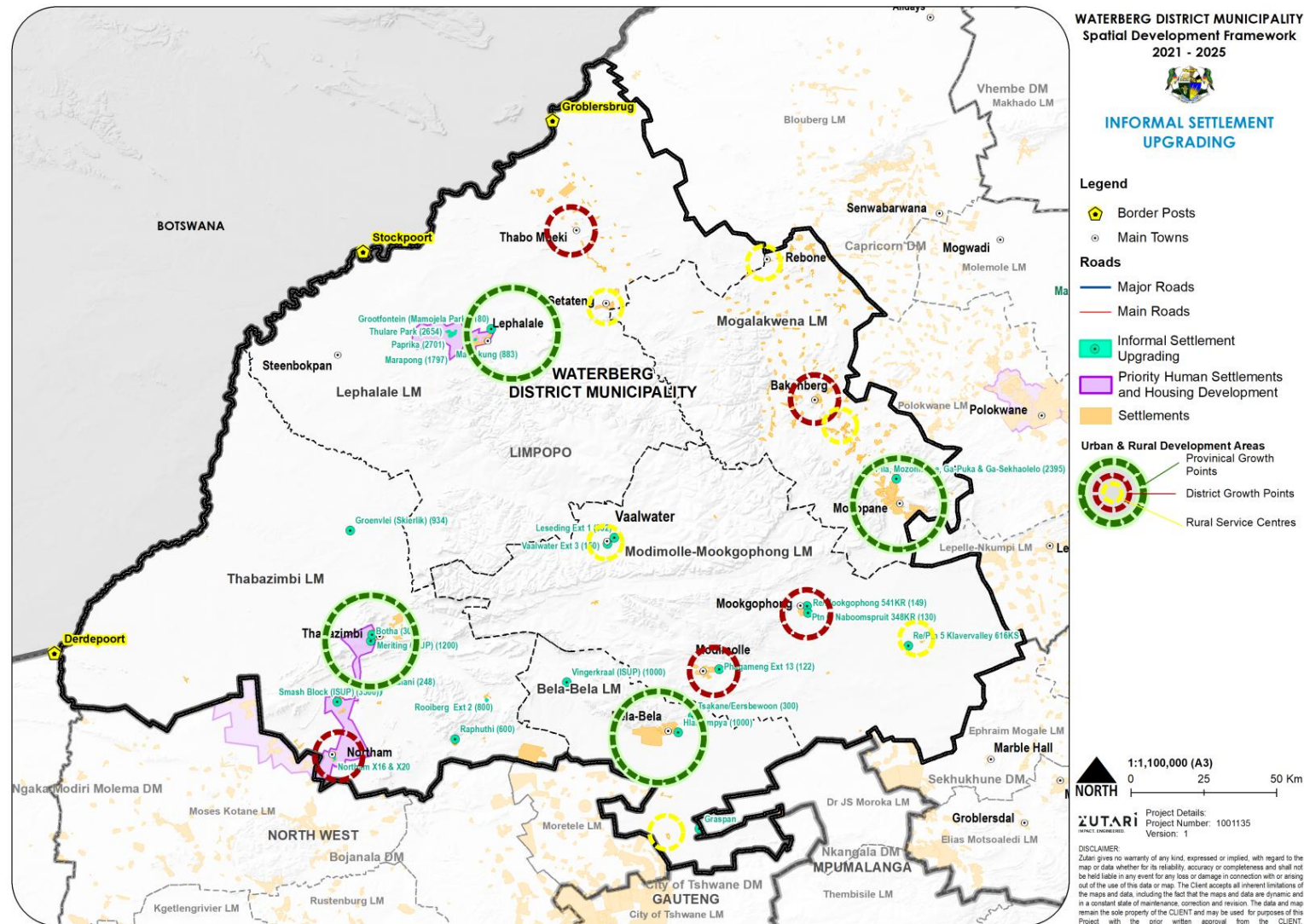



Table 43: Informal Settlements in WATERBERG

No	Municipality	Settlement
1	Modimolle	Phagameng Ext 8, Ext 11, Ext 12, Ext 13, Zuma Park, Mookgophong Ext 3, Ext 4, Ext 6, MpopotlaA, B, Alma, Phagameng along R101, Phagameng next to Ext 11 Zuma section, Phagameng next to airfield, Opposite hospital next to Phagameng Ext 7, Vaalwater Ext 2 , Ext 4, Land adjacent Vaalwater Ext 4, Leseding Ext3, Ext 6, Roedtan Thusang Ext 1 , Phomolong, Phagameng 8(A)
2	Bela-Bela LM	Warmbaths Ext 25, Jacob Zuma, Tsakane, Bela-Bela Ext 9, Spa Park, Eersbewoond
3	Thabazimbi LM	Jabulani, Smashblock, Raphuthi, Meriting, Kwa Botha, Matikiring and parts of Regorogile etc
4	Lephalale LM	Steenbokpan, Marapong, Grootfontein/ Mamojela Park, Thulare Park, Mahlakung
5	Mogalakwena	Ga-Pila, Ga sekhaolelo, Mzombane, GaGapuka Ext 1&2 Ga-Pila 2(Mountain view), Sekgakgapeng Extension, Informal settlement between Sekgakgapeng and Moshate, Tshamahansi Extension

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

MAP 11: MAP OF INFORMAL SETTLEMENTS IN WATERBERG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY"



Source: WDM SDF 2021

Table 44: STRATEGICALLY LOCATED LAND IN WDM

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION/ERF	SIZE	COMMENTS/REMARKS
ERF 1067 Warmbarth Ext 5 (Park) Bela Bela LM	2.6239 HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for Housing as part of the then Proposed ABSA/ COGHSTA project.
Remainder of Portion 25 Of Hatbad 465KR	42HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for Housing as part of the then Proposed ABSA/ COGHSTA project. Part of the area is not developable due to rocky outcrops.
Remainder of 655 Warmbaths Bela Bela LM	13HA	Council resolved on the development of the area for middle income, and it is located closer to the CBD. Potential BNG project.
Remainder of Wilgegend 17JR(Masakhane) Bela Bela LM	197Ha of which over 100 ha is still undeveloped/planned and may be available for future development.	The land is currently owned by Waterberg but is in the process of being transferred to the municipality. The municipality has earmarked the area for expansion of Masakhane Settlement as well as accommodation of a Cemetery and Land-fill site.
Mookgophong Ext 8		
Mookgophong Hostels		
Thusang Ext 1		
Mookgophong Ext 4 & Siclebos Farm		
Naboomspruit 348kr		

Table 45: NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES PERMITTED AND UNLICENSED PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES	PERMITTED SITES	UNLICENSED/ (Rehabilitation and closure lincense)
Bela Bela	1	1	0
Lephalela	2	2	0
Modimolle-Mookgophong	3	2	1 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)

Mogalakwena	1	2	0
Thabazimbi	2	2	3 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Total	12	8	3

Table 46: TYPES OF DWELLING

House or brick structure on a separate stand or yard
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials
Flat in block of flats
Town/cluster/semi-detached house (simplex; duplex; triplex)
House/flat/room in back yard
Informal dwelling/shack in back yard
Informal dwelling/shack NOT in back yard
Room/flatlet not in back yard but on shared property
Caravan or tent
Private ship/boat
Not applicable (collective living quarters)

LAND

Land remains one of the biggest constraints towards development in the district, the province and the country. The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, is slowly changing the landscape in the agricultural sector by acquiring land and allocating it to the previously disadvantaged groups for productive utilisation. Waterberg district's share of the provincial land claim's lodge is 7.64%. In the district, 539 land claims were lodged from inception of the programme to date.



Land ownership and Land use

Farms and agricultural holdings make up the district's agricultural land. The land is either privately owned by people or the state, or it may be acquired through other means (such as trusts). The term "state ownership" describes areas of land that are owned by:

- State Owned Entities (SOE) ▪ Municipalities ▪ Provincial Governments ▪ National Government,
- Land holdings held by private individuals, corporations, trusts, or private organizations are referred to as private ownership.
- The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform's land audit revealed the following structure of land ownership in Waterberg DM.

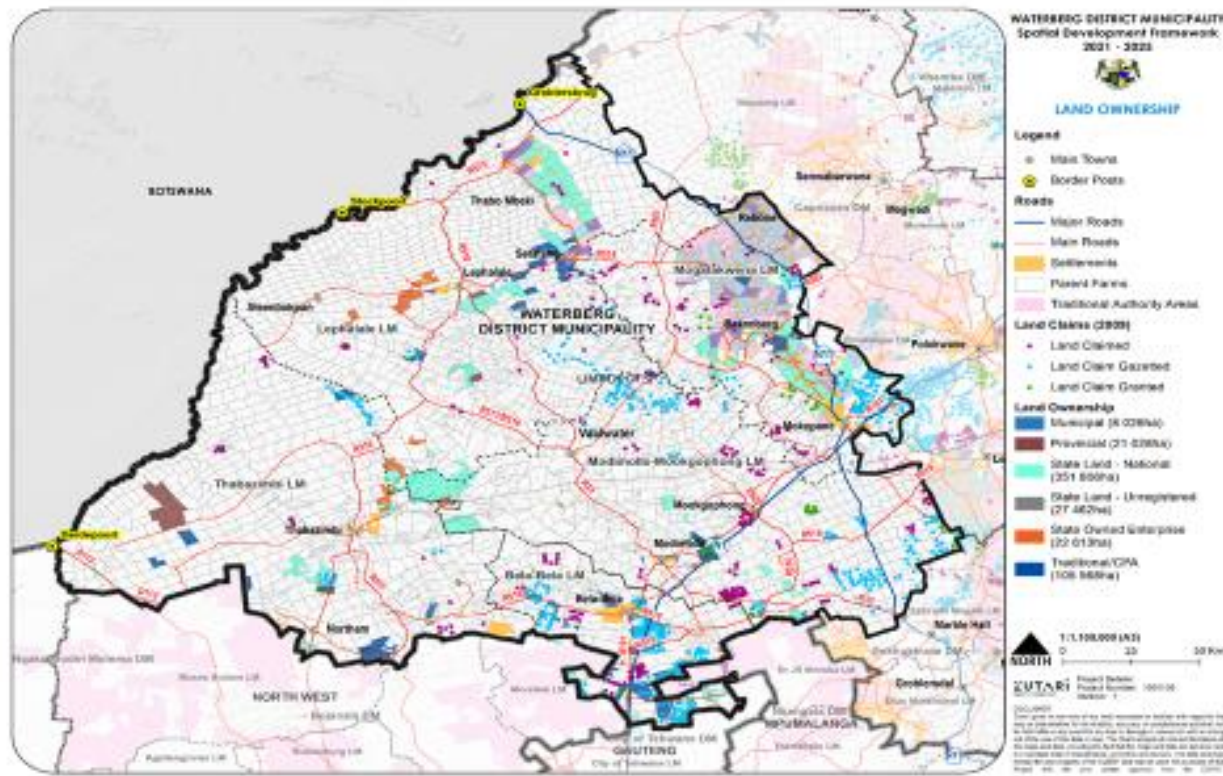
Table 47: LODGED CLAIMS

LODGED CLAIMS		OUTSTANDING CLAIMS
Waterberg	539	159



MAP 12:: LAND CLAIMS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

LAND CLAIMS



It is evident from the map above that land claims are distributed throughout the area, with a large contingent in the central and eastern parts as well as to the south of the District. Some of these claims are located in areas of high agricultural potential and in environmentally sensitive areas.



Table 48: RESTITUTION PROGRAMME

Thus far, 380 of the 539 (translating to 70.5%) of the land claims lodged were settled.

District	No of claims settled	H/H	Beneficiaries	Hectors	Financial Compensation Paid	Land Restoration	Grants	Total
Waterberg	380	9371	32903	222559,85	R 77m	R 1,2bn	R 28m	R 1,3bn

Waterberg district has 159 outstanding land claims which is approximately 30%.

Land Acquisition

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform acquired 176 farms since the programme inception until August 2019. The land use of the purchased farms is mainly for livestock, crop production and game farming.

Table 49: LAND ACQUISITION AS AT AUGUST 2019

District	Farms	Ha	Beneficiaries	Female	Households	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	176	91899	1836	713	835	379	4

LAND DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

One of the key objectives of the department is to promote sustainable rural livelihoods. The department's focus on food security and rural livelihood to address social policy question resulted in support to 10 projects on one hectare one household programme since the inception of the programme until Dec 2018.



Table 50: ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE PROGRAMME

District	ONE HOUSEHOLD ONE HECTARE SINCE INCEPTION OF THE PROGRAMME 2016/17 TO END OF DEC 2018						
	Number of projects	Hectares	Beneficiaries	Female	House Holds	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	10	471	471	199	471	48	06

RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

As part of farmer settlement support and recapitalization of land reform 87 projects (which is 33.3% of the provincial projects) benefited from the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform with production infrastructure. This infrastructure support includes amongst others intensive production system (tunnels), irrigation systems, Machinery and Equipment benefitting 603 previously disadvantaged groups.

Table 51: RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

District	RECAPITALIZATION AND DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME SINCE INCEPTION 2009/10 TO END OF DEC 2018						
	Number of projects	Hectares	Beneficiaries	Female	House Holds	Youth	Disabled
Waterberg	87	28375	603	249	87	57	7

The department through its PLAS programme focuses primarily on the poor and is based on the State proactively purchasing land with high agricultural potential. The department then select beneficiaries who can lease the land with the option to purchase it. The department has leased land to 61 farms on a 30-year period and 67 farms are in the pipeline.



Table 52: SIGNING OF PLAS LEASES

DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	NO. OF LEASES TO BE SIGNED	30-YEAR LEASES SIGNED
Waterberg	67	61

Waterberg District Municipality Informal Settlements

With established towns and townships within the municipal area, there are sprawling informal settlements that are found adjacent to the nodes, especially where there are mining activities. The existence of the informal settlements within the municipal area extends the service delivery backlogs in municipalities.

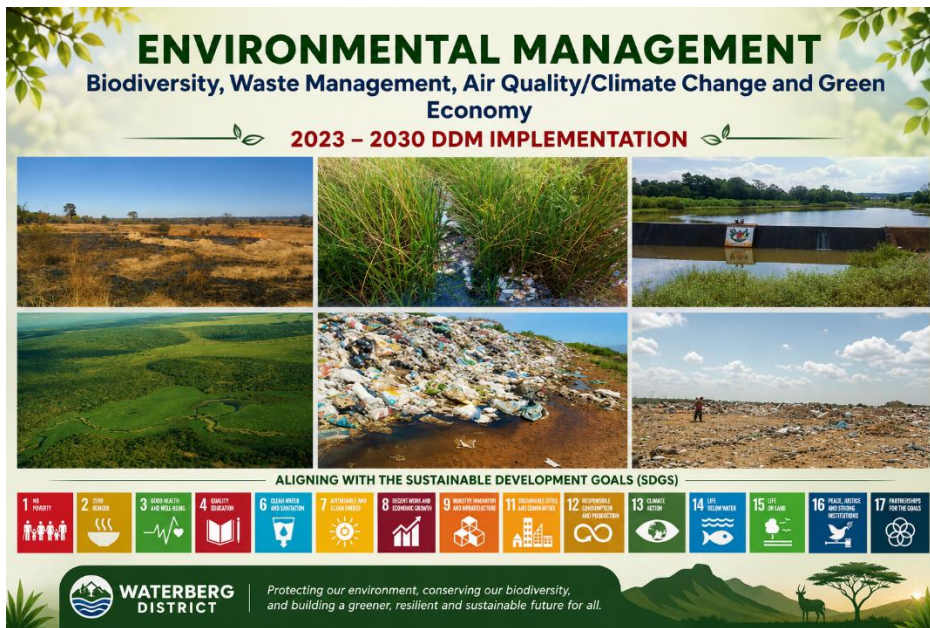
SPATIAL CHALLENGES & OPPORTUNITIES

- District SDF still to be reviewed
- Formalization of informal settlements to inform spatial hierarchy.
- Mushrooming of an informal settlement.
- High number of RDP houses without basic service.
- Fragmented nature of current urban development.
- Lack of Municipal land for development.
- Illegal land use activities on agricultural land.
- Poor planning in rural areas due to lack of implementation of land use management scheme/system.
- Illegal occupation of land/ land invasion.
- Dysfunctional spatial patterns.

SPATIAL IMPLICATIONS

- Deliberate measures to dismantle racial settlement patterns.
- CBD to incorporate into IDP for implementation.

3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS



NATURAL ENVIRONMENT & BIODIVERSITY

(Fauna and Flora, climate, rainfall, geology, landscape, rivers, mountains, soils)

WASTE MANAGEMENT

(Landfill Sites and Recycling)

AIR QUALITY/CLIMATE CHANGE AND GREEN ECONOMY:

(Transition to low carbon – economy / Projects & Programs)

BIODIVERSITY: Status Quo

Environmental Sensitive Areas

WATERBERG BIOSPHERE (WBR)- The WBR is one of the 10 biosphere reserves in South Africa, it was officially nominated in 2001 by UNESCO's Man and the Biosphere Programme (MAB), which is an intergovernmental initiative that now links directly with the Sustainable Development Goals. MAB combines the natural and social sciences and economics to improve both human livelihoods and the conservation of biodiversity through the equitable sharing of benefits, alongside safeguarding natural ecosystems in an environmentally sustainable way.

Within important catchment areas (such as rivers and wetlands), the WBR is home to a variety of habitats, wildlife, tourist attractions, and perennial waterbodies. It encompasses both public and private protected areas and reserves, including Marakele National Park, Mokolo Dam, Masebe Nature Reserve and many more.

The Waterberg is an area of 417 000 ha and was the first biosphere reserve in the northern reaches of South Africa. The economy of the biosphere reserve is largely driven by nature-oriented activities. Environmental education is a focus area of the biosphere reserve. Through ecotourism and other means, the Waterberg Mountain Catchment contributes significantly to the local economy.

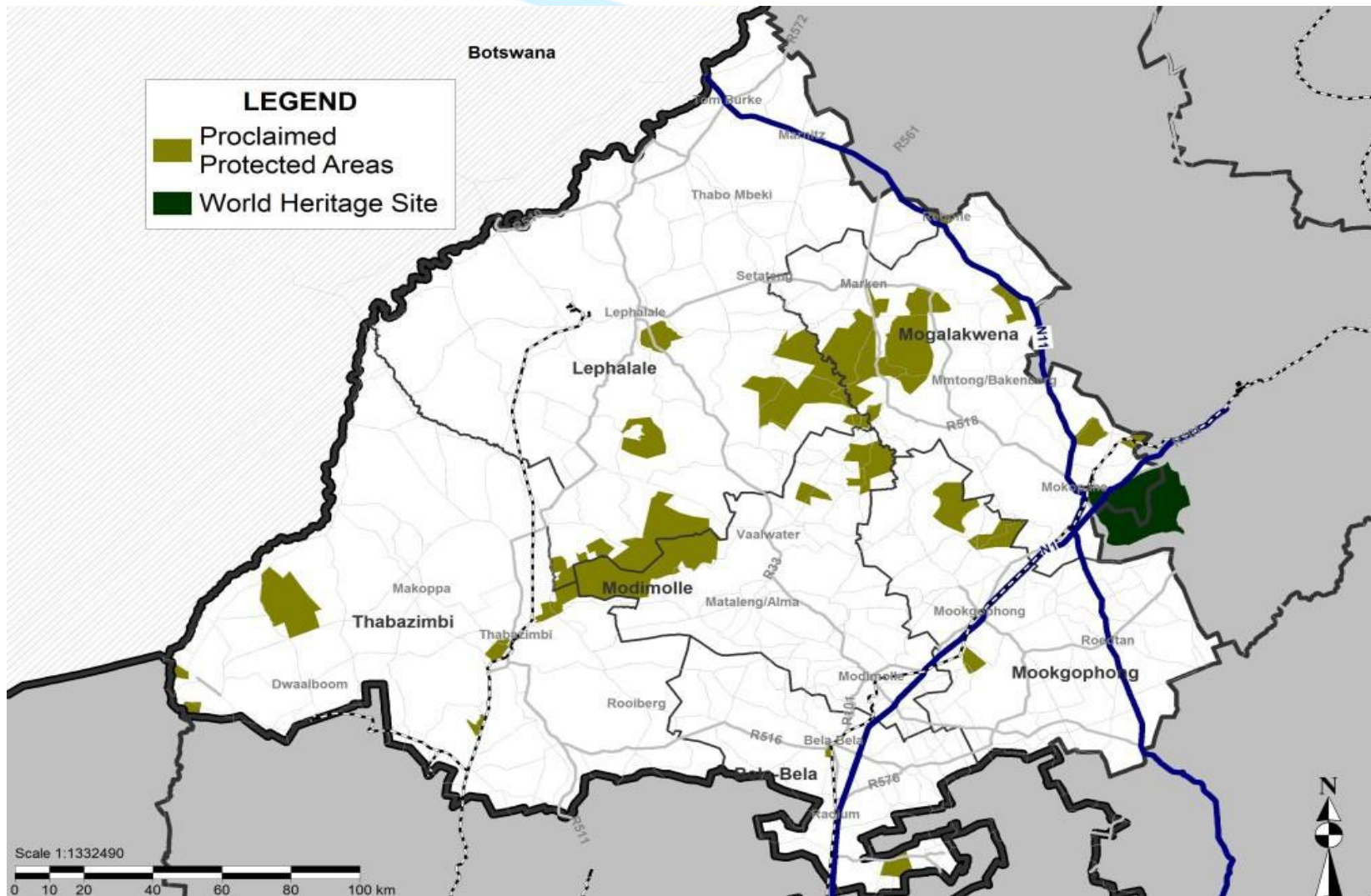
RESERVES AND PROTECTED AREAS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT

These Key Protected Areas in Waterberg District Municipality which serve as economic assets by balancing conservation with sustainable development.

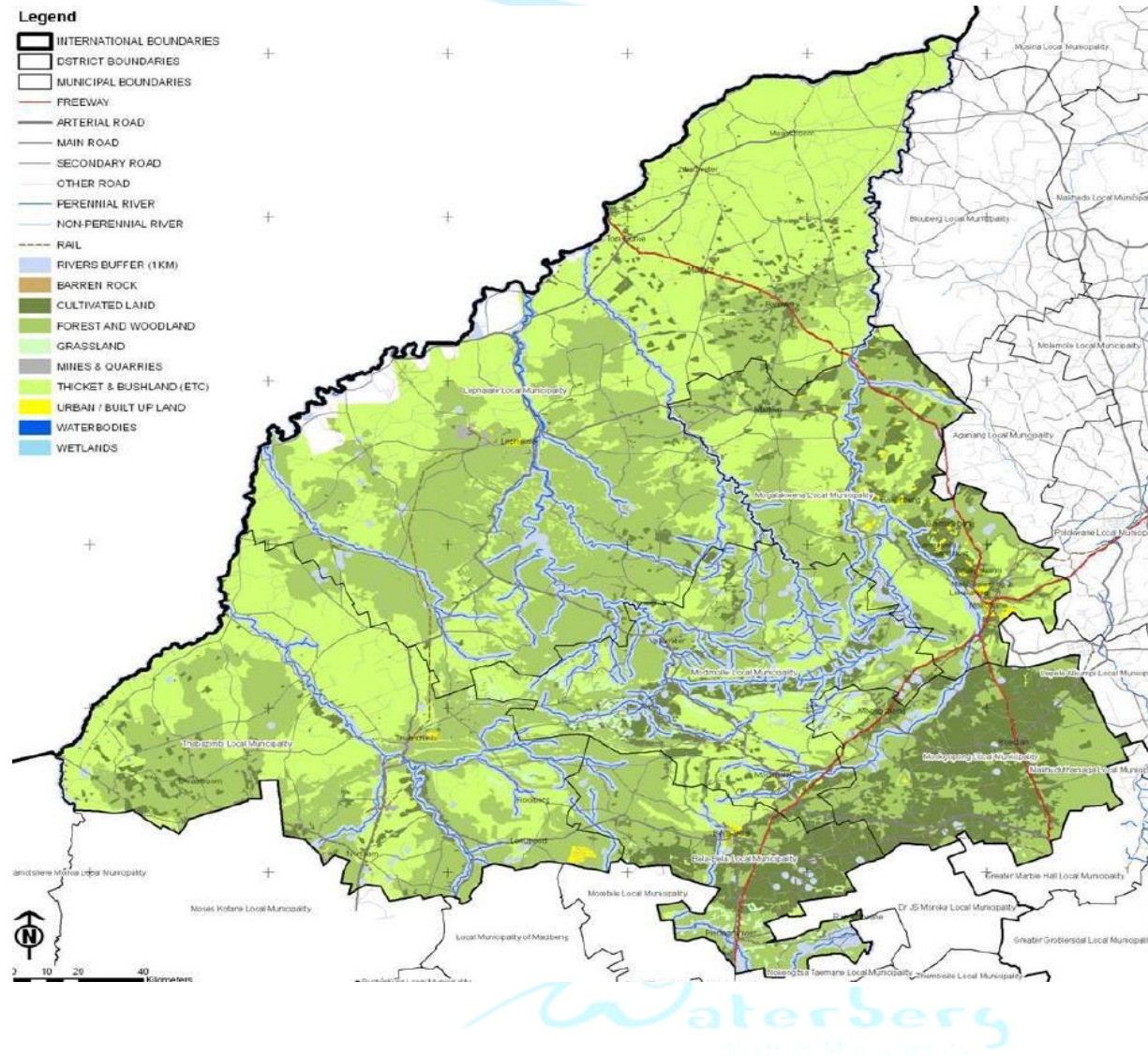
- Marakele National Park: A renowned conservation area celebrated for its abundant biodiversity and ongoing conservation initiatives.
- Welgevonden Game Reserve: A 38,200-hectare private reserve hosting over 50 mammal species, including the Big Five.
- Lapalala Wilderness Reserve: Spanning 48,000 hectares, this conservation area is recognized for its environmental education programs and diverse habitats.
- D'nyala Nature Reserve: Located near Lephalale, this reserve is home to nyala, white rhinoceroses, and a variety of bird species.
- Mokolo Nature Reserve: Covering 4,600 hectares near Mokolo Dam, this reserve supports a range of bushveld habitats and provides refuge for various animal species.
- Wonderkop Nature Reserve: A 16,100-hectare provincial reserve dedicated to sustainable development and environmental education.



MAP 13: RESERVES AND PROTECTED AREAS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT

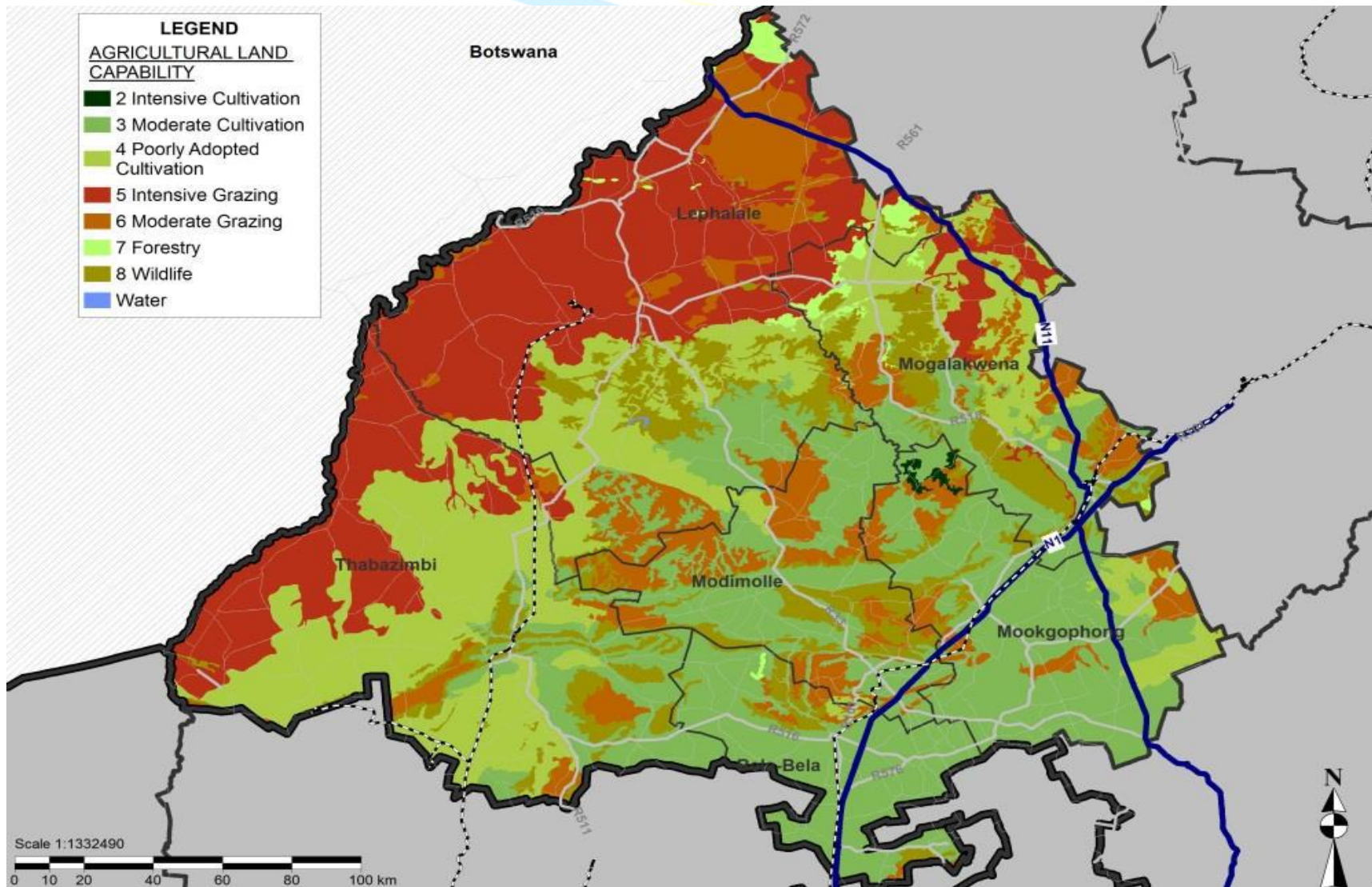


MAP 14: HYDROLOGICAL SYSTEMS



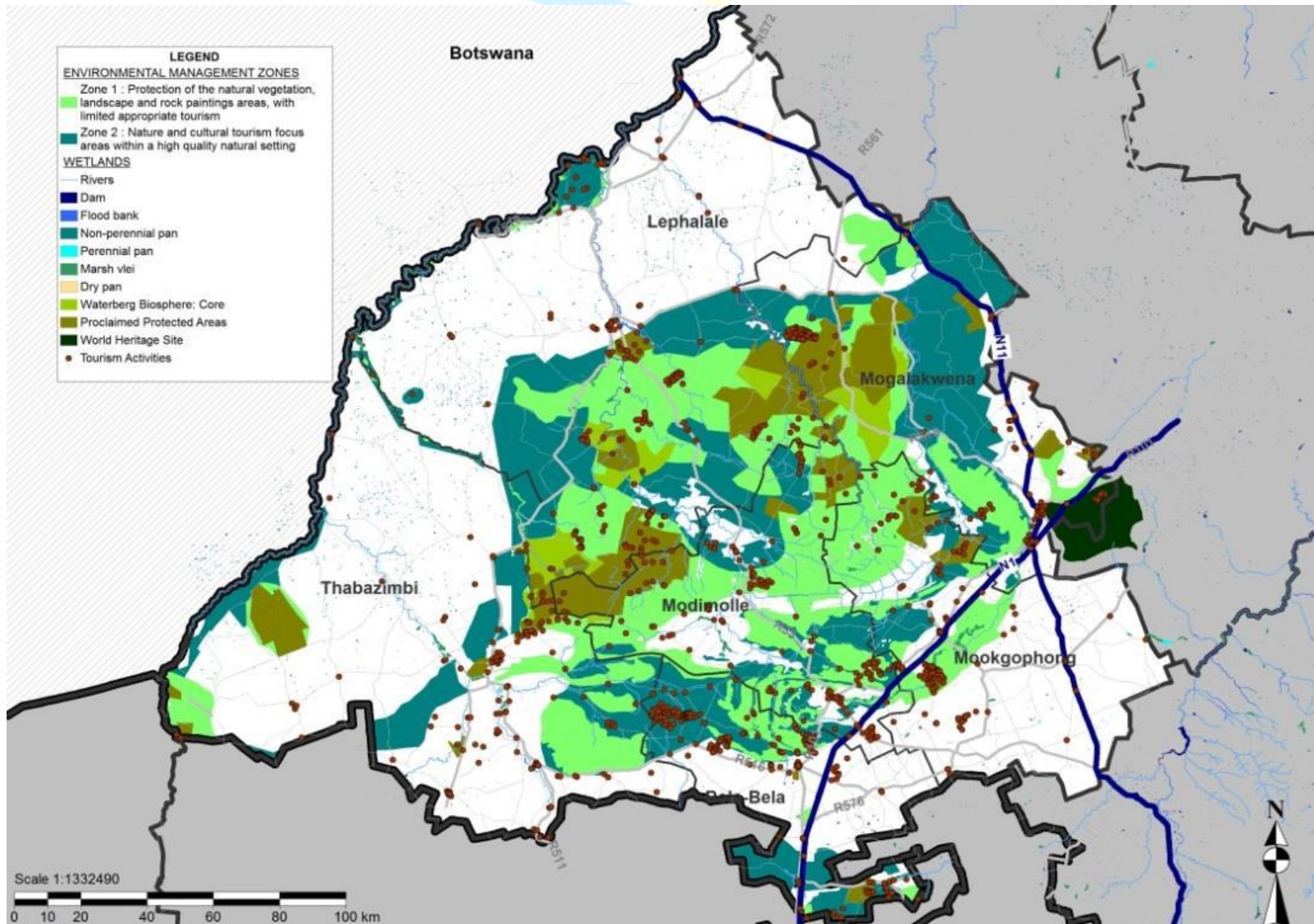
Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

MAP 15: AGRICULTURAL POTENTIAL



Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

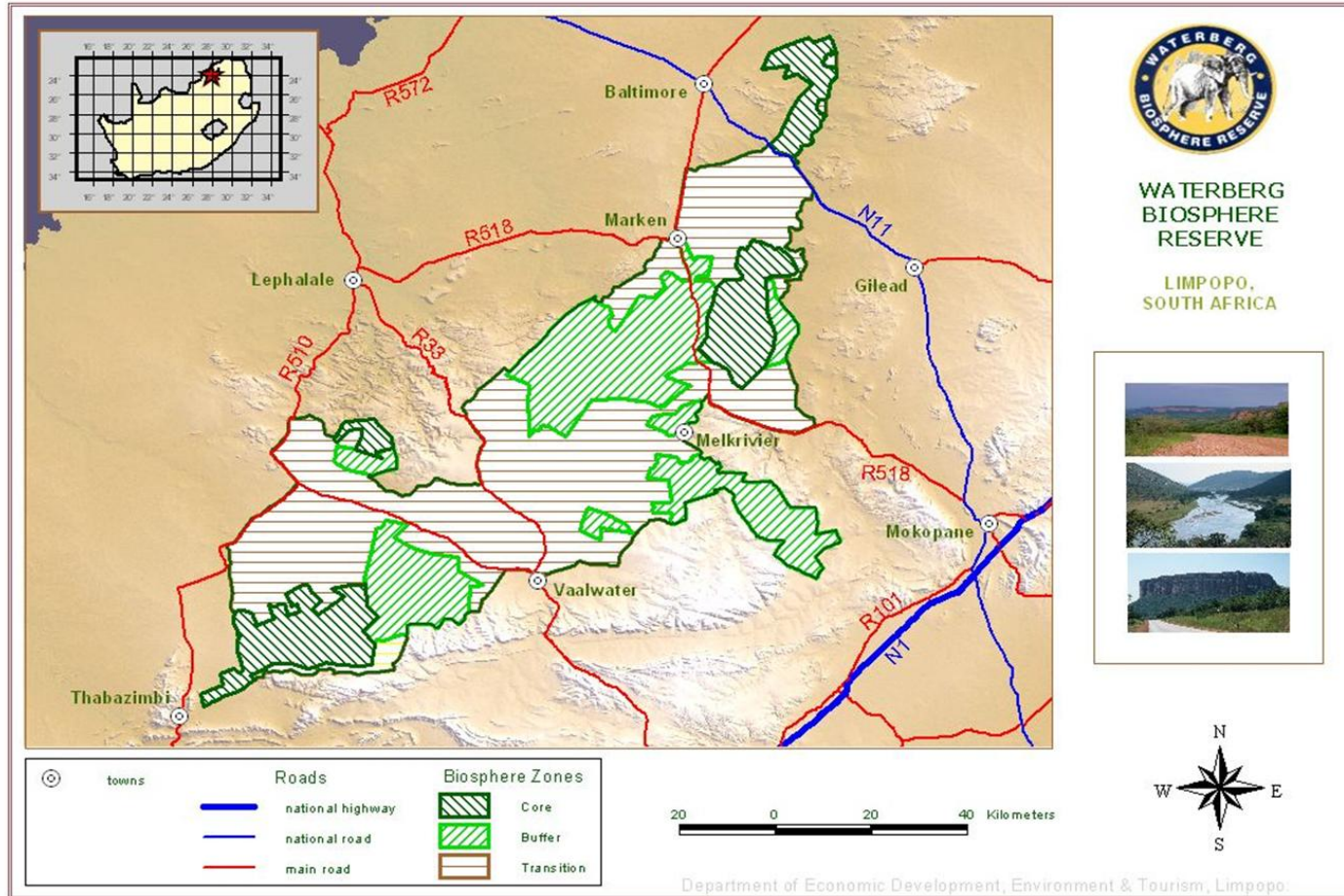
MAP 16: ENVIRONMENTALLY SENSITIVE AREAS, TOURISM AND WATERBERG BIOSPHERE



Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

MAP 17: WATERBERG BIOSPHERE WITH ZONATIONS (2001 ZONATION AS PER DFFE-MAB)

WATERBERG BIOSPHERE RESERVE ZONATION MAP



Waterberg
District Municipality



environmental affairs

Department:
Environmental Affairs
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

SPATIAL PLANNING CHALLENGE

- Conventional and unsustainable Mining methods impact negatively on catchments and also cause Air Pollution
- Conventional and unsustainable Agricultural methods impact negatively on Catchments and Biodiversity
- High Infestation of Alien Invasive Species and Land Degradation
- Pollution of Natural Water Resources both surface and underground water (*e.g. Dumping of Waste in Rivers especially in Rural Areas, Effluent Spillages into the Rivers*)
- Contamination of hydro-ecosystems corridors and Poor Management of Water Catchment – (*catchments: rivers, wetlands and aquifers – Portable Water Sources*)
- Inadequate funding for Biodiversity Conservation
- Over Extraction of water in natural water resources in private properties
- Unauthorised Developments in Environmental Sensitive Areas due to non-compliance (*EIA Processes*)
- Illegal economic activities within Environmental Sensitive Areas (*e.g. Sand Mining in Rivers, Crop Farming in Wetlands*)

WASTE MANAGEMENT

Table 53: LANDFILL SITES IN WDM

MUNICIPALITY / PER TOWN	NUMBER OF LANDFILL SITES	PERMITTED SITES	UNLICENSED / (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Bela- Bela	1	1	0
Lephalale	1	1	0
Modimolle	4	1	1 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Mookgophong	1	1	0
Mogalakwena	2	2	0
Thabazimbi	3	1	3 (Rehabilitation and Closure License)
Grand total	12	8	3

WASTE MANAGEMENT CHALLENGE

Local Municipal Landfill Sites Challenges:

- No daily covering, No dust suppression, Waste not disposed in cells,
- No promotion of waste separation at source, Illegal dumping in open spaces,
- Recycling in landfill sites is informal: conducted by uncontrolled salvaging by Reclaimers, Waste Reclaimer's consume condemned or expired food stuff that lead to food poisoning
- and death, Informal settlement establishments in some landfill site have been sited,
- Disposal of Medical/Hazardous and Electronic Waste in Landfill sites,
- Most Landfill Sites are full to capacity, Other sites are closed with closure certificate from LEDET, however there is no rehabilitation conducted and other sites are still being used as
- Waste dumping sites by the Local Municipality,
- Utilization of borrow pits and quarries as dumping sites,
- No rural waste management that leads to dumping of waste in rivers and wetlands,
- No Management of Hygiene Waste (disposable nappies),
- Lack of Land for Landfill Site Developments in Local Municipalities due to privatisation of land resource in Waterberg.

Milestones and Interventions by LEDET IPWM

- All Local Municipalities within the province have waste management licenses.
- Sourced funding for licensing and landfill engineering designs of for Lephalale and Thabazimbi LM.
- Sourced funding for development of IWMP's for Mogalakwena.
- Awarded Grant of R100 000.00 to 58 recyclers within the Province during the COVID -19 pandemic, through our COVID-19 Relief Fund.
- Continuous provision of support and recommendations for municipality to receive MIG funding for Landfill Specialized Vehicle. Mogalakwena LM, Lephalale and Modimolle-Mookgophong
- Continuous environmental performance monitoring of waste management facilities, and support to Municipalities struggling to respond to compliance notice and legal prosecutions.

CLIMATE CHANGE AND GREEN ECONOMY:

- **Transition to low carbon – economy / Projects & Programs**
- Green Economy & Climate Change Adaptation/Mitigation:

- LEDET Green Economy Strategy with implementation plan is developed by LEDET. Project Funding Source: National DFFE.
- All public Air Quality Monitoring Stations in WDM are owned and maintained by DFFE. WDM process AELs (ATMOSPHERIC EMISSION LICENCES).
- (Recycling of Waste - Separation of Waste at Source, Water / Waste Management, Renewable Energy / Energy Efficiency and Environmental Conservation), in Agriculture, Agro-processing, Eco-tourism, Mining, Eco-Estates Residential Developments, Rural Settlements, Small Holdings, Urban Settlements etc.
- Tree planting and Wildlife Economy is Prioritised and Funded by DFFE in the District through LEDET Province.

Environmental Management and Sustainability / Climate Change and Green Economy

The Local Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (LBSAP) for the Waterberg District Municipality (developed in 2023) was created as a guide to mainstream biodiversity considerations into local governance, in keeping with the Waterberg District's dedication to resilience building and sustainable development. This plan takes a Green Economy stance, encouraging resource-efficient, low-carbon, and inclusive development routes. In order to maintain ecological integrity and enhance community livelihoods, the LBSAP offers a framework for incorporating biodiversity management into services, economic development, and spatial planning.

3.2 BASIC SERVICE AND DELIVERY

3.2.1 WATER ANALYSIS

Table 54: **WATER RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME**

Water Resource (WR) System	Current Prioritized Water Resource Development Option and Estimated Date of Water Delivery		
	2020 - 2030	2031 - 2040	2041 – 2050
Crocodile West River System	Mokolo Crocodile (West) Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP) by 2027 (R15 Billion)	Re-Use of Effluent	Re-Use of Effluent
Olifants River System	Olifants Water Resource Development Project (ORWRDP) Phases 2B (R6.6 Billion)	Re-Use of Effluent	Olifants Dam (Possibly Rooipoort Dam)

Table 55: LEVELS OF DAMS IN WATERBERG

Waterberg District State of Dams on 2026-05-25

Means latest available data

FSC is full storage capacity in million cubic meters

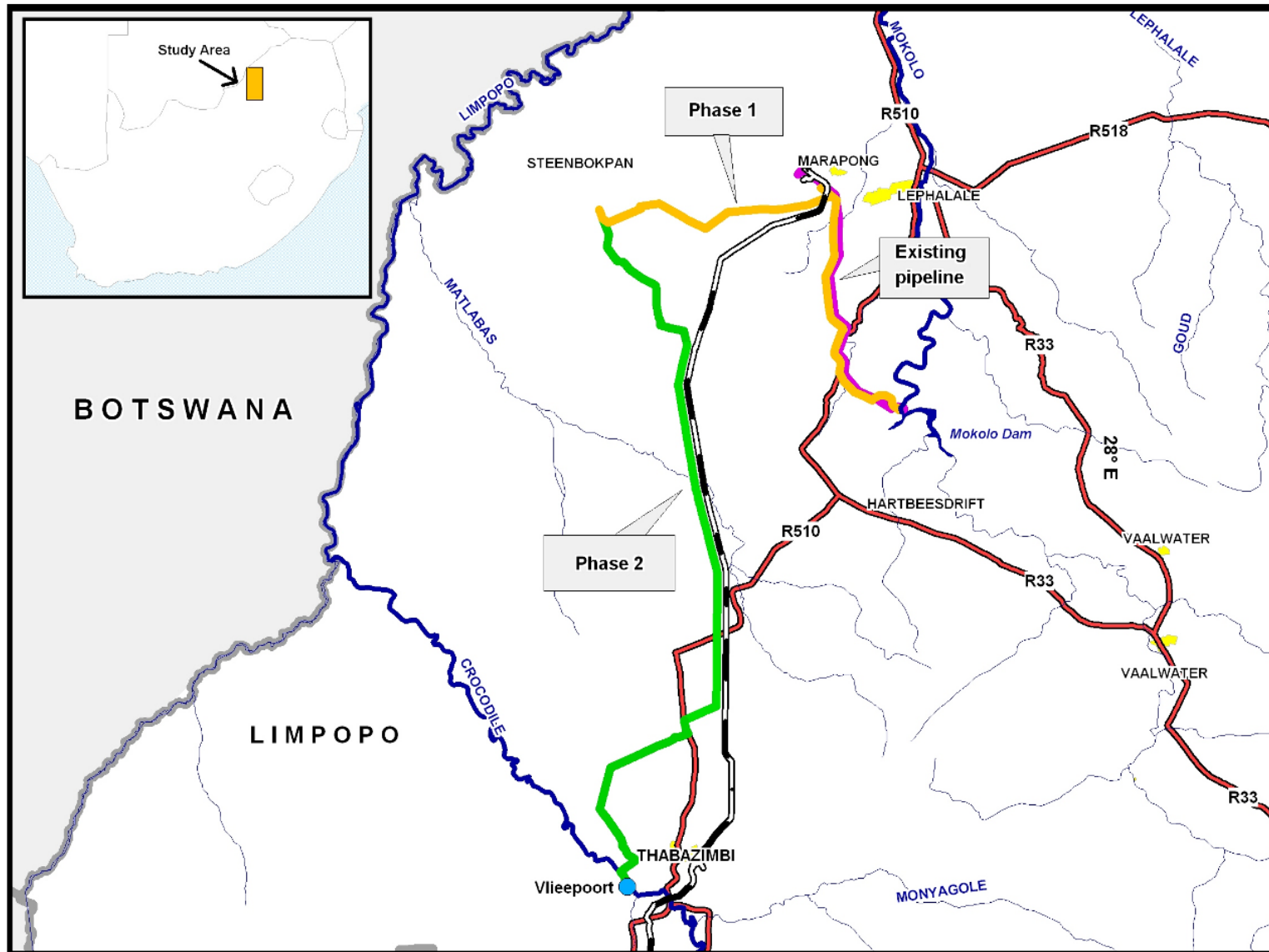
Dam	River	Photo	Indicators	FSC	This Week	Last Week	Last Year
Doorndraai Dam	Sterk River		<u>Indicators</u>	45.0	99.4	99.2	100.3
Mokolo Dam	Mokolo River		<u>Indicators</u>	145.8	#102.3	#102.3	#102.3
Rust De Winter Dam	Elands River		<u>Indicators</u>	28.2	101.2	101.2	101.6
Warmbad Dam	Buffelspruit River		<u>Indicators</u>	0.6	#102.8	#102.8	#102.8
Total				219.4	101.6	101.5	101.8

FSC is full storage capacity in million cubic meters

Source: <https://www.dws.gov.za/drought/weeklystatus.aspx>



MAP 18: Mokolo and Crocodile River (west) water augmentation project – locality and phasing



Critical Bulk Water Supply Systems

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Table 56: WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES

WATER SOURCES IN MUNICIPALITIES			
Municipality	Surface Water Source	Groundwater	
Bela Bela	Warmth Dam Platrivier Dam Pipe from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line)	Farm Boreholes	
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Modimolle Donkerpoort Dam Pipeline from Klipdrift purification works (Magalies Water Servitude Line) Mookgophong Welgevonden Dam / Frekkiegeyser Dam (Private Owned)	Perdelaagte borehole in Modimolle Mabaleng borehole Mabatlane borehole +12 boreholes(Mookgophong & Naboomspruit) +4 boreholes (Roedtan)	
Mogalakwena	Doorindraai Water Resources System (Private Owned)	Sefakaola Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+41 boreholes) Glen Alpine Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+34 Boreholes) Mapela Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+45 boreholes) Bakenburg Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+51 boreholes) Nkidikitlana Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+45 boreholes) Salem Regional Rural Water Scheme – (+42 boreholes) Uitloop Farm (Private Owned boreholes) Weenen / Planknek (Private Owned boreholes)	
Lephalale	Mogolo Dam	Rural Water Supply Scheme – (+132 boreholes)	
Thabazimbi	Vaalkop Dam (Magalies Water Servitude line)	B Seven (+1 borehole) Groep Five & Twelve (5 boreholes) Leeupoort (+2 boreholes) Rooiberg (+3 boreholes)	TOWNSHIP WATER SUPPLY SCHEME

Table 57: WATER SOURCES SCHEME IN MUNICIPALITIES

Local Municipality	Scheme	WTW	Source	Village/ settlement	Population	Capacity MI/d		Scheme Performance %	Supply Period	
						Design	Output		Less 24h	24h
WATERBERG DM										
Modimolle / Mookgophong	Mookgophong	Welgevonden	Welgevonden dam	2	39 059	5.2	2	38 (S)	2	-
	Modimolle	Donkerpoort	Donkerpoort Dam	2	86 289	10	4	40 (S)	2	-
Mogalakwena	Doorndraai		Doorndraai Dam	2	299 636	12	6	50 (S)	2	-
TOTAL				6	424 984	27.2	12	50%		

Table 58: ACCESS TO WATER PER MUNICIPALITY

	2011			2022			% increase		
MUNICIPALITY	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH	ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NO ACCESS TO PIPED WATER	NUMBER OF HH
THABAZIMBI	23,530	1,550	25,080	25,137	1 713	26 832	6.8%	10,5%	6,98%
LEPHALALE	29,080	799	29,879	38, 717	5 115	43 832	33%	540%	46,69%
MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPHONG	26,544	899	27,443	42,316	3 802	46 119	59%	3,2%	68%
BELA-BELA	17,482	586	18,068	20, 420	2 030	22, 449	16%	246%	24,24%
MOGALAKWENA	72,922	6,473	79,395	93, 936	15 358	109 294	49%	1,37%	37,65%
WATERBERG	169,559	10,308	179,867	220 508	28 018	248 526	30%	490%	38,17%

Source: Stats SA 2022

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

WATER QUALITY-RELATED IMPACTS

- Less irrigation and drinking water could be available due to increasing water temperatures linked to higher ambient temperatures.
- Favourable conditions for the incubation and transmission of water-borne diseases may be created by increasing air and water temperatures.
- Increased fish mortality due to reduced oxygen concentrations in aquatic environments and mortality of temperature-sensitive fish species.
- Human health and ecosystem impacts, associated with increased rainfall intensities, flash floods and regional flooding including overflowing sewers due to sewage pipes blocked with washed-off debris, damage to sewerage infrastructure resulting in raw sewage discharges into rivers, scouring and erosion of urban streams, increased sediment and pollutant overflow and damage to low lying water and wastewater treatment works disrupting drinking water supplies.
- Increased periods of drought mean less water is available to dilute wastewater discharges and irrigation return flows resulting in reduced water quality and associated downstream health risks to aquatic ecosystems

Table 59: WATER BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	TOTAL NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS SERVED	BACKLOG REMAINING HOUSEHOLDS
Bela Bela	14 900	14 900	0
Modimolle	19 804	18 654	5 181
Mogalakwena	75 313	72 084	3 229
Modimolle-Mookgophong	9 147	7 930	1 217
Lephalale	27 950	21 644	6 104
Thabazimbi	23 872	23 776	96
Waterberg District	170 986	158 988	15 872

Source: Stats SA 2016



WATERBERG WATER CHALLENGES

- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Ageing infrastructure.
- Poor quality of drinking water.
- Inadequate bulk water supply.
- Inadequate funding and accumulative debts.
- Illegal connections, theft and vandalism.
- Municipal Sanitation – Water Waste Treatment Works infrastructure that are dysfunctional, Agricultural pesticides and Mining pollutants directly contaminates natural water resources (surface and underground water systems) rivers and aquifers which are the main contributors of Waterberg Water Catchments that nourish dams with portable water.
- Over extraction of underground water in rural villages and farms.

IMPLICATIONS

- Loss of revenue due to irregular systematic collection of water tariffs.
- Inability to reach/achieve Municipal Service Delivery targets.
- Impedes on possible investors in the District.

RECOMMENDATIONS

- Waterberg Water Catchment Management.
- Upgrading of water and sanitation supply will eliminate pollution of natural water resources.
- Close monitoring of Municipal Infrastructure Grant Funding outsourced from the Department of Water and Sanitation for projects to upgrade water and sanitation supply.



3.2.2 SANITATION ANALYSIS

Table 60: ACCESS TO SANITATION PER MUNICIPALITY

MUNICIPALITY	2011		2022		% increase	
	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER	FLUSH/CHEMICAL TOILET	OTHER
Thabazimbi	17,211	7,869	21,349	4422	24,04%	-43%
Lephalale	13,820	16,060	22,046	21,120	59%	31,5%
Modimolle-Mookgophong	19,476	7,966	37,038	8044	90%	97%
Bela-Bela	14,602	3,466	17,889	4429	22,5%	27,7%
Mogalakwena	22,765	56,631	47,960	60,135	110%	6%
Waterberg	87,874	91,992	146,282	98,150	66%	6,6%

Source: Stats SA 2022

Table 61: FREE BASIC SERVICES PER MUNICIPALITY

Services	Units	No House Holds (HH) Receiving Free Basic Services (FBS)	Total Number of hh
MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG MUNICIPALITY			
Water	06 kl	1289	46 119
Electricity	50 units	1 289	46 119
Refuse removal	100%	1 289	46 119
Sanitation	100%	1 289	46 119
Property Rates	100%	1 289	46 119

Household provided with free basic services.

LEPHALALE MUNICIPALITY

Water	Sewerage & Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse removal	Total households served	Total households served as a %
497	497	Configuration 497 (3,652)	497	497	1.13%

MOGALAKWENA MUNICIPALITY

Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service

Municipality	Water	Electricity	Sewerage and sanitation	Solid waste management
Mogalakwena	4 541	4 541	4 541	4 541

BELA BELA MUNICIPALITY

	Water		Refuse		Rates		Electricity		Sewerage		Prepaid Electricity		Total
Total	2845	1 949 165	3363	1 477 984	1647	302 151	15	21 557	3326	1 384 073	3307	4 361 797	9 496 728

Source: Bela Bela Budget and Treasury



THABAZIMBI

Amount of Subsidies to Indigents per service

Water	Sewerage and Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse Removal	Total households	Total H/H served as %
0	0	0	0	0	0

Source: Thabazimbi Budget and Treasury

Table: MUNICIPALITY ON SERVICE DELIVERY BACKLOGS

Municipality	Water	Sanitation	Electricity	Refuse removal
Bela-Bela	2.64%	12%	12%	22.2%
Lephalale	3.21%	12.15%	6.2%	6.2%
Modimolle-Mookgopong	8.2%	4.28%	7.62%	79.2%
Mogalakwena	25%	25%	17%	59%
Thabazimbi	27%	34%	31%	33%
Waterberg (Average)	13%	15.7%	10.5%	52%

Source: Waterberg District Municipality Local Municipalities Budget and Treasury 2022

SANITATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Total Households	Total Below RDP Water Households	Backlog if Infrastructure failures are included	HH Served 1994 to 2013	HH with access to RDP and above Water
Bela-Bela	18 305	-	1 772	2 981	18 305

Lephalale	30 272	-	3 078	11 952	30 272
Modimolle-Mookgophong	27 802	2 250	2 451	14 709	11 804
Mogalakwena	80 437	1 490	11 445	42 270	78 947
Thabazimbi	25 408	2 220	4 493	12 143	23 188
Waterberg	182 224	5 960	23 239	84 055	176 264

DWS: National

SANITATION CHALLENGES

- Ageing infrastructure
- Inadequate bulk water supply
- Inadequate funding

IMPLICATIONS

- Loss of revenue
- Inability to reach/achieve MDG targets
- Impedes on possible investors in the District

RECOMMENDATIONS

- Upgrading of water supply
- Funding outsourced from DWA for projects to upgrade water supply

3.2.3 ENERGY AND ELECTRICITY



WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY AND LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES HOUSEHOLD DATA

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Table 62: ELECTRICITY FOR LIGHTING AND ENERGY FOR COOKING PER MUNICIPALITY (2011:2022)

Municipality	Electricity for Lighting (%)		Energy for Cooking					
	2011	2022	2011			2022		
			Electricity	Gas	Other	Electricity	Gas	Other
Waterberg	86,7	92,9	117 818	4 575	57 232	129 487	67 119	51 595
Thabazimbi	76,8	89,3	18 330	418	6 290	15 669	8 223	2 889
Lephalale	85,3	93,0	18 458	928	11 220	18 996	12 984	11 808
Bela Bela	85,0	83,5	13 662	714	3 654	11 376	7 263	3 756
Mogalakwena	91,8	97,2	46 766	1 564	30 219	56 908	25 148	27 132
Modimolle-Mookgopong	84,1	89,5	20 602	952	5 850	26 538	13 501	6 010

Electricity Challenges

- Illegal connection
- Upgrading electricity supply in Mookgophong
- No energy master plan
- Ageing infrastructure
- Faulty meters
- Copper theft
- Insufficient funds to upgrade network and for electrification projects to eradicate backlog
- Increased number of informal settlements



Table 63: ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY

MUNICIPALITY	CONNECTED TO ELECTRICITY	OTHER
Thabazimbi	35,462	9,581
Lephalale	36,651	7,817
Modimolle-Mookgophong	27,173	3,937
Bela-Bela	18,695	2,730
Mogalakwena	79,096	4,543
Total	182,863	28,608

Source: Stats SA 2022

Challenges pertaining to the provision of Electricity

- A major challenge to the municipality is the funding of projects, more specifically for maintenance of existing infrastructure.
- The electrification of low cost housing, which mostly occur in the Eskom supply area, of which normally there are not enough capacity on the main feeder lines to the villages.
- Meeting the “electricity for all” targets of National Government can therefore not be met at all times.



MOGALAKWENA MUNICIPALITY

Table 64: HOUSEHOLD ACCESS TO ELECTRICITY

	In-house conventional meter	In-house prepaid meter	Connected to other source which household pays for (e.g. con	Connected to other source which household is not paying for	Generator	Solar home system	Battery	Other	No access to electricity
	17144	292756	241	204	-	32	-	638	14275
Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Community Survey 2022									

Table 65: ELECTRIFICATION BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Local Municipality	Connection Backlog
Thabazimbi	8422
Lephalale	1898
Bela-Bela	3653
Mogalakwena	12033
Modimolle-Mookgopong	6000
Total	32 006

Source: Eskom



3.2.4 ROADS AND STORM WATER

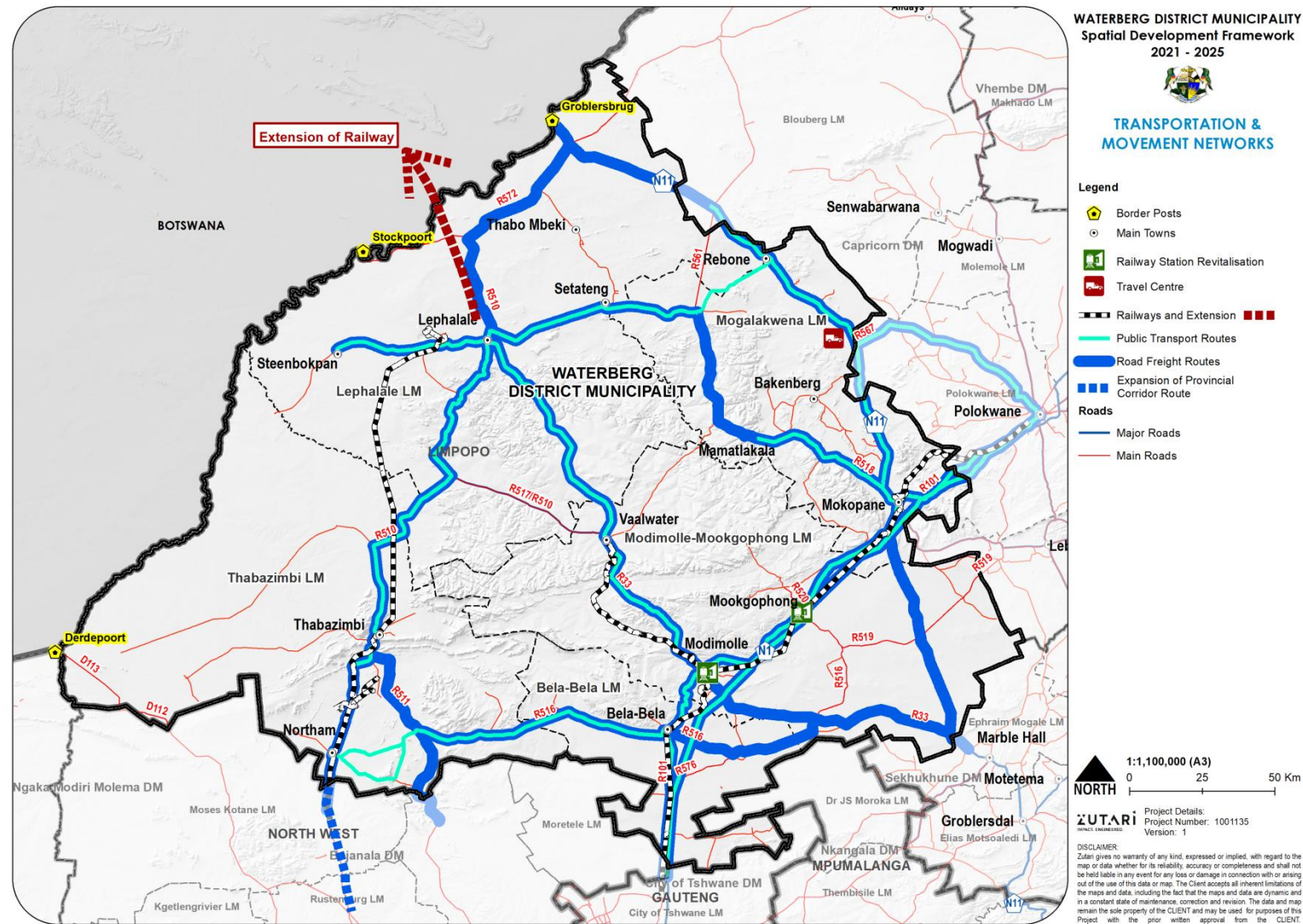
Table 66: ROAD LENGTH AND SURFACE

Municipality	Paved		Unpaved		Total	
	Km	%	Km	%	Km	%
Thabazimbi	573	23%	1916	77%	2490	100%
Modimolle -Mookgopong	816	32%	4347	84%	5164	100%
Lephalale	944	16%	4976	84%	5920	100%
Bela-Bela	434	22%	1572	78%	2006	100%
Mogalakwena	787	12%	5571	88%	6357	100%
Total	3555	16%	18383	84%	21938	100%

N.B: Waterberg District Municipality has a total road distance of 21 938 Km of which only 16% or 3 555 Km are surfaced and the local access roads are gravel and predominantly utilised by buses and taxis. The conditions of these roads is below standard, they require upgrading



MAP 19: Classification of Roads Network



Source: WDM SDF 2021

Table 67: WDM MAJOR ROADS IN DISTRICT GROWTH POINTS

Description	Municipality
R33 to modimolle to Vaalwater to Lephalale	Mookgophong, Modimolle , Lephalale
R101 Pienaarsrivier, Rapotokwane	Bela-Bela
mookgophong to Welgevonden to Alma to Rankispaas to Marekele Nature Reseve to Thabazimbi	Mookgophong, Modimolle, Thabazimbi
Groenvley to Mashismali to Rooipan to Grootvlei	Lephalale
Bulgerrivier to Wolwefontein to Sterkfontein to Rooipan to Grootvlei	Lephalale
Rietspruit to Rooiber mine to Marekele to Matlabatsi	Bela-Bela, Thabazimbi, Lephalale
Dwaalboom to Derdepoort Border post	Thabazimbi
Koedoeskop to Northam to Dwaalboom (PPC)	Thabazimbi

Table 68: ROUTES CLASSIFICATION IN THE MUNICIPALITY

Routes	Description	Powers and functions	Economy related issues
N1	Classified as a freeway, including the Kranskop & Zebediela toll gate.	SANRAL	Gateway to Limpopo Province and the rest of Africa and access to Gauteng Province.
P1/3	Classified as a main route, alternative route to the North.	DISTRICT	Access route for tourists in the Warmbaths-Modimolle area.
P55/1	Classified as an arterial route and situated in the Modimolle & Mookgophong Municipalities.	RAL	Access route to Modimolle and the rest of Waterberg District Municipality.

P1/5	Links the Modimolle road with the N1 on the northern side and is mainly situated in Modimolle	SANRAL	Links Modimolle as well as large part of WDM with the N1 on the northern side.
P1/25	Classified as a national route and situated on the southwestern side of Mokopane.	RAL	Gateway to the north and situated between Mookgophong and Mokopane.

Table 69: BACKLOGS ON ROADS, STORM WATER AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING ROADS AND STORM WATER.

Bela-Bela	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Mogalakwena	Thabazimbi
722.54km	1388.1km	1013.5km	1035. 2km	1139.43km

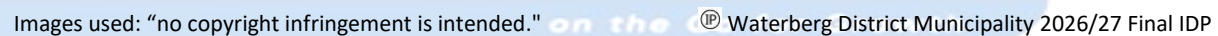
NB: Waterberg District Municipality has a total road distance of 21 938 Km of which only 16% or 3 555 Km are surfaced and the local access roads are gravel and predominantly utilised by buses and taxis. The conditions of these roads are below standard, they require upgrading.

ROADS AND STORM WATER CHALLENGES

➤ Poor access roads



Waterberg District Municipality Road Freight Corridors



3.2.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT

The municipality developed the Integrated Waste Management Plan which allocated the function of solid waste disposal sites. The function involves: determination of waste disposal strategy, regulation of waste disposal and the establishment, operation, and control of waste disposal sites, bulk waste transfer facility and waste disposal facilities. In implementing its function the municipality has a role to ensure that waste management systems are in place in all its local municipalities. General waste collection in the District Municipality is domestic, commercial, industrial and institutional. Currently most of the waste is collected from households, followed by commercial industries.

STATE OF REFUSE REMOVAL IN URBAN AND RURAL SETTLEMENTS.

According to Stats SA 2011, only 39% of the households in the Waterberg District Municipality have access to acceptable refuse removal service levels. Modimolle has the highest percentage of households with access to refuse removal services (73.3). It is followed by Bela Bela, 69.7% and Mookgophong 64.1%. Thabazimbi 60.4% and Lephalale 41.0%. Mogalakwena has the lowest percentage of households with access to refuse removal services at 26.8%.

Waste Collection Methodology

Bela- Bela

Settlements that receive municipal waste collection are Bela- Bela and Pienaarsrivier. Generally, the municipality provides waste management fairly in their jurisdiction.

Modimolle-Mookgophong

The Municipality has two land fill sites in Mabatlane and Modimolle/Phagameng. The Modimolle/Phagameng landfill site has 320 000m³ and the total general waste collected is 840 000 m³ per year. Currently there is a need to relocate the Modimolle Town Land fill site as there is a township development process undertaken in extension 10. The refuse dumps existing in the municipal area have reached their life span capacity. This brings a challenge as there is no land to construct a new land fill site in the municipality. Settlements that receive regular waste collection services in the Mookgophong Municipality are in the urban areas of Naboomspruit, Mookgophong, Roedtan and Thusang. Other areas in the municipal jurisdiction utilize the informal dumping sites, communal dump, own refuse dump and have no refuse disposal means. Generally there is waste collection in all municipalities as indicated in the Waste management Plan of the District municipality. There is a need of improving the rate of collecting waste as the settlements in the municipalities are growing. It is important that the District municipality including the local municipalities improve the waste management as collection of waste management does not only improve the environment of the community. It also forms as a base for employment creation and revenue generation for the municipalities.

Mogalakwena

General waste collection in the municipality is found from domestic or households. Settlements that receive municipal waste collection are Mokopane, Mahwelereng and Rebone. The municipality like all municipalities in the Waterberg District Municipality does not provide the service in rural areas. In mining areas, the latter provide the service.

Thabazimbi

Settlements that receive municipal waste collection services are Thabazimbi, Regorogile, Rooiberg, Northam and Leeupoort. Other settlements in the municipality in the remote rural areas do receive the service. In mining areas, the mines collect the waste for the settlements near their jurisdiction.

Lephalale

Generally, waste collected is domestic or household waste mostly in urban areas especially in town. Like other municipalities the provision of the service in rural areas is limited. Communities depend on backyard dumping sites and communal sites.

Table 70: REFUSE REMOVAL BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Households below basic Level of service/Backlogs
Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality	1 804
Mogalakwena	7 384
BelaBela	16 611
Thabazimbi	None
Lephalale	12 003

Source: Stats SA Community Survey 2022



MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG BACKLOG

Table 71: WATER, ELECTRICITY SANITATION AND REFUSE REMOVALS BACKLOGS

Services	Total no of households	Households with access	Households without access	Total backlogs
Water	46 119	34 315	11 804	11 804
Electricity	46 119	39 733	6 386	6 386
Sanitation	46 119	36 181	9 938	9 938
Refuse Removal	46 119	27 173	18 946	18 946

MOGALAKWENA

Waste Management Access and Backlogs

The number of households whose refuse is removed by local authority weekly has increased from 16.9% in Census 2001 to 26.8% in Census 2011, while those households whose refuse was removed less frequently than once a week declined from 0.8% to 0.4% during the reference period. The percentage of households depending on a communal refuse dump increased slightly from 1.1% to 1.3% between 2001 and 2011. There was a slight increase in the percentage of households that owned their own refuse dumps. Finally, there was a decrease in the proportion of households without any refuse disposal from 9.7% in Census 2001 to 7.7% in 2011. The Table below shows the various waste disposal methods per households.



Table 72: ACCESS TO REFUSE REMOVAL SERVICES

Total no of household		Removed by local authority/private company at least once a week		Removed by local authority/private company less often		Communal refuse dump		Own refuse dump		No rubbish disposal		Other	
2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011	2001	2011
70132	79396	11839	21286	610	347	789	996	50114	50256	6775	6101	6	410

Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Census 2001 and 2011

Removed by local authority/private company/community members at least once a week	Removed by local authority/private company/community members less often than once a week	Communal refuse dump	Communal container/central collection point	Own refuse dump	Dump or leave rubbish anywhere (no rubbish disposal)	Other
15921	11479	10331	336	191321	7384	5223

Source: Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), Community Survey 2016

Table 73: BELA-BELA NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS IN RECIEIVING WASTE COLLECTION AS DEFINED BY THE WASTE COLLECTION SERVICE STANDARDS, MUNICIPAL DATA

TYPE OF HOUSEHOLDS	NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS
Suburb	1 360
Townships	7 539
Village	5 177
Indigent	2 535
TOTAL	16 611
Informal settlements	3 327 no receiving waster services (backlog)

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

CHALLENGES WITH REGARD TO REFUSE DISPOSAL AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING WASTE MANAGEMENT

In general, the residents, businesses and institutions are main producers of municipal solid waste. Some of the waste is hazardous and require special handling to protect humans and the environment. These hazardous wastes include pesticides, petrochemicals, medical wastes and heavy metals. Unfortunately, most of landfills are unlicensed, and are located within the leaching distances of both human beings and plants nor are they recycled. The municipalities are not strong in controlling both solid and hazardous wastes.

- Limited number of disposal sites to cover the all communities in municipal areas.
- The geographic area is large and it comprised of mostly rural areas, with scattered villages with low population densities and poor quality roads.
- Increased residential development in urban areas often without concurrent increase in resources.
- Illegal dumping areas both in urban and rural settlements.
- Most dumping sites have reached their capacity levels.
- Limited financial resources to establish new dumping sites.
- Refuse removal service is not up to the required standards.



3.2.6 PUBLIC TRANSPORT

Table 74: **PUBLIC TRANSPORT CORRIDORS**

Mogalakwena	LEPHALALE	MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG	BELA-BELA	THABAZIMBI
From P19/2(Viana) /R518/N11 to Mokopane From Masodi (D3521) to George Masibe Hospital / Bakenberg (D4380 From Nallie (D3505) to George Masibe Hospital / Bakenberg(D4380) to Mokopane (R518/ N11) From Magabane (D3556/D3550) to Bakenberg(D4380) to Mokopane (R518/N11) From Cleremond (D3540/ D3537) to Bakenberg (D4380) to Mokopane (R518/N11) From Segole (D3561) to Mokopane (N11) From Steiloo/ Uitzech/ Ga - Molekane N11 to Mokopane From Mapela Cross Road/ Hans / Ga – Kara (D4380/ D3500) to Mokopane (R518/ N11) From Sandsloot (D3500) to Mokopane (R518 /N11) From Tshamahansi (N11) to Mokopane From Mahwelereng (Dudu Madisha Drive) to Mokopane	From Steinbokpan (D1675) / Marapong (D2001) to Lephale Town From Ga – Selek (R572/ R510 to Lephale Town From Thabo Mbeki (D3110/R518 / R510) to Lephale Town From Shongwane (R518 / R510) to Lephale Town From Lephale (R510) to Thabazimbi From Lephale (R510/R33) to Vaalwater / Modimolle and Pretoria (N1)	From Mabatlane (R33) to Modimolle Town From Mabaleng (P240/1 & R33) to Modimolle Town From Katjibane (D1444, R516, P184 & R33) to Modimolle Town From Bela – Bela (R101) to Modimolle From Modimolle Township (Joe Slovo, Alf Makaleng , Thabo Mbeki & Mandela Drive) to Modimolle Town From Mokopane (R101) to Mookgophong From Zebediela / Roedtan(R519) to Mookgopong From Zebediela / Roedtan (R519, D943, R33, D2756, R516, D936 and N1) to Pretoria	From Bela – Bela Township to Bela Bela Town (Thabo Mbeki Drive / R101) From Hamanskraal/ Pienaarsrevier / Radium (R101) to Bela Bela Town From Katjibane(D1444 / R516 / R576) to Bela – Bela Town From Rapotokwane (D2536/ R576) to Bela – Bela Town From Modimolle (R101) to Bela – Bela	From Sandfontein (R510) to Northam (R510)and to Thabazimbi Town(R510) From Swartklip Mine (D869) to Northam From Swartkop / Smesher Block (R510) to Thabazimbi Town / Northam From Amandebult (R510) to Thabazimbi Town/ Northam From Regorogile to Thabazimbi Town

From Moshate / Sekgakgapeng (N11) From Seleka/ Shongwane (R518) to Mokopane (N11) From Zebedela (P18/1) to Mokopane From Polokwane (N1/ R101) to Mokopane From N11 / R101 South to Mokopane				
---	--	--	--	--

Table 75:TAXI OPERATIONS IN WDM

Local Municipality	Total Number of Routes
Bela-Bela	13
Modimolle-Mookgophong	10
Mogalakwena	64
Lephalale	12
Thabazimbi	41
TOTAL	140

Table 76:BUS OPERATIONS IN WDM

Local Municipality	Total Number of Bus Terminals	Total Number of Formal Bus Terminals	Total Number of Informal Bus Terminals
Bela-Bela	1	0	1
Modimolle-Mookgophong	1	0	1
Mogalakwena	4	1	3
Lephalale	3	2	1
Thabazimbi	0	0	0
Total	9	3	6

Waterberg District Municipality's CPTR

RAIL OPERATIONS

At present, no commuter rail transport services are in operation in the Waterberg District Municipality. The whole rail network in the Province is owned by Transnet Freight Rail formerly known as Spoornet, serving only long distance passengers. The infrastructure is in relatively good condition and the rail stations in Mogalakwena, Modimolle-Mookgophong, , Bela-Bela and Pienaarsrivier are the main stations serving mainline passengers. The following lines cover the district:

Modimolle - Mabatlane line. The line from Modimolle to Mabatlane covers a distance of 74 kilometres. This railway line had been traditionally used for the transportation of agricultural produce. Utilising the line for tourism should be considered more especially that there has been some interest expressed in the past to operate a steam train;

Mookgophong - Zebediela line. The line from Mookgophong to Zebediela covers a distance of 84 kilometres and was used in the transportation of agricultural produce and citrus fruit such as oranges. In addition, passengers were often transported over weekends by special trains from Johannesburg;

Northam - Thabazimbi and Lephalale line;

Northam to Thabazimbi is a distance of more or less 46 kilometres. There are mining shafts near the following halts and stations:

Northam; Tussenin; Chromedale; and Thabazimbi.

LIGHT DELIVERY VEHICLES

LDVs are generally used as public transport in all areas of Waterberg District Municipality, especially in remote rural areas and farming areas, such as GaSeleka and Steilloop. LDVs may be used as means of transport for scholars, but they have been rejected in some municipalities within the Waterberg District Municipality, particularly in Mogalakwena. The concern has been that, in terms of an accident, it looks very ugly. The option was to subsidise scholars who use either taxis or buses. However, LDVs may be used for conveying agricultural produce, not people.

NON-MOTORISED TRANSPORT

In some areas NMTs are used as an alternative mode of transport, especially in areas such as Mokopane, Steilloop, Modimolle, Bakenberg, Moshate and Tshamahanse etc. It should be noted that in some parts of the Waterberg District Municipality the NMTs have been formalised as a recognised mode of transport which is in line with intermodalism. It emerged during the consultation workshops that these modes of transport play a significant role in conveying goods and people and that it should be fully incorporated into the transport system of the district. However, there is a need for policy and strategy to promote the use of these modes.

METERED TAXI OPERATIONS

Metered taxi operations have been identified as one of the significant operations in some municipalities such as Mogalakwena, particularly because of their complementary role they could play in providing transport during awkward hours. Trains from Gauteng and the surroundings drop people very early in the morning and late in the evenings. As a result, other unofficial transport providers take advantage and rob poor passengers who are stranded at that time. They either pay unreasonable amounts or they do not reach their destinations. Other Municipalities reject such operations, particularly in Thabazimbi. More information still needs to be gathered on meter taxi operations for inclusion in this report.

TRANSPORTATION OF LEARNERS

At present, there is official school transport system for learners available in certain municipalities which include Mogalakwena, Modimolle - Mookgophong, Lephalale, Bela-Bela and Thabazimbi local municipalities. Urban learners rely on foot or by public transport, private transport, private school buses or privately arranged special transport to go to school.

What came out consistently in relation to learner transport is that:

Transport for learners should be affordable and subsidised;

Public transport be made accessible to enable learners reach the educational institution on time;

Non-motorised transport for learners be implemented;

They rejected LDVs as means of transport for learners; and

Reduce the distance learners have to walk to and from school provide safe, reliable and affordable transport for learners.

TRANSPORT FOR PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES

From our observation; the current public transport system in WDM does not seem to be user-friendly for disabled persons. The general lack of public transport infrastructure in the area is the main reason for this problem. It may even be stated that there are basically no public transport facilities available for disabled persons in the area.



The following are the specific principles and objectives that have to be achieved as part of the development of a strategy for addressing the needs of persons with disabilities:

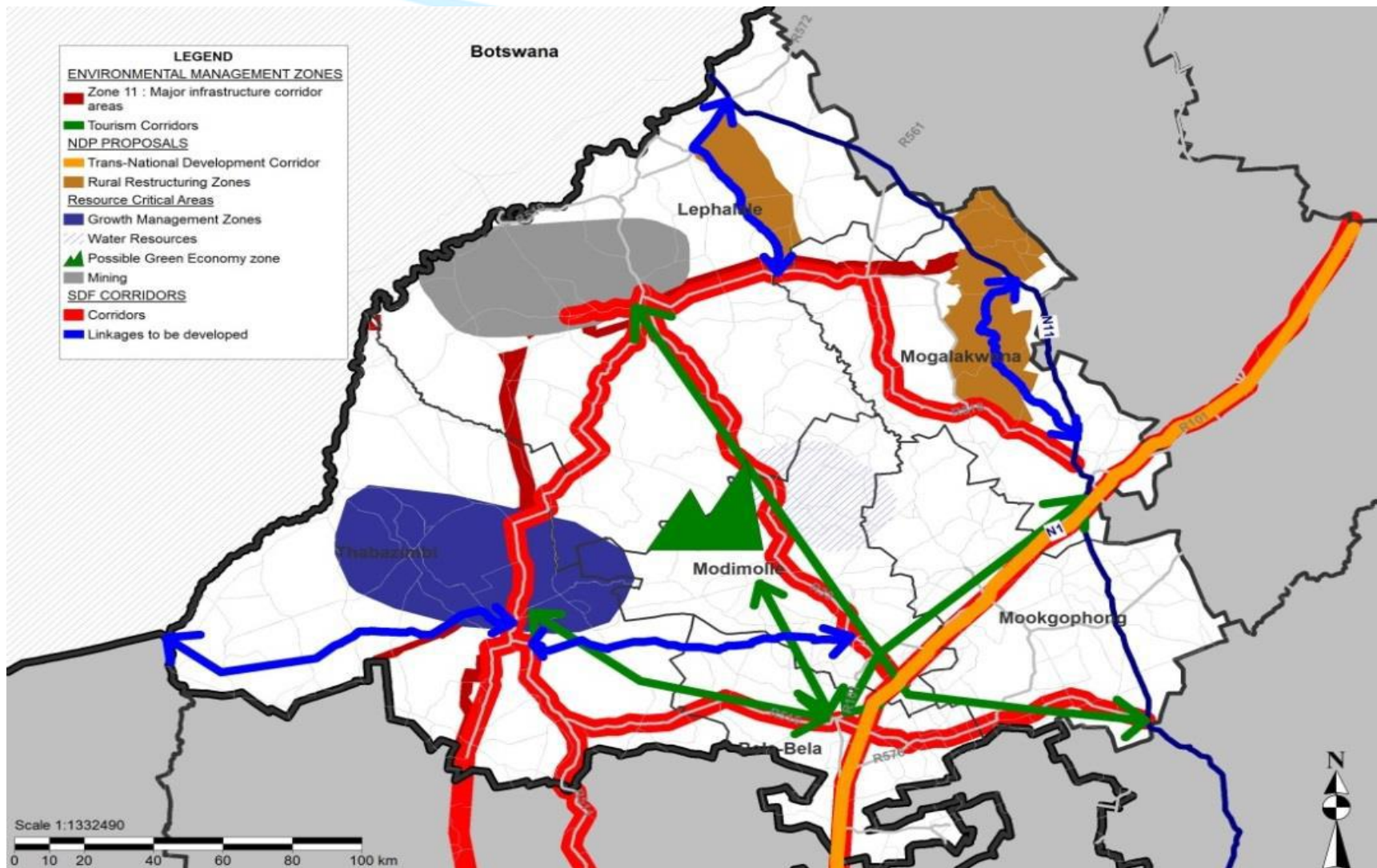
Proper information systems and communication structures (before and during the journey);
Specialist transport services (e.g. dial-a-ride type services);
The design of vehicles/rolling stock so as to allow for people with disabilities (special and normal vehicles);
Special care during the design of public transport facilities, including ablution facilities;
Ensuring access to public transport facilities and vehicles for the mobility impaired; and
Creating institutional and financial opportunities.

TRANSPORT CHALLENGES AND ANY OTHER RELEVANT INFORMATION REGARDING PUBLIC TRANSPORT

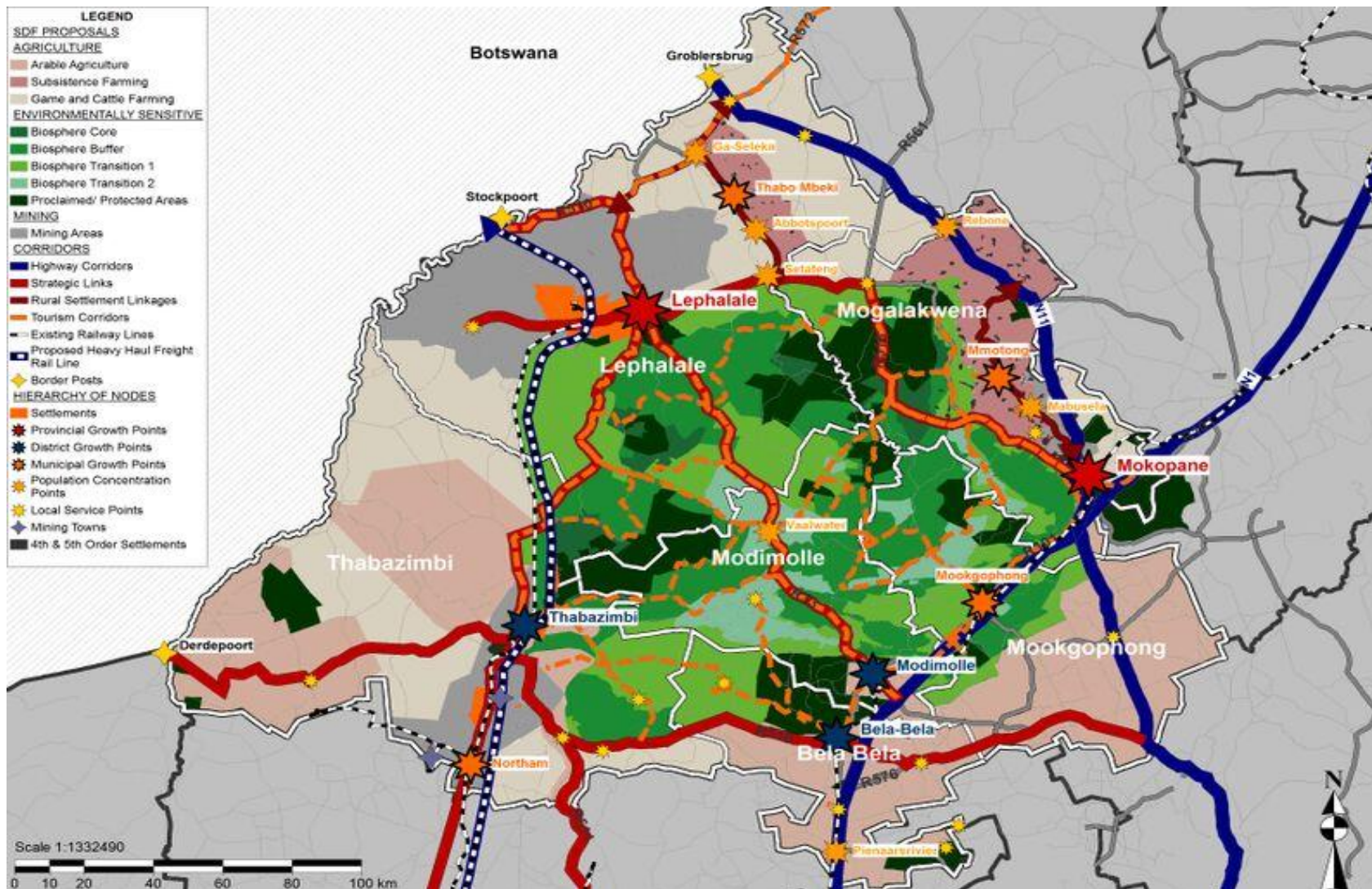
- Recapitalisation of roadworthy taxis;
- Accidents;
- Lack of transport facilities; and
- Conflicts among taxi operators.



MAP 21: Networks & Corridors



MAP 22: Rail Facilities



Internal Factors	STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
	Co-ordination of District forums	Unavailability of district Infrastructure, (Lack of project identification)
	Support to the LMs in terms of eradicating service delivery backlogs	Lack of sector plans Lack of Operation and Maintenance plans
External Factors	OPPORTUNITIES	THREATS
	Accessibility to Roads Infrastructure grant	The municipality not being water service authority nor provider
	work opportunities through EPWP programme	Lack of funding
	Implement Rural Household Sanitation at Local Municipalities within the district	

3.3 SOCIAL ANALYSIS

INTEGRATED AND SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT

WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY - HOUSES COMPLETED SINCE 1994

3.3.1 HOUSING

The right to adequate housing is enshrined in the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) and it states that everyone has the right to have access to adequate housing and that the state must take reaHIGH

ble legislative and other measures within its available resources to achieve the progressive realization of this right. Housing is the competency of National government. All housing challenges and programmes are governed by the Housing Act 1997 (Act No.107 of 1997). The Housing Act is the supreme housing law in the country, repealing all other housing legislation that come before it. The National Housing Code is developed in line with the housing act.

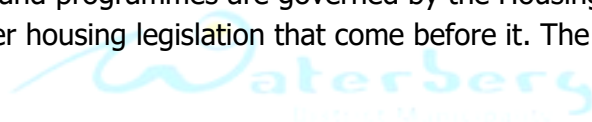


Table 77: INTEGRATED AND SUSTAINABLE HUMAN SETTLEMENT PER MUNICIPLAITY

Municipality	Units Allocated	Completed Houses	Difference	Housing Demand
Thabazimbi	2,130	1,649	481	10,035
Modimolle-Mookgophong	8,944	8,926	18	856
Lephalale	6,201	5,546	655	6,812
Belabela	1,950	1,941	9	5,046
Mogalakwena	8,733	8,181	552	3,636
Grand Total	27,958	26,243	1,715	26,385

Table 78: WDM HOUSING DEMAND/BACKLOG PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Backyard rental	Rural	Gap market	Social	CRU	Project Linked	BNG/IRDP	Total Backlog
Bela- Bela	N/A	N/A	400	N/A	N/A	1100	250	2750
Lephalale	6300	3801	660	2546	7000	450	N/A	20575
Modimolle - Mookgophong	500	3000	700	N/A	N/A	N/A	1000	5200
Mogalakwena	3080	22101	N/A	N/A	60	1 200	N/A	26441
Thabazimbi	910	5762	970	1970	N/A	4250	N/A	13862
Grand total								68 828

Challenges pertaining to Housing Provision and other relevant information in Relation to Housing.

- Poor quality of RDP houses.
- Inadequate land for development.

3.3.2 EDUCATION EDUCATION PROFILE

With regards to the level of education in the District, the number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 4.48%, while the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increased with an average annual rate of 3.74%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education. The number of people without any schooling in the Waterberg District Municipality decreased between 2008 and 2018 with an average annual rate of -4.90%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category increased from 73,500 to 111,000.

Matric Pass Rate

The 2025 matric pass rate in Waterberg District was 82.65%, slightly down from 85.0% in 2024, but still above the national average.

Bachelor pass rate: 36% — meaning over a third of learners qualified for university.

Performance in gateway subjects:

Mathematical Literacy: 99.1% pass rate

Mathematics (Pure): 65.4% pass rate

Physical Sciences: 71.0% pass rate

Despite resilience, the decline signals ongoing educational challenges, especially in mathematics and science, which are critical for future workforce development



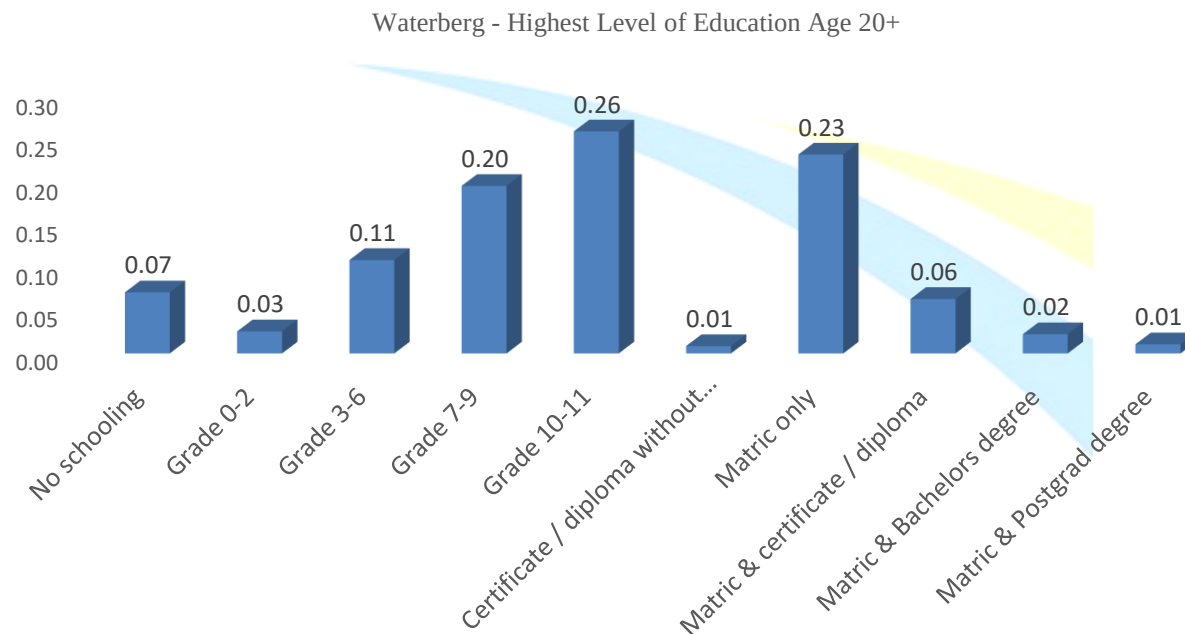


FIGURE 18: HIGHEST LEVEL +20 YEARS

In 2020, 76 730 learners in the Limpopo Province wrote Grade 12 exams. Of these learners, 53 254 passed, which translates to 69.4%, and depicts a 3.8% improvement on the 2016 Grade 12-pass rate, where the district obtained a Figure of 69.4%. The District increased its percentage of learners with a “Bachelors’ pass” from 18.4% in 2016, to 21.4% in 2017 and 23.5% in 2020, with 17 999 learners achieving a “Bachelors’ pass”.

Table 79: **SCHOOLS AND LEARNER ENROLMENT PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY (2024)**

Local Municipalities	Secondary schools	Primary schools	Combined schools	Special Schools	Independent schools	ECD Centres
Lephalale	32 schools 12588 Learners	55schools 23899 Learners	3 schools 594 Learners	1 school	1 school	59
Mookgopong	3schools 2239 Learners	5schools 4213 Learners	2 schools 412 Learners	0	1 school	5

Mogalakwena	94schools 32344 Learners	136 schools 57198 Learners	3 schools 518 Learners	1 school	12 schools	96
Modimolle	8schools 6400 Learners	21schools 12562 Learners	0	1 school	2 schools	29
Bela-bela	6schools 4572 Learners	13schools 9937 Learners	1 school 538 Learners	1 school	2 schools	10
Thabazimbi	6schools 3086 Learners	20schools 8397 Learners	2schools 760 Learners	0	3 schools	24

Source: Dept of Education 2024

Table 80: POPULATION OF WATERBERG BY MUNICIPALITY AND HIGHEST EDUCATION LEVEL

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle-Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Gade 0	1 639	3 203	2 612	1 806	12 017	21 277
Grade 1 / Sub A	1 730	3 140	3 340	1 902	9 666	19 778
Grade 2 / Sub B	1 887	3 048	3 258	1 850	9 780	19 823
Grade 3 / Std 1/ABET 1Kha Ri Gude;SANLI	2 202	3 352	3 614	2 034	10 764	21 966
Grade 4 / Std 2	2 493	3 814	4 230	2 238	11 726	24 500
Grade 5 / Std 3/ABET 2	2 826	4 001	4 324	2 438	12 007	25 596
Grade 6 / Std 4	2 975	3 889	4 420	2 649	12 473	26 405
Grade 7 / Std 5/ ABET 3	4 464	5 558	8 276	3 293	14 994	34 546
Grade 8 / Std 6 / Form 1	5 309	6 464	7 492	4 794	20 128	44 188
Grade 9 / Std 7 / Form 2/ ABET 4	4 707	6 502	6 150	3 537	19 553	40 450
Grade 10 / Std 8 / Form 3	7 039	9 137	7 860	4 827	25 045	53 908
Grade 11 / Std 9 / Form 4	6 925	9 843	7 668	5 529	25 628	55 592
Grade 12 / Std 10 / Form 5	15 067	16 706	14 942	11 211	38 044	95 969
NTC I / N1/ NIC/ V Level 2	156	452	135	70	598	1 410
NTC II / N2/ NIC/ V Level 3	212	540	124	60	574	1 510
NTC III /N3/ NIC/ V Level 4	301	718	207	136	579	1 942
N4 / NTC 4	242	643	135	107	354	1 480
N5 /NTC 5	124	518	75	51	283	1 050
N6 / NTC 6	217	766	224	108	700	2 015
Certificate with less than Grade 12 / Std 10	86	185	103	65	254	693
Diploma with less than Grade 12 / Std 10	162	191	175	92	294	914
Certificate with Grade 12 / Std 10	806	918	709	461	1 997	4 890
Diploma with Grade 12 / Std 10	1 033	1 296	999	866	3 311	7 506

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Higher Diploma	677	1 230	1 180	935	2 811	6 832
Post Higher Diploma Masters; Doctoral Diploma	104	216	179	114	405	1 019
Bachelors Degree	471	796	750	554	1 576	4 147
Bachelors Degree and Post graduate Diploma	220	327	296	209	651	1 703
Honours degree	247	332	311	222	972	2 083
Higher Degree Masters / PhD	135	227	202	149	411	1 123
Other	156	204	150	165	473	1 149
No schooling	5 919	7 431	8 532	4 604	28 706	55 192
Unspecified	-	-	--	-	-	-
Not applicable	14 701	20 120	13 524	9 425	40 908	98 679
Grand Total	85 234	115 767	104 153	66 500	307 682	679 336

Census 2016



POPULATION OF WATERBERG NOT COMPLETING AND COMPLETING PRIMARY EDUCATION

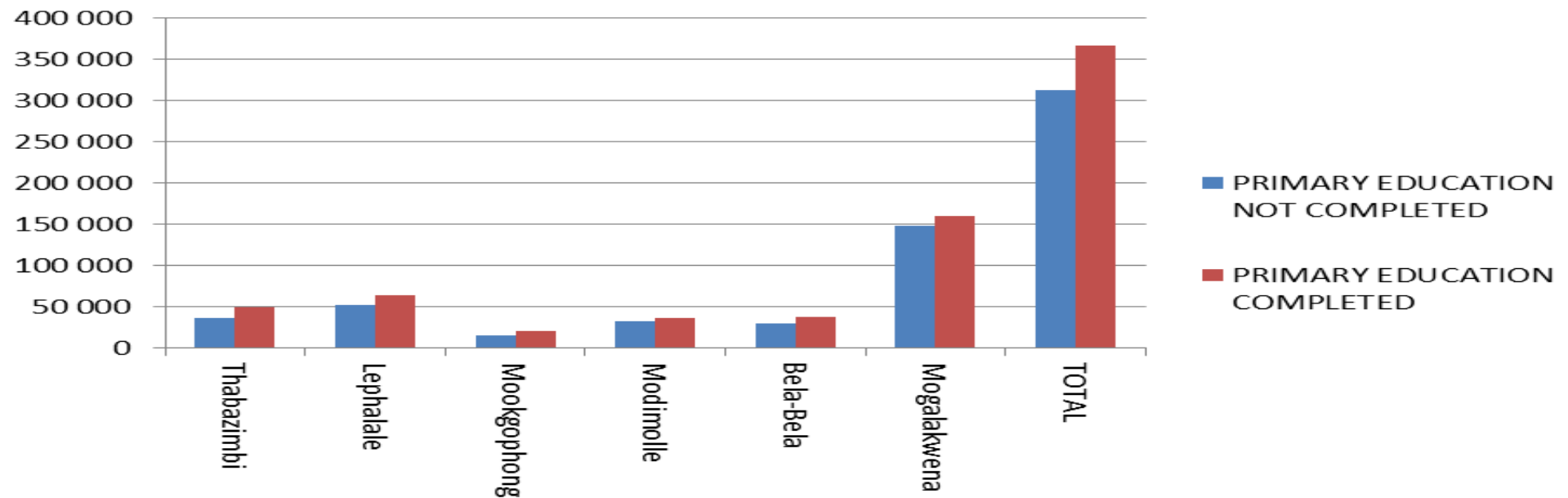


FIGURE 19: POPULATION OF THE WDM PEOPLE THAT DID NOT COMPLETE PRIMARY EDUCATION

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Early childhood development is one of the priority areas of the South African government and remains a critical policy issue that the Department of Social Development aims to address. Early years in life are critical for acquisition of perception-motor skills required for reading, writing and numeracy in later years. It is for this reason that resources are geared towards the promotion of access to ECD. Capricorn District Municipality has the highest proportion of 0-4 age group attending an ECD, followed by Waterberg District Municipality. The highest proportion of individuals attending an ECD was found among those aged

4 years, while the lowest attendance Figures were found among the 0-year age group. As reflected in Table above there are 223 ECD centres in the Waterberg District Municipality.

District Wide Skills Base

Economic Growth & Job Creation – Skills Development, Agro-processing, Renewable Energy, Tourism, EV Manufacturing

Acknowledgement of Gap: The District notes the absence of a consolidated skills base and commits to leveraging the DDM framework to integrate stakeholders.

Planned Actions:

Facilitate engagements with Minister of Higher Education, SETAs, and TVETs to align training with district economic priorities.

Convene sessions with Minister of Tourism to address tourism levy utilization and district-wide tourism development.

Engage DTIC, DMPR, DEE on opportunities for an Electric Vehicle manufacturing plant, leveraging Waterberg's mineral endowment.

Outcome: Establishment of a District Skills Compact that links training institutions to economic clusters (mining, agro-processing, renewable energy, tourism).

Economic Growth & Job Creation – SABC Film Studio Catalytic Project

Commitment: Waterberg District Municipality will formally consider participation in the SABC Film Studio initiative.

Planned Actions:

Convene a stakeholder plenary with DTIC to develop a business case.

Identify suitable land/infrastructure sites for studio development.

Collaborate with Limpopo Tourism Agency to leverage productions for tourism promotion.

Encourage local artists, youth, and women to participate in training and creative opportunities.

Outcome: Position Waterberg as a creative economy hub, diversifying beyond mining and agriculture.

District Skills Audit: The Waterberg District Municipality conducted a skills audit to assess organizational structures, job profiles, supervisory systems, and skills gaps across various levels of employment. This audit aimed to identify critical skills needed, improve job profiles, and develop succession plans for key positions.

District Development Model Hub: The Waterberg District Development Model (DDM) Hub introduced shared services capacity, including experts such as engineers, development planners, financial specialists, and project managers. This initiative aimed to augment existing skills in local municipalities and address identified shortcomings.

DDM Lessons Learned: The district has been actively implementing the DDM approach, focusing on cooperative governance, economic regeneration, and social justice. This includes structural arrangements and partnerships to enhance skills and capacity within the district

There are currently no public universities or campuses of public universities in the Waterberg District Municipality. One private Higher Education Institutions (Better Best Educational Projects PTY LTD) was registered with the Department of Higher Education and Training in 2017. There are two registered Further Education and Training (FET) Colleges in the district, namely; Lephalale FET College and Waterberg TVET College.

The Waterberg TVET College spans across two municipalities including Lepelle Nkumbi Local Municipality – Lebokwomo (engineering), Mahwelereng (Business School and IT centre) Mokponane (hotel school), Thabazimbi, Rooywal Sterk Revier (Agriculture). Waterberg TVET has enrolment 4 191 students. There are no community colleges in the Waterberg District, however there were 74 Community Learning Centres (CLCs) with a total of 2 090 students enrolled.

The Lephalale FET College has an enrolment of 2 612 students and is strategically situated in the economic hub of the Limpopo province, where mining opportunities are booming close to Medupi Power Station, Exxaro Coal Mine and Matimba Power Station and has two campuses Thabazimbi and Modimiolle. The Lephalale TVET College offers a range of courses that include: business studies; hospitality; engineering studies; nature management; and computer science. Lephalale TVET also offers artisans, plumbing, welding and end-user computing and welding amongst other things.

Encouragingly, Murray & Roberts is training hundreds of artisans at the Tlhahlong training centre in partnership with the college and the Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education and Training Authority. Siemens has supported this centre with significant capital investment. The National Skills Fund (NSF) is currently funding a total of 1 090 beneficiaries in the Waterberg District, at a total cost of R108 228 115 (for the total duration of the programmes), for workplace learning programmes, in the form of learnerships, internships and apprenticeships. The actual expenditure for the 2019/20 financial year is currently R32 921 806. The learners are in workplaces in Mokopane, Dooredraai, Modimolle, Mogalakwena, Lephalale and Belabela local municipalities.

The internships, learnerships and apprenticeships are currently provided in the Agriculture, Hospitality, Tourism, Building and Civil construction, Information Technology and Engineering sectors. The Artisan project, which is going to be implemented in the Mokopane local municipality has not yet started. SETAs fund skills programmes that are run by cooperatives, CBO's, NGO, small, medium and large employers, and other organisations. SETAs also fund learners for workplace learning programmes (work integrated learning, apprenticeships). The projects/interventions amounted to R7 498 604 for 2019/20, intended to benefit a total of 267 beneficiaries.

In a region rich with mineral resources, potential in agriculture and tourism, the education sector in the Waterberg District should be able to produce the type of skills that would correspond with those required by the regional economy. Therefore, adequate skills in engineering, hospitality and agriculture will be required to support the developing mining, tourism and agricultural economies in the region.

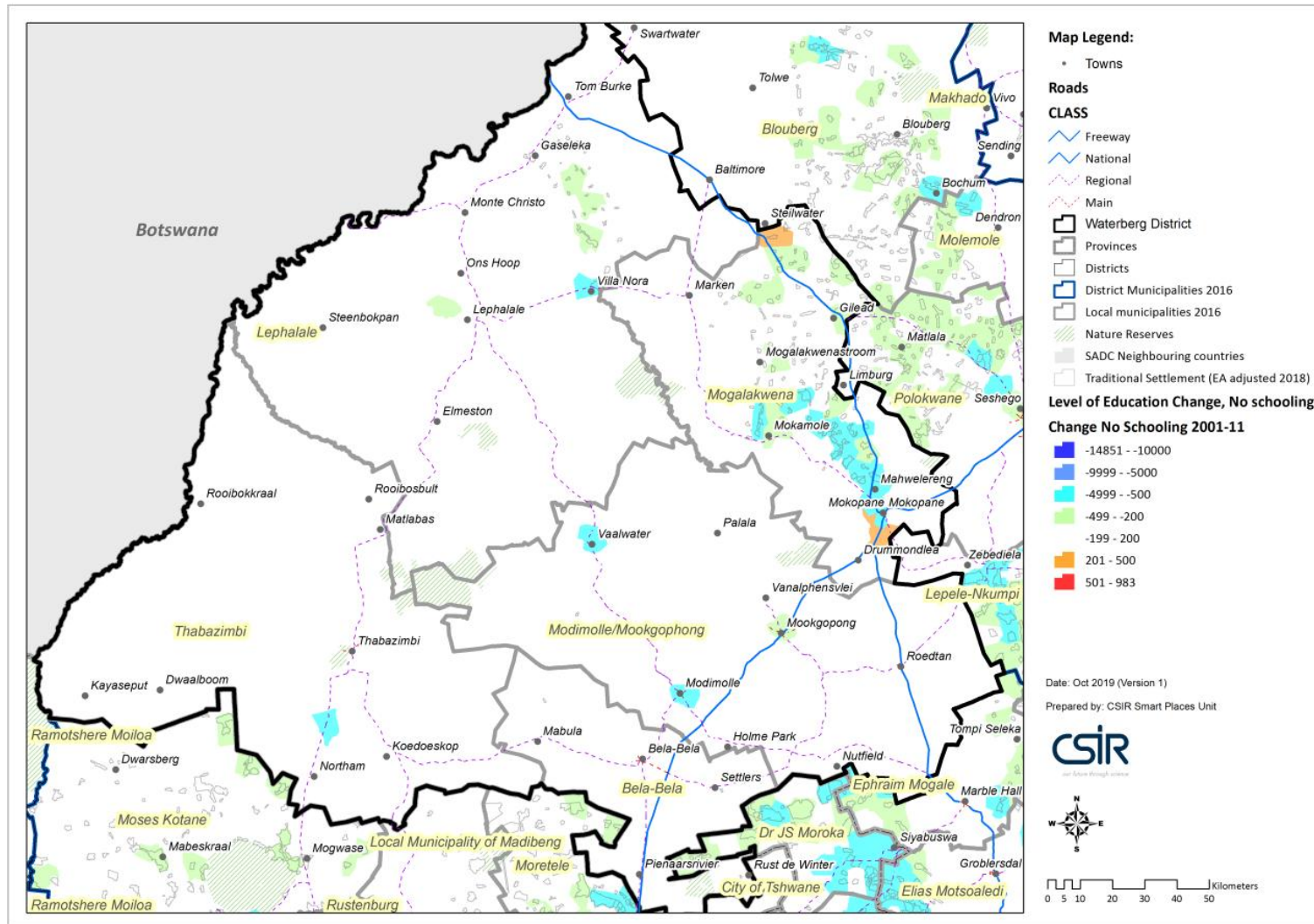
Table 81: **Education Levels in Waterberg District Municipality**

	Thabazimbi	Lephalale	Modimolle- Mookgophong	Bela-Bela	Mogalakwena	Total
Primary Education not completed	36 372	51 998	15 269	32 585	28 946	148 047
Primary Education completed	48 860	63 769	20 372	35 931	37 555	159 635
Total	85 232	115 767	35 641	68 516	66 501	307 682

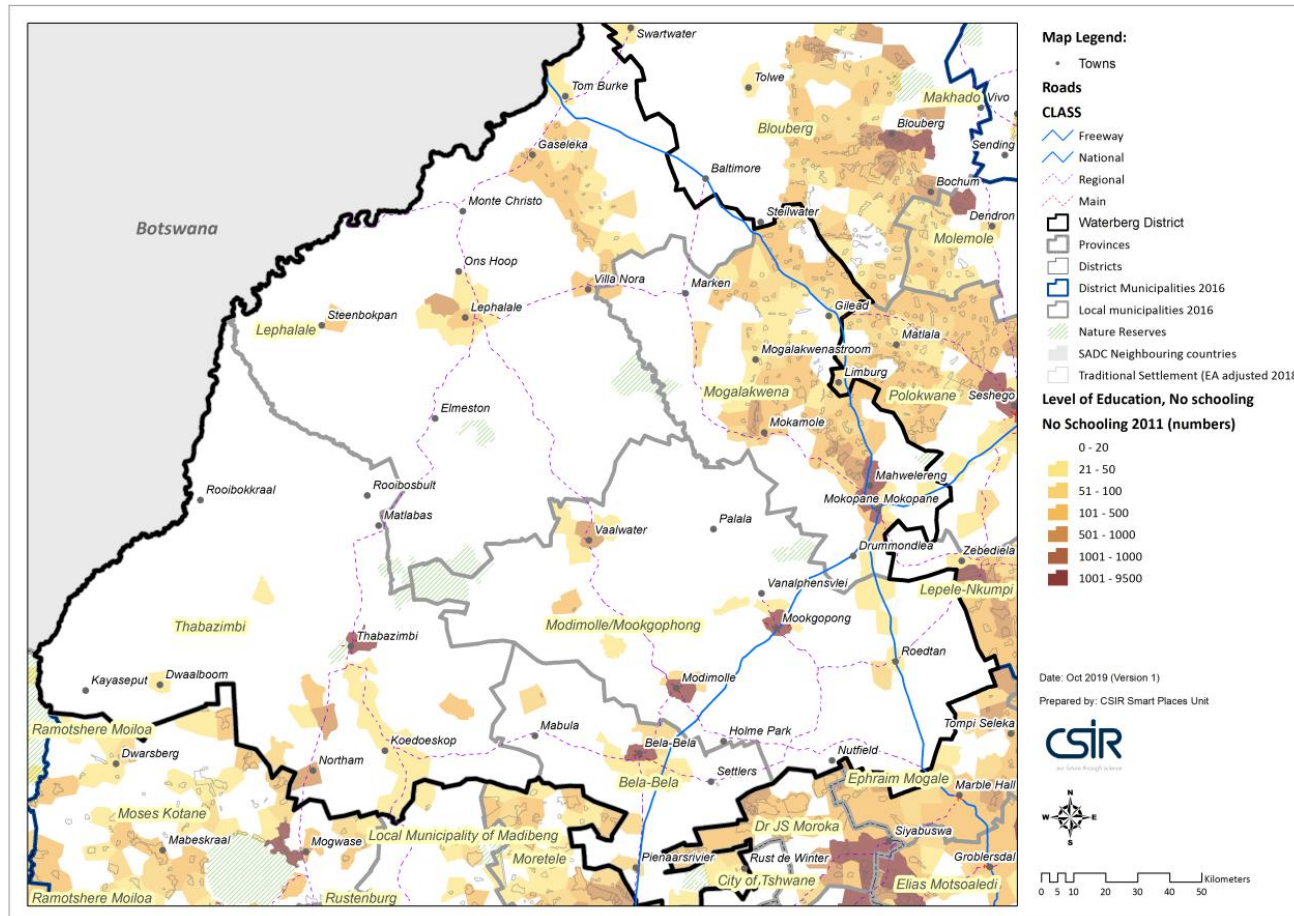
Source: Statistics South Africa, Census 2022



MAP 23: 2016 EDUCATION - NO SCHOOLING



MAP 24: 2016 EDUCATION - NO SCHOOLING (A) NUMBERS AND (B) CHANGE FROM 2001-2011



MAP 25: Primary and Secondary schools

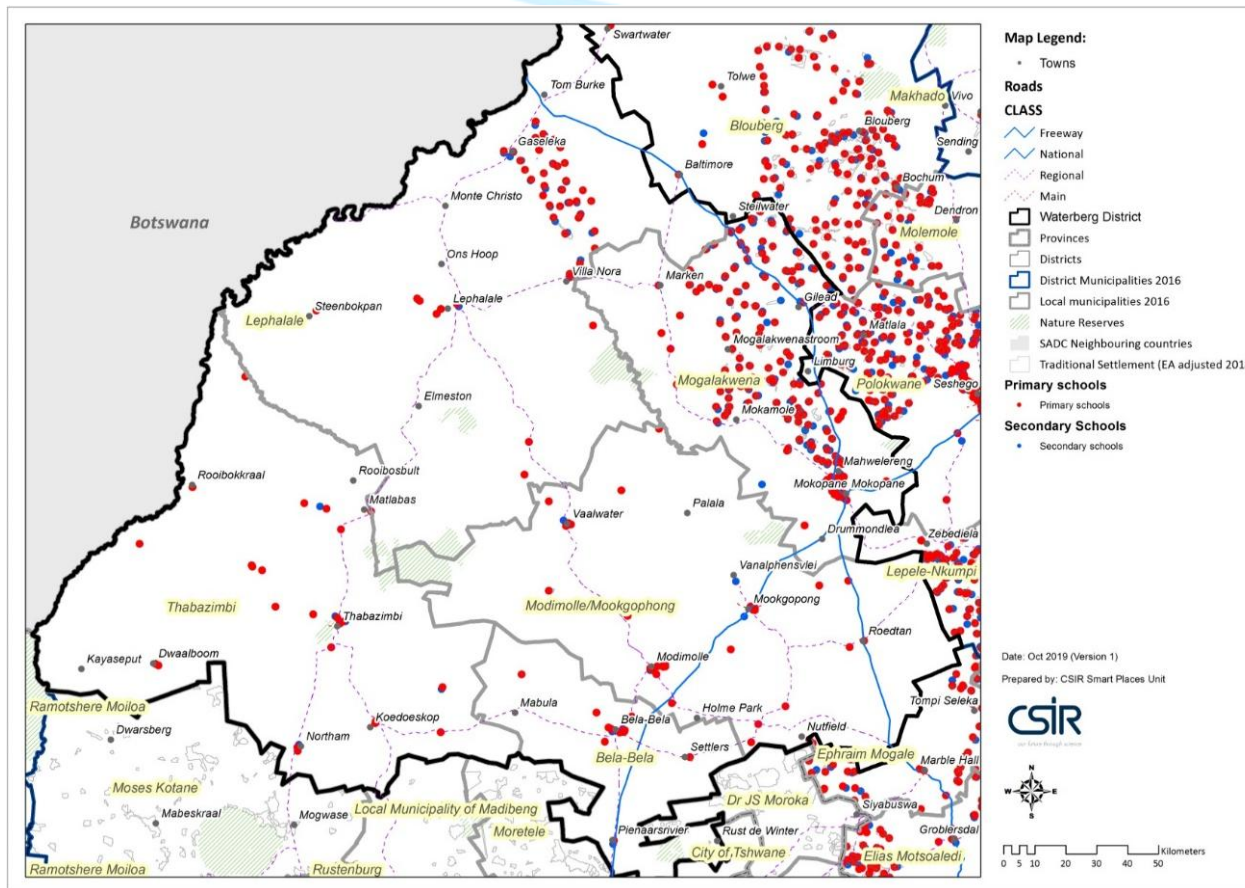


Table 82: WATERBERG MUNICIPALITY - NUMBER OF SCHOOLS

Municipality	No of Circuit	No of Secondary	No of Primary	Number of LSEN	No of Combined
Mogalakwena	09	98	148	01	12
Lephalale	03	29	48	01	03
Modimolle-Mookgophong	03	09	28	01	06
Belabela	01	06	13	01	03
Thabazimbi	02	06	12	01	06
Total	18	138	249	05	30

Table 83: DISTRICTS PERFORMANCE

NAME OF DISTRICT	2021 PERCENTAGE	2021 POSITION	2022 PERCENTAGE	2022 POSITION
Vhembe East	70,8	4	72,3	6
Waterberg 2	71,3	3	77,5	2
Vhembe West	66,9	7	70,8	7
Capricorn South	73,8	1	76,7	3
Mopani East	62,1	8	68,4	8
Capricorn North	67,8	5	75,8	5

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Mogalakwena	72,0	2	78,3	1
Sekhukhune South	59,4	9	66,8	9
Mopani West	67,1	6	76,7	3
Sekhukhune East	58,6	10	64,5	10

3.3.3 HEALTH AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT OVERVIEW

The Waterberg District Municipality has a relatively young population with a median age of 23 and a total number of 308 546 children, representing 10% of Limpopo's children. 243 households are headed by children between the ages of 10 to 14. The African population constitutes 91% of Waterberg's population, 61% of them live in poverty. 41% of the households are headed by women.

The district has an unemployment rate of 28.8% as opposed to employment rate of 38.4%, which employment rate is 1.4% higher than Limpopo. A majority of the employed (68%) are employed in the formal sector. 35.9% have completed matric or higher education, with 7% of the population with no formal education. This accounts for the social challenges confronting the district which amongst others relate to unemployment; substance abuse, gender based violence, number of people with no schooling, low average household incomes, crime and disease.

Lephalale has the largest population growth rate at 2.8 % on account of increased economic activity largely driven by Medupi power station and mining activities. Modimolle/Mookgopong municipality has the lowest population growth rate at -0.37% owing to outward migration as result of decline in economic activities. Thabazimbi has the highest proportion of economically active people at 63.7% and Mogalakwena has the lowest proportion of economically active people at 43%. Mogalakwena has the highest unemployment rate (40%) as opposed to Thabazimbi at 20%.

HEALTH

According to the Department of Health the three highest causes of death for children under the age of 5 are: Diarrhoea (22%), lower respiratory infections (20 to 21%) and pre term birth complications (10-12%). The top causes of death for young women between the ages 15-24 are HIV/Aids and TB whereas for young men in the same age group is road accidents and accidental deaths due to substance abuse. For the 25 to 64 age group the top causes of death for males and females are HIV/AIDS and TB. The top causes of death for the female elderly are: cerebrovascular diseases, hypertensive heart disease and

ischaemic heart disease. For elderly males the causes of death are: ischaemic heart disease, cerebrovascular diseases and the lower respiratory infections. 8.5% of the total population is 60 years and above thus requiring, prevention of chronic diseases programs through strategies such as health promotion at community household level, screening and strengthening of PHC re-engineering programme.

In addition, the top 5 causes of death affecting women in the childbearing age group are: indirect maternal (36.2%), other maternal conditions (25.4%), hypertension in pregnancy (17%), abortion (14.1%) and maternal haemorrhage (6.4%).

According to the Department of Health, the leading cause of death is HIV Aids related deaths. There are 65 400 people infected with HIV in Waterberg, this constitutes 7.1% and 0.9% of people infected with HIV in Limpopo and South Africa respectively. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 1.35% since 2008, which is higher than the 1.18% recorded by Limpopo in the same period. However, this is significantly lower than the 2% recorded for South Africa in the same period. The HIV/AIDS infected population represents 8.65% of the district total population in 2018. Amongst the infected people TB is the leading course of death. The challenges experienced in the district regarding TB-infections and fighting the disease include late consultation (with the diseases at an advanced stage) with health care providers and ineffective TB awareness campaigns.

According to the Department of Health, the District has total number of sixty one Primary Health Care (PHC) facilities, three Community Health Centres (CHC), seven District hospitals, one specialised hospital, one regional hospital and six private hospitals. These facilities render comprehensive health care package to communities the District. In considering the ideal hospital primary health care facilities do not perform well with the lowest possible score recorded in emergency trolleys and resuscitation rooms equipped with factional and basic resuscitation equipment. The facilities in Mookgopong-Modimolle and Mogalakwena require particular attention.



FIGURE 20: HIV/AIDS PROFILE IN THE WATERBERG

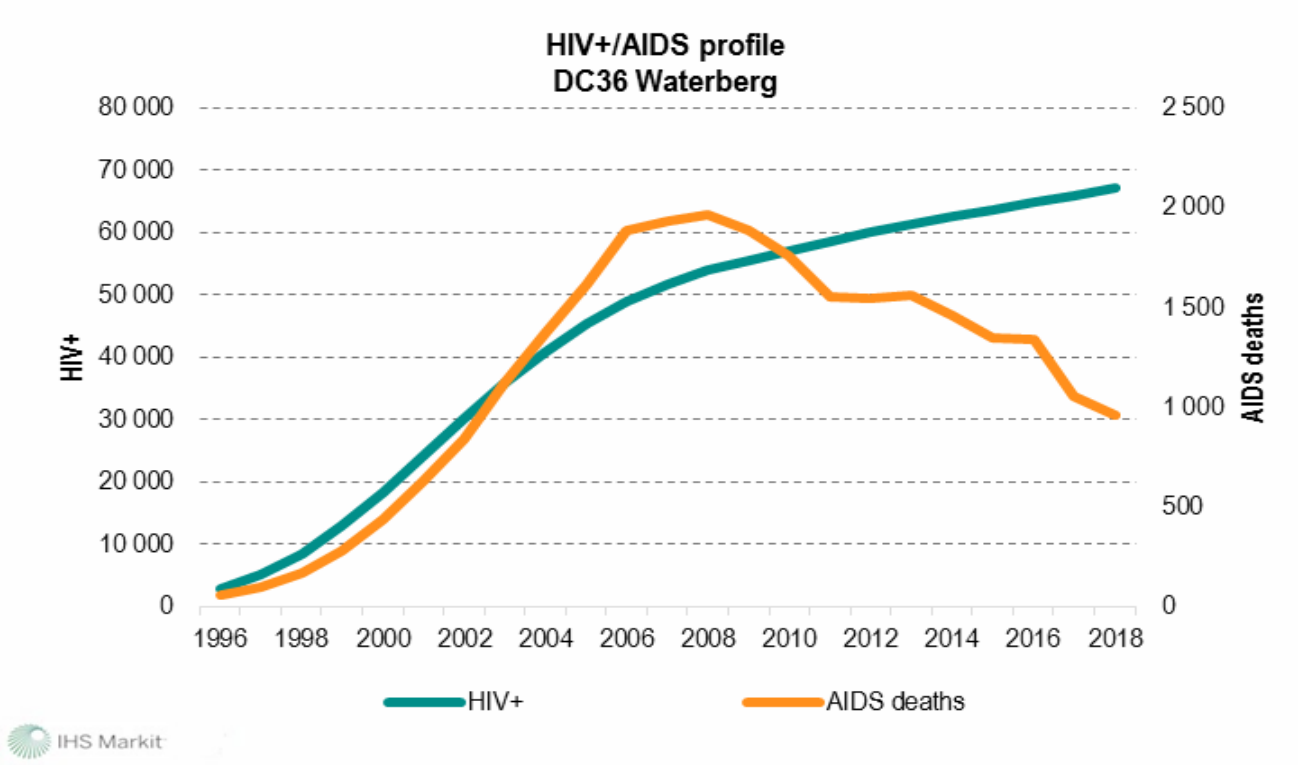


Table 84: TOP 5 WORST PERFORMING VITAL IDEAL CLINIC ELEMENTS IN PHC FACILITIES

	Bela-Bela LM	Lephalale LM	Mogalakwe na LM	Mookgophong/ Modimolle	Thabazimbi LM	Overall %
Emergency trolley is restored daily or after each use	50	0	6	0	20	9
Resuscitation room is equipped with functional, basic resuscitation equipment	50	13	51	14	90	48
90% of the medicines on the tracer medicine list are available	100	75	74	43	80	73
Cold chain procedure for vaccines is maintained	100	100	97	71	100	95
The temperature of the medicine room/dispensary is maintained within the safety range	100	100	94	86	100	95

In 2018, the Gini coefficient in Waterberg District Municipality was at 0.61, which reflects a marginal increase in the number over the ten-year period from 2008 to 2018. The Limpopo Province and South Africa had a Gini coefficient of 0.594 and 0.629 respectively.

Table 85: SOCIAL SERVICES–HEALTH FACILITIES

MUNICIPALITY	HOSPITALS	CLINICS	MOBILE CLINICS
Bela-Bela	1 (1 Private)	4	2
Lephalale	2 (1 Private)	7	7
Modimolle-Mookgophong	1 (1 Specialised)	7	6
Mogalakwena	3	29	13
Thabazimbi	1	10	4
Waterberg District	11	57	32

Source: Department of Health Waterberg District

Table 86: **EMS (STATIONS)**

Municipality	Station
Bela-Bela	2 (Bela Bela, Pienaarsrivier)
Lephalale	2 (Lephalale , Witpoort)
Modimolle- Mookgophong	3 (Modimolle , Mabatlane Mookgophong)
Mogalakwena	3 (Mokopane, George Masebe, Thabaleshoba)
Thabazimbi	2 (Thabazimbi, Northam)
Waterberg district	12

Source: Department of Health Waterberg District

QUALITY HEALTH CARE FOR ALL

Waterberg District Municipality faces intertwined social challenges: HIV prevalence remains significant in Limpopo, rape cases are rising in the district, and while matric pass rates are relatively strong, they show fluctuations that highlight persistent educational inequalities. These issues directly affect health, safety, and socio-economic development planning. This is one of the targets for the National Development Plan 2030 vision. A District based approach will assist in making sure that there is quality health care for all the people in the community.

There must be improved management, better trained health professionals, better patient information systems and focus on maternal & infant health care.

DOMINANT TRENDS ON HEALTH ISSUES

There is deterioration of population growth due to high level of HIV/AIDS related mortality, which makes population growth rate slowing, birth rate declining and life expectancy increasing.

MORTALITY

SA is affected by 4 epidemics: i.e. HIV/AIDS, Injury (both accidental and non-accident), infectious diseases e.g. TB, diarrhea & pneumonia etc, growing lifestyle diseases e.g diabetes, obesity etc.

Strategic Health Services Challenges

Limpopo Province HIV prevalence declined from 10.1% in 2017 to 8.9% in 2022, with about 570,000 people living with HIV.

Prevalence is highest among women aged 25–49 (22.3%) compared to men (17.0%).

ART coverage in Limpopo rose to 80.8% in 2022, showing progress in treatment access.

For Waterberg specifically, oversampling was not done in the HSRC survey, but district-level estimates align with provincial averages, meaning HIV remains a major public health challenge requiring targeted interventions

- High rate of teenage pregnancy
- Ineffective HIV/AIDS awareness campaigns
- Ineffective TB awareness campaigns
- Ineffective health inspectors
- Some people in the community are not covered by the km radius to the hospitals and Clinics
- Partners e.g Eskom, PPL mine and Exxaro promising to build clinics +_ 2yrs no progress e.g sekuruwe, Rietfontein, Molekane, Machikiri
- Funds delaying the completion of projects

IMPLICATIONS

- An application of a 5-km radius from each clinic suggests that a number of settlements are not well provided with health facilities.
- Most rural villages are located quite far from the health facilities i.e. beyond the (20) twenty kilometers of reach from hospitals and beyond five kilometers from clinics.
- The need for the provision of either mobile or immovable clinics would need to be determined within these settlements.



Table 87: **EARLY CHILDHOOD DEVELOPMENT**

Municipality	No of ECD centers exist	No of ECD receive funding	How many ECD not funded	Overall backlog for ECD centers	Fully/Conditional registered ECD centres
Bela-Bela	35	7	25	3	32
Modimolle-Mookgophong	65	30	28	7	58
Lephalale	90	43	40	7	83
Mogalakwena	245	148	87	10	235
Thabazimbi	41	11	23	7	34
Waterberg	476	239	203	34	442

Table 88: **DROP IN CENTRES**

Municipality	No of Drop in centers exist	No of Drop in receive funding	How many Drop in Centers not funded	Overall backlog for Drop in centers
Bela-Bela	1	1	0	0
Modimolle-Mookgophong	4	4	0	0
Lephalale	8	7	1	0
Mogalakwena	21	18	2	0
Thabazimbi	2	1	1	0
Waterberg	36	31	4	0

Table 89: **COMMUNITY NUTRITION CENTRES**

Municipality	No of CNDC centers exist	No of CNDCi receive funding	Type of NPO operate as CNDC
Bela-Bela	2	2	DIC
Modimolle- Mookgophong	0	0	0
Lephalale	1	0	CNDC
Mogalakwena	1	1	CNDC
Thabazimbi	0	0	0
Waterberg	4	3	0

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

- Lack of submission of death certificates to SASSA for system updates.
- Need to educate the youth about teenage pregnancy, STI's and HIV/AIDS.
- Child support is high and of great concern.

3.3.4 SAFETY AND SECURITY

Table 90: **POLICE STATIONS**

Cluster	Police Station
Bela Bela Cluster	7
Lephalale Cluster	8
Modimolle Cluster	6

Mahwelereng Cluster	6
Waterberg District	27

Source: Department Safety and Security

Table 91: WATERBERG DISTRICT POLICE STATIONS

Modimolle Cluster	Mahwelereng Cluster	Lephalale Cluster	Belabela Cluster
Rankin's Pass Naboomspruit Vaalwater Tuinplaas Roedtan Modimolle Dorset Police Station	Mahwelereng Mokopane Saambouberg Tolwe Gilead Tinmyne	Lephalale Villa Nora Hoopdal Witpoort Cumberland Dorset Bulgerivier Tom Burke	Belabela Thabazimbi Northam Pienaarsriver Dwaalboom Rust de winter Rooiberg

Source: Department Safety and Security

Table 92: WATERBERG CRIME STATS SIMPLIFIED

Type of Crime	Crime reported	Top 10 worse Police station precincts	Rating
Contact Crime 2018 - 2019			
Murder	21 – 32 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Sexual Offenses	158 – 147 decreased	Mahwelereng	4
Attempted Murder	21 – 20 decreased	Mahwelereng	3

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

Assault GBH	546 – 527 decreased	Mahwelereng	4
Common Assault	264 – 335 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Common Robbery	147 – 155 increased	Mahwelereng	4
Robbery with aggravating circumstances	158 – 164 increased	Mahwelereng	10

Source: Department Safety and Security

CRIME

Overall crime in Waterberg (2025): 14,074 cases, crime rate 1,845 per 100k population. This is 5% below Limpopo's average. Property crimes (Apr–Dec 2025): 2,415 reported, showing mixed precinct trends. Worst precincts: Mahwelereng, Mokopane, Bela-Bela, Lephalale, Modimolle, and Northam remain high-risk. Improving precincts: Rust De Winter (-27.2%), Roedtan (-24.1%), Thabazimbi (-22.8%). Worsening precincts: Dwaalboom (+68.8%), Hoopdal (+57.6%), Bulgerivier (+51.2%). The low levels of skills and limited opportunities in the Waterberg District Municipality resulted in the municipality having the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Limpopo Province. The Waterberg District's crime statistics reveal a complex picture with both progress and emerging risks. Violent crimes such as murder, attempted murder, and sexual offences have increased significantly, pointing to urgent needs for stronger community safety programs and gender-based violence interventions. At the same time, assault GBH and common assault declined, suggesting some success in conflict prevention and policing visibility. Property-related crimes show mixed trends: residential burglary rose sharply while non-residential burglary fell, highlighting vulnerabilities in household security. The sharp drop in stock-theft is positive for rural livelihoods, but the surge in commercial crime threatens business resilience and municipal revenue. Meanwhile, drug-related crime remained stable, requiring sustained investment in rehabilitation and youth diversion.

Rape Statistics

Waterberg crime stats show rape cases increased from 554 in 2024–2025 to 617 in 2025–2026, an 11.4% rise.

Sexual offences overall rose by 19.1%, with attempted sexual offences doubling.

This trend underscores gender-based violence as a critical social challenge, demanding stronger community safety programs, survivor support services, and integration of GBV prevention into municipal development planning.

Table 93: CRIME OVERVIEW

Crime Category	2024–2025	2025–2026	Trends
Murder	83	103	↑ 24.1%
Sexual offences	607	723	↑ 19.1%
Attempted murder	112	152	↑ 35.7%
Assault GBH	1,895	1,466	↓ 22.6%
Common assault	1,651	1,440	↓ 12.8%
Robbery with aggravating circumstances	672	618	↓ 8.0%
Burglary residential	1,639	1,923	↑ 17.3%
Burglary non-residential	735	611	↓ 16.9%
Stock-theft	432	223	↓ 48.4%
Commercial crime	1,511	1,983	↑ 31.2%
Drug-related crime	2,933	2,904	↓ 1.0%

Source: SAPS, 2026

Backlogs of Safety and Security Facilities

- Not identified by the department
- The DSSL prepared to assist municipalities in safety and security sector planning

Safety and Security Challenges

- Monitoring of proper utilization of licenses and permits issued to liquor sellers.
- Illegal operation of unlicensed sheebens and taverns.
- Access to certain crime scenes due to bad conditions of roads and lights.
- Domestic violence (women and child abuse).
- Crime awareness and substance abuse.
- Urgent municipal by-laws.

3.3.5 SPORT, ART AND CULTURE

Table 94: SPORTS FACILITIES PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	Name of facility	Name of Location	Activities
Modimolle -Mookgophong	1 Ephraim Mogale Stadium Phagameng Sports facilities	Phagameng Location	Netball, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
	Mookgophong Stadium Mookgophong Multipurpose	Mookgophong	Netball, Volleyball, Basket and outdoor gym facilities
Mogalakwena Municipality	Mahwelereng stadium Bakenberg Stadium Bavaria Stadium Rebone Stadium	Mahwelereng Bakenberg Matlala North Steilooop	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
	Mapela Ga-pila Bakenberg	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis	Mapela Sport Centre Ga-pila outdoor courts Bakenburg Stadium
	Mapela Sport Centre Ga-pila outdoor courts	Mapela Ga-pila	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
Lephalale Municipality	Shongoane stadium Thabo Mbeki Stadium Marapong Stadium Mogol Stadium(Private	Shongoane 3 Thabo Mbeki Marapong Location Lephalale Town	Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
Thabazimbi Municipality	Thaba- Park Stadium Regorogile Sports Fields	Thabazimbi Town Regorogile Location	It includes a multipurpose Netbank, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis

Belabela	Moloto Sports Fields Sanfa Stadium Belabela Stadium Belabela sports Centre	Bela-bela Location	It includes a multipurpose Netball, Rugby, Volleyball, Basket and tennis
----------	---	--------------------	--

LEPHALALE - SPORTS FACILITIES

Sports facilities in both Onverwacht and Marapong are privately owned. Mogol sport centre and Marapong stadium are the two facilities which are available to the community in the urban area. There are public parks with children playing equipment in the urban areas. Some of these parks are maintained although the standard in Marapong is lower as compared to the one in Onverwacht and town. There are only two parks and the third is nearing completion in the entire rural villages although the majority of the population resides in those settlements. There are two enclosed sports field at Ga-Monyeki village and Thabo-Mbeki Township which cater for sporting activities for the community in rural areas. These facilities have been erected some years ago but their standard is not satisfactory.

The third facility was erected at Ga-Seleka village but has since collapsed before it could even be opened to the public. The enclosed sports field in Thabo-Mbeki has been closed to the community as the ablution has been vandalized but nevertheless it is been utilized without permission.

Table 95: MUNICIPALITY HALLS AND PARKS

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG

Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality	Number
Community Halls	5
Sports Facilities	25
Municipal Parks	18

Source: MMLM

MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG

PARKs	FACILITIES AT THE PARK	MOOKGOPHONG TOWN	THUSANG	MOOKGOPHONG TOWNSHIP
Park at Modimolle entrance	Open park			
Mokopane entrance	Open park	1 Golf course	1 Stadiums	1 Stadiums
Golfpark entrance	Open park		1 Tennis court facility	Net ball court
Lapa Municipal park	Swimming pool		1 Volleyball court	1 Volleyball court
Main Municipal building	Open park			
Vodacom park in ext3	Children playing equipment			
Roedtan Municipal building	Open park			
Thusang next to community hall	Open park			

Source: Mookgophong social and community services,

BELA BELA

Location	Facilities	Constraints and Challenges
Bela Bela Township	Bela Bela Community Hall i.e. Performing Arts and Culture. Sporting amenities i.e. Netball, Volleyball, Basket Ball and Tennis Court. SUNFA "stadium" Moloto Str "stadium" Bela Bela High Stadium Three Community Park	The Hall is multi – functional because it is also booked for special events and it is not always readily available for sports, arts, culture and recreational activities. The sporting amenities indicated on the column for facilities are the only sporting code facilities available at the municipal level and they is a lot of pressure they encounter due to overuse as a result the facilities are deteriorating very quickly.

	1 Cemetery facilities 1 library	The long distance travelled by individuals who stay in the remote parts of the township. The condition on the football grounds (stadium) is not satisfactory. The parks do not have the ablution facilities and lights.
Bela Bela Town	Jinnah Community Hall Spa Park Community Hall 1 library	Lack of sports Facilities
Pienaarsriver	Community Hall/Park	Lack of Facilities
Masakhane	1 Cemetery facilities	Lack of facilities
Rus de Winter and Rapotokwane	Community Hall Sport Ground 1 library	These facilities are only located within Rapotokwane.

Table 96: DISTRICT WIDE LIBRARY INFRASTRUCTURES

NAME OF DISTRICT & LMs	BASELINE/STATUS QUO
Bela-Bela LM	1 library
Lephalale LM	3 libraries
Modimolle -Mookgophong LM	4 libraries
Mokgalakwena LM	4 libraries
Thabazimbi LM	2 libraries

Source: Local Municipalities

CHALLENGES

- Provision of Libraries as per norms and standards

IMPLICATIONS

- Training to be intensified on oversight structures



- Proceed with Districtwide shared services approach
- Provision of one Library per 10 000 Household

3.4.6 TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICES

POSTAL SERVICES IN WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

The Waterberg District Municipality encompasses several local municipalities with established postal services that cater to the current demand. These facilities are strategically positioned to ensure accessibility and service efficiency. Regular maintenance is essential to preserve their operational effectiveness.

Modimolle-Mookgophong Local Municipality: This municipality hosts three post offices and four retail postal agencies located in Modimolle town, Vaalwater, and Mookgopong. The existing postal infrastructure sufficiently meets the demand within the municipality. Ongoing maintenance is required to ensure the continued functionality of these facilities.

Bela Bela Local Municipality: The Bela Bela Local Municipality has three post offices situated in the town center, the township area, Radium, and Pienaarsrivier.

Postal services in **Mogalakwena Local Municipality** are distributed across seven locations, including Mokopane, Bakenberg, Mahwelereng, Mapela, Rebone, Sterkrivier, and Taueatswala.

Lephalale Local Municipality features postal service points in Onverwacht and Lephalale town.

The **Thabazimbi Local Municipality** has postal service outlets in Northam, Thabazimbi, and Swartklip.

Cellular phone network infrastructure challenges

There are four (04) major network providers in Waterberg, namely, MTN, Vodacom, Cell C, and Telkom, with MTN having high quality access in all town followed by Vodacom, and Cell C respectively, but there are areas like Ga-Masipa, Mahabaneng in Mogalakwena, Gaseleka, Thabo Mbeki, Reabetswe ect in Lephalale, and other areas which experience phone network challenges, especially when travelling deep into rural Mogalakwena and Lephalale.

Community radio stations in the Waterberg District

- **Waterberg Stereo 104.9 FM:** Based in Modimolle, this station serves as a hub for community radio in the district, offering diverse programming in English and Afrikaans.

- **Waterberg Wave FM:** A registered community radio station broadcasting on 92.8 FM, located in Vaalwater. It focuses on edutainment, awareness programs, and youth development in broadcasting.
- **Mokopane FM:** Broadcasting on 100.0 MHz, this station is based at 68 Pretorius Street, Mokopane and is known for its revitalized community engagement.
- **Waterberg FM 99.3** is a community radio station based in Lephalale, located at CNR Nelson Mandela Drive and Wells Street. The station broadcasts in multiple languages, including Setswana, Sepedi, English, and Afrikaans

CHALLENGES

- A need for more post offices in the other areas
- Adherence to the norms and standards
- Delivery in the rural areas

DISTRICT WIDE CEMETERY ANALYSIS

Table 97: CEMETRIES IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITIES

MUNICIPALITY	NUMBER OF CEMETRY
Modimolle	11
Bela-Bela	05
Thabazimbi	04
Mogalakwena	21
Lephalale	14

CEMETRY CHALLENGE

- Poor quality of road
- No ablution facilities
- Limited space for burial

CHAPTER 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT ANALYSIS

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Local Economic Development is an approach to sustainable economic development that encourages local communities, public and private sector to work together to stimulate local economic activities that will result in an improvement in the quality of life for all. It is a practical understanding of what the local area does well and what it has to offer, where its weaknesses and gaps lie as well as where threats and opportunities exist considering the needs of the local communities. WDM through Local Economic Development aims to improve the standard of living, create a conducive environment for job creation, advance skills and build a sustainable development for the future. The main focus is enhancing competitiveness, increasing sustainable growth and ensures that growth is inclusive.

Waterberg District Municipality's priority economic sectors are Mining, Tourism and Agriculture, with mining been the largest contributor to the district's GVA. The district municipality is striving towards economic diversification, to reduce high dependency on the mining sector. The diversification approach is to explore commodity expansion and value addition. The District is one of the major mining regions within South Africa of which commodities such as platinum, iron ore, coal and diamonds. The District has a rich biodiversity, it is home to internationally renowned icons such as the UNESCO Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, RAMSAR Nylsvley Wetland, and the District is also home to Marakele National Park and the Makapan's Valley World Heritage Site. The fertile soil leading to a competitive advantage in the agricultural sector, and opportunities within this sector can still be explored to their full potential, agro-processing, and agri-tourism are such potential opportunities. The area has variety of natural resources, and has the potential to create countless opportunities for a sustainable local economic development.

Economic Competitive and Comparative Advantages

Available resources and **strong economic primary sector** to support multiple sector value addition and drive diversification. Minerals and metals support mining and manufacturing. Primary agricultural resources to support agro-processing and the entire bio-diversity economy.

Eco-Tourism reputation, the district's internationally recognised conservation status creates a competitive edge in the eco-tourism and **wildlife** industries. Approximately 80% of the district remains in a natural or near natural state.

The District has a **large agricultural area** in the Limpopo province covering approximately 4.3 million hectares

Economic similarities across the municipalities in the District and **related development nodes** give the potential to create integrated clusters to drive secondary economic development opportunities.

Transport routes and communication networks into Botswana, Zambia and Zimbabwe make the District a pivot for SADC integration. As a network node and a point for regional aggregation, the Waterberg District can create SADC-scale economies of scale.

Proximity to Gauteng giving access to the largest provincial economy. The District has to plan and position for its regional comparative advantage.

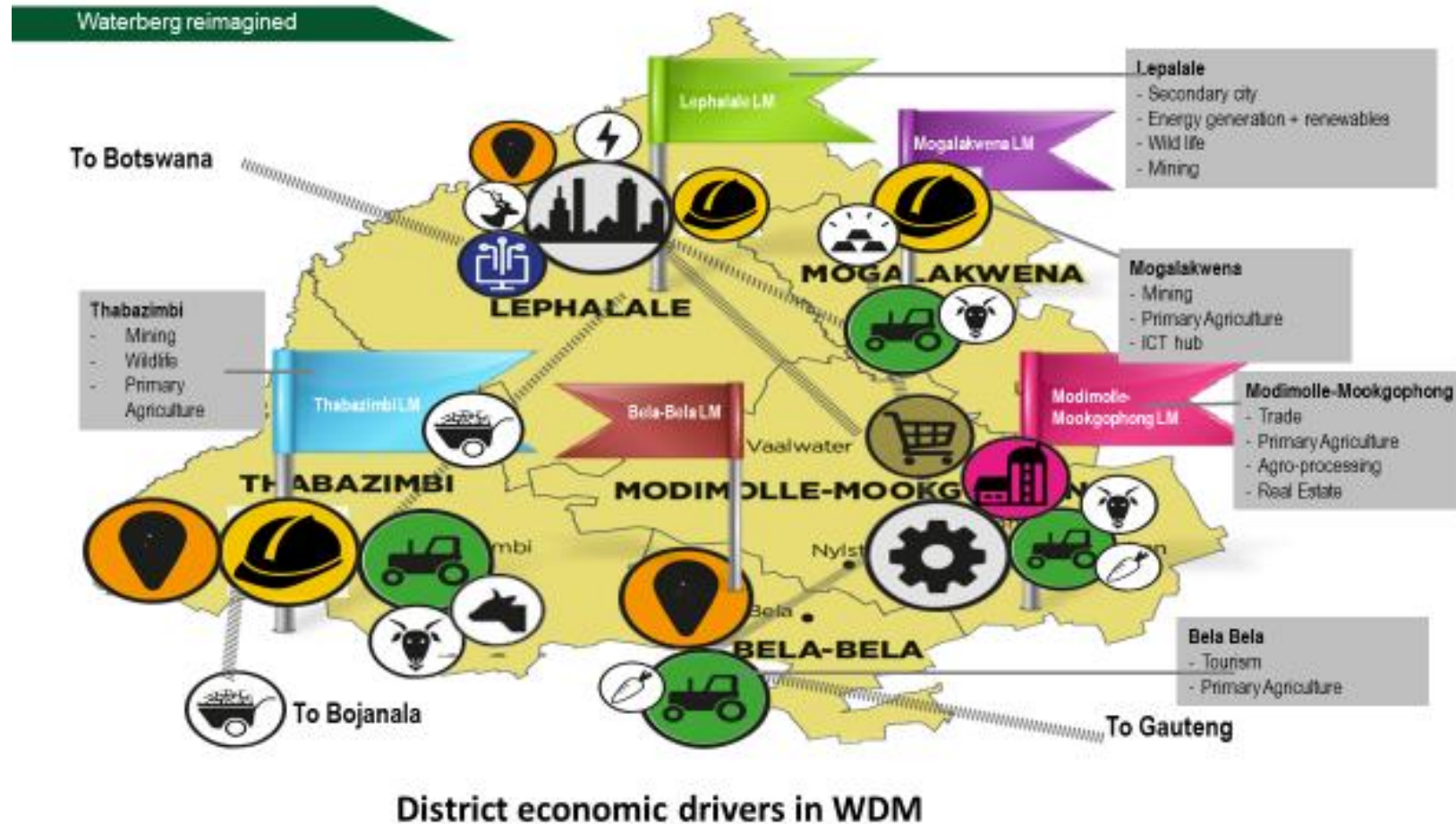


FIGURE 21:THE ECONOMIC DRIVERS IN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT AND ITS LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES



4.1.1 Alignment with National & Provincial Plans

The District Development Model

The WDM IDP Framework is aligned with national, provincial strategies and the District Development Model. Coordination between municipalities, private sector partners, and government entities is crucial for implementation. Waterberg District Municipality was one of the three pilot municipalities selected to pilot the District Development Model (DDM). On 26 November, the President launched the District Development Model in Lephalale, Waterberg District. This was followed by the launch of the DDM Hub by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (GoGTA) on 05th September 2020. Government is using DDM as a practical model to improve cooperative governance and promote integrated planning, budgeting and implementation on the basis of stakeholder and community involvement, and thereby build a capable and ethical developmental state with strong local government that can respond to current and future needs and effectively implement national priorities.

The Waterberg One Plan has been developed with the following vision:

"A tourism and energy hub that enables a participative, investment-friendly, and diversified economy."

This vision is supported by six DDM (District Development Model) themes:

- Demographics & People Development
- Economic Positioning
- Spatial Restructuring/Environmental
- Infrastructure Engineering
- Service Provisioning
- Governance

The One Plan aims to ignite a self-reinforcing cycle of sustainability by positioning Waterberg as a well-managed district that fosters participation, attracts investment, and promotes economic diversification. This, in turn, will establish Waterberg as a desirable investment destination, leveraging:

- Its strategic proximity to the Gauteng global city region and international border posts.
- Its globally competitive mineral resources.
- Its unique World Heritage Site and rich social potential.

The One Plan model focuses on long-term project planning within the district, with the goal of attracting investors and creating job opportunities for local communities. This is achieved through coordinated efforts between the three spheres of government and private sector partnerships.

To achieve the economic potential and participative investment from both the private and public sector, governance practices will aim to create an environment in which economic participation can be unlocked by on the one hand creating more opportunities in the form of primary, secondary and tertiary economic sector development - focused on establishing mining, tourism and agriculture value chains and accelerating growth through optimized functional linkages between activities – and on the other hand stimulating potential participants in the form of a skilled Labour force, SMME incentivization and international investors.

4.2 THE DISTRICT ECONOMIC CONTRIBUTION OVERVIEW

4.2.1 The Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

In 2024, the Waterberg District Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of -0.29% which is a slightly lower GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 0.12%, and is lower than that of South Africa, where the 2024 GDP growth rate was 0.53%. Similar to the short-term growth rate of 2024, the longer-term average growth rate for Waterberg (-0.97%) is also significantly lower than that of South Africa (0.67%). The economic growth in Waterberg peaked in 2021 at 4.21%.

The Waterberg District Municipality had a total GDP of R 86.4 billion and in terms of total contribution towards Limpopo Province the Waterberg District Municipality ranked fourth relative to all the regional economies to total Limpopo Province GDP. This ranking in terms of size compared to other regions of Waterberg remained the same since 2014. In terms of its share, it was in 2024 (15.5%) significantly smaller compared to what it was in 2014 (17.2%). For the period 2014 to 2024, the average annual growth rate of -1.0% of Waterberg was the lowest relative to its peers in terms of growth in constant 2010 prices.



TABLE 100: GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - WATERBERG, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2014-2024 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE, CONSTANT 2010 PRICES]

	Waterberg	Limpopo	National Total
2014	-0.1%	1.1%	1.4%
2015	2.9%	1.9%	1.3%
2016	-3.8%	0.1%	0.7%
2017	1.0%	1.4%	1.2%
2018	0.0%	1.1%	1.6%
2019	-1.3%	0.1%	0.3%
2020	-12.2%	-6.4%	-6.2%
2021	4.2%	5.5%	4.9%
2022	-2.1%	1.1%	2.1%
2023	3.1%	0.8%	0.8%
2024	-0.3%	0.1%	0.5%
Average Annual growth 2014-2024	-0.97%	0.53%	0.67%

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650.

Data compiled on 29 Jul 2025. © 2025 S&P Global.

LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES' CONTRIBUTION INTO THE DISTRICT'S GDP

Mookgopong/Modimolle had the highest average annual economic growth, averaging 0.23% between 2014 and 2024, when compared to the rest of the regions within the Waterberg District Municipality. The Mogalakwena Local Municipality had the second highest average annual growth rate of 0.16%. Thabazimbi Local Municipality had the lowest average annual growth rate of -3.02% between 2014 and 2024. The greatest contributor to the Waterberg District Municipality economy is the Thabazimbi Local Municipality with a share of 28.57% or R 24.7 billion, increasing from R 16.6 billion in 2014. The economy with the lowest contribution is the Bela-Bela Local Municipality with R 6.7 billion growing from R 4 billion in 2014.

Waterberg District Municipality's GDP (2016–2026) shows steady growth, with mining and energy driving the largest share, while Bela-Bela and Lephalale remain the strongest local contributors. The district's GDP expanded at an average of 2.8% annually, with 2025–2026 projections indicating a recovery above 3% due to energy transition projects and catalytic infrastructure.

District GDP (2025): Estimated at R92.4 billion, up from R68.5 billion in 2016. Average growth (2016–2026): 2.8% annually, slightly below Limpopo's provincial average (3.1%). Sector contributions: Mining & energy (52%), agriculture (18%), tourism & services (30%). 2026 outlook: Growth expected to exceed 3%, driven by renewable energy projects and smart city initiatives in Lephalale and Mokopane.

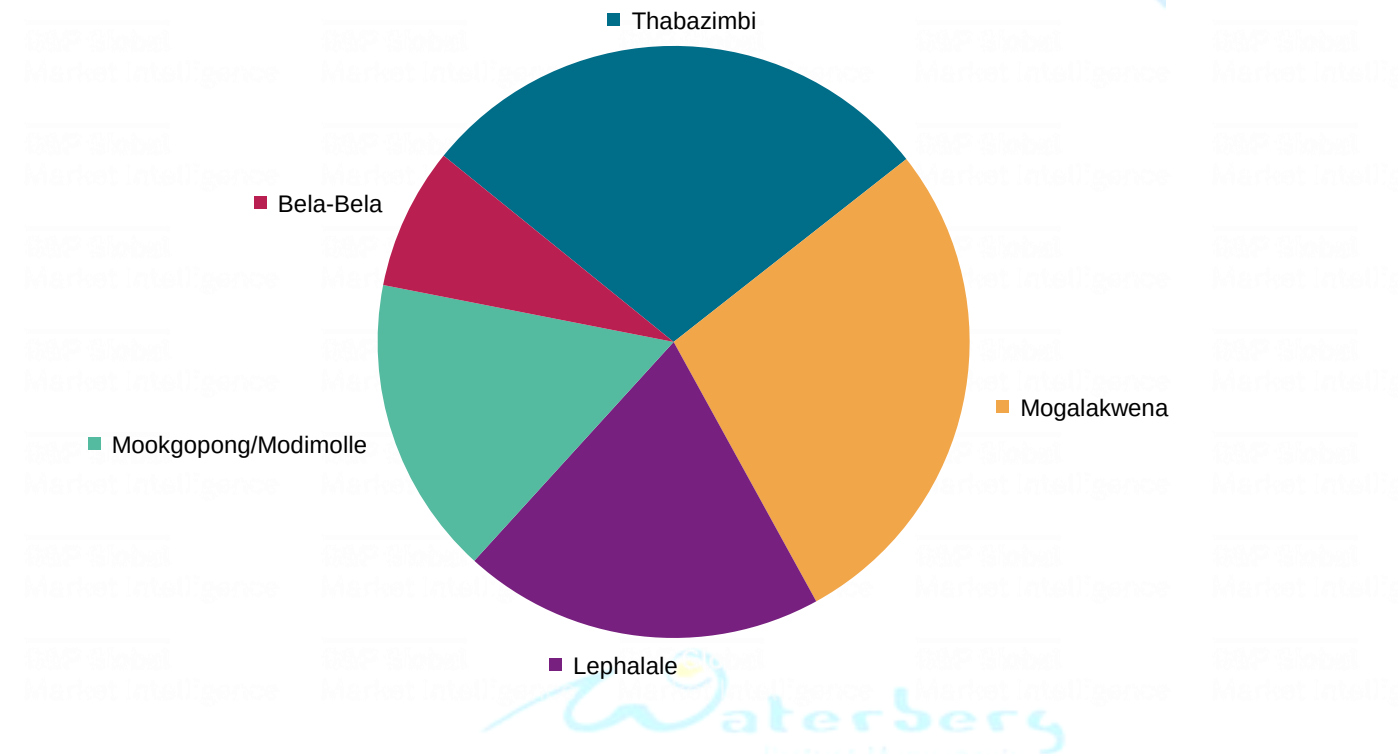


TABLE 101 : GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2014 TO 2024, SHARE AND GROWTH

	2024 (Current prices)	Share of district municipality	2014 (Constant prices)	2024 (Constant prices)	Average Annual growth
Thabazimbi	24.68	28.57%	14.56	10.72	-3.02%
Lephalale	17.07	19.76%	9.55	8.58	-1.07%
Bela-Bela	6.70	7.75%	4.20	3.88	-0.77%
Mogalakwena	23.84	27.60%	14.10	14.33	0.16%
Mookgopong/Modimolle	14.10	16.32%	8.45	8.65	0.23%
Waterberg	86.40		50.86	46.16	

Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650.Data compiled on 29 Jul 2025.© 2025 S&P Global.

CHART 1: GDP CONTRIBUTION - LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2025



Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650. Data compiled on 29 Jul 2025. © 2025 S&P Global.

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

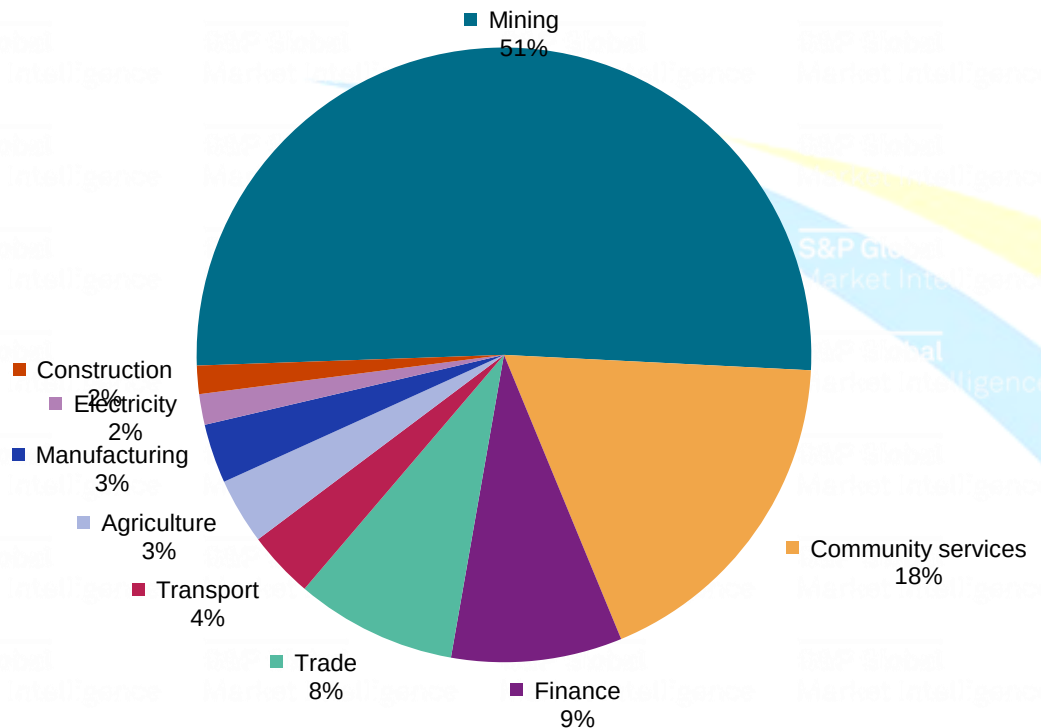
Gross Value Added (GVA)

The Waterberg District Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

In 2024, the mining sector was the largest within Waterberg District Municipality accounting for R 40.9 billion or 51.4% of the total GVA in the district municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Waterberg District Municipality is the community services sector at 18.0%, followed by the finance sector with 9.0%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Waterberg District Municipality is the construction sector with a contribution of R 1.18 billion or 1.49% of the total GVA. The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA in smaller and more rural local municipalities. When looking at the regions within the district municipality, the Mogalakwena Local Municipality made the largest contribution to the community services sector at 50.30% of the district municipality. As a whole, the Mogalakwena Local Municipality contributed R 21.1 billion or 26.47% to the GVA of the Waterberg District Municipality. The region within Waterberg District Municipality that contributes the most to the GVA of the district municipality was the Mookgopong/Modimolle Local Municipality with a total of R 12.5 billion or 15.64%.

CHART 2:GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2024 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]





Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650. Data compiled on 29 Jul 2025. © 2025 S&P Global.

Sector Growth Forecast

The finance sector is expected to grow fastest at an average of 3.55% annually from R 5.07 billion in Waterberg District Municipality to R 6.04 billion in 2029. The mining sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Waterberg District Municipality in 2029, with a total share of 40.7% of the total GVA (as measured in current prices), growing at an average annual rate of 0.5%. The sector that is estimated to grow the slowest is the electricity sector with an average annual growth rate of -0.54%.



Table 102: Gross value added (GVA) by broad economic sector - Waterberg District Municipality, 2024-2029 [R billions, constant 2010 prices]

	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028	2029	Average Annual growth
Agriculture	1.73	1.72	1.76	1.78	1.80	1.82	0.95%
Mining	18.08	17.86	17.61	17.94	18.20	18.55	0.52%
Manufacturing	1.33	1.34	1.35	1.38	1.41	1.44	1.63%
Electricity	0.47	0.45	0.45	0.46	0.46	0.46	-0.54%
Construction	0.72	0.73	0.74	0.77	0.79	0.81	2.46%
Trade	3.45	3.45	3.49	3.59	3.70	3.75	1.69%
Transport	2.30	2.34	2.39	2.45	2.52	2.60	2.43%
Finance	5.07	5.23	5.41	5.62	5.82	6.04	3.55%
Community services	9.36	9.43	9.51	9.69	9.90	10.17	1.68%
Total Industries	42.50	42.54	42.72	43.68	44.58	45.63	1.43%

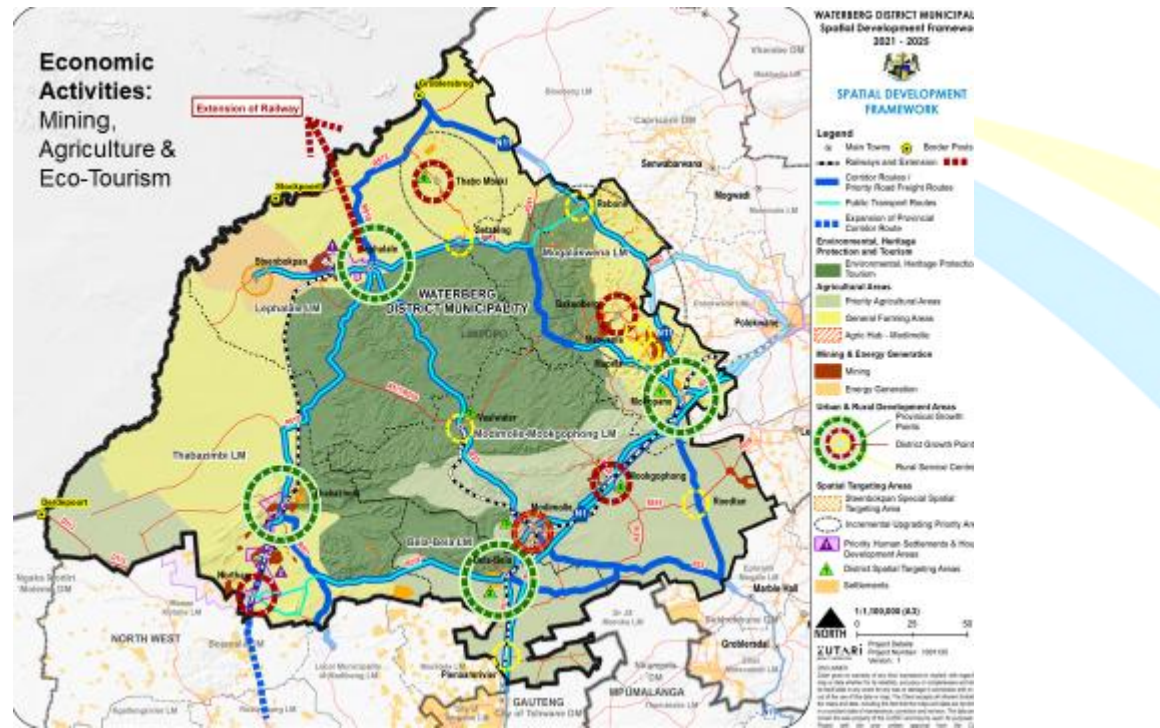
Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650.

Data compiled on 29 Jul 2025.

© 2025 S&P Global.



MAP 26: THE ECONOMIC ACTIVITIES IN THE DISTRICT



4.3 ECONOMIC SECTORS

4.3.1 MINING

The district is one of the major mining regions in South Africa with platinum, iron ore, coal and diamonds as the main resources. Importantly, the district, houses 40% of the national coal reserves. Other minerals in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, palladium, iron and minerals of the future. The district also houses the fourth largest power station (Medupi) in the world and the largest remaining known coal reserves in South Africa.

The varied geology of the Waterberg District Municipality has enabled the development of numerous mineral systems importantly, this includes hydrothermal base metals and intrusion-related Rare Earth Elements and other critical minerals. Vanadium, Nickel, Copper Cobalt. The Bushveld Igneous Complex hosts approximately 80% of world's deposit of platinum-group elements and (PGM) & chromium. For each 1 km of depth into the Earth in the Bushveld Complex there is in the order of 350 million oz of platinum. For comparison, annual production of platinum from the Bushveld Complex currently is only around 5 million oz. (Council for Geoscience).

There is a total of forty-eight (48) mining licenses issued by the Department of Minerals and Energy. Of the 48 issued licences, it is twenty five (25) operational mines, twenty-three (23) mines non-operational due to, companies that are under care and maintenance, lack of funding, appeals, water use licences and other aspects.

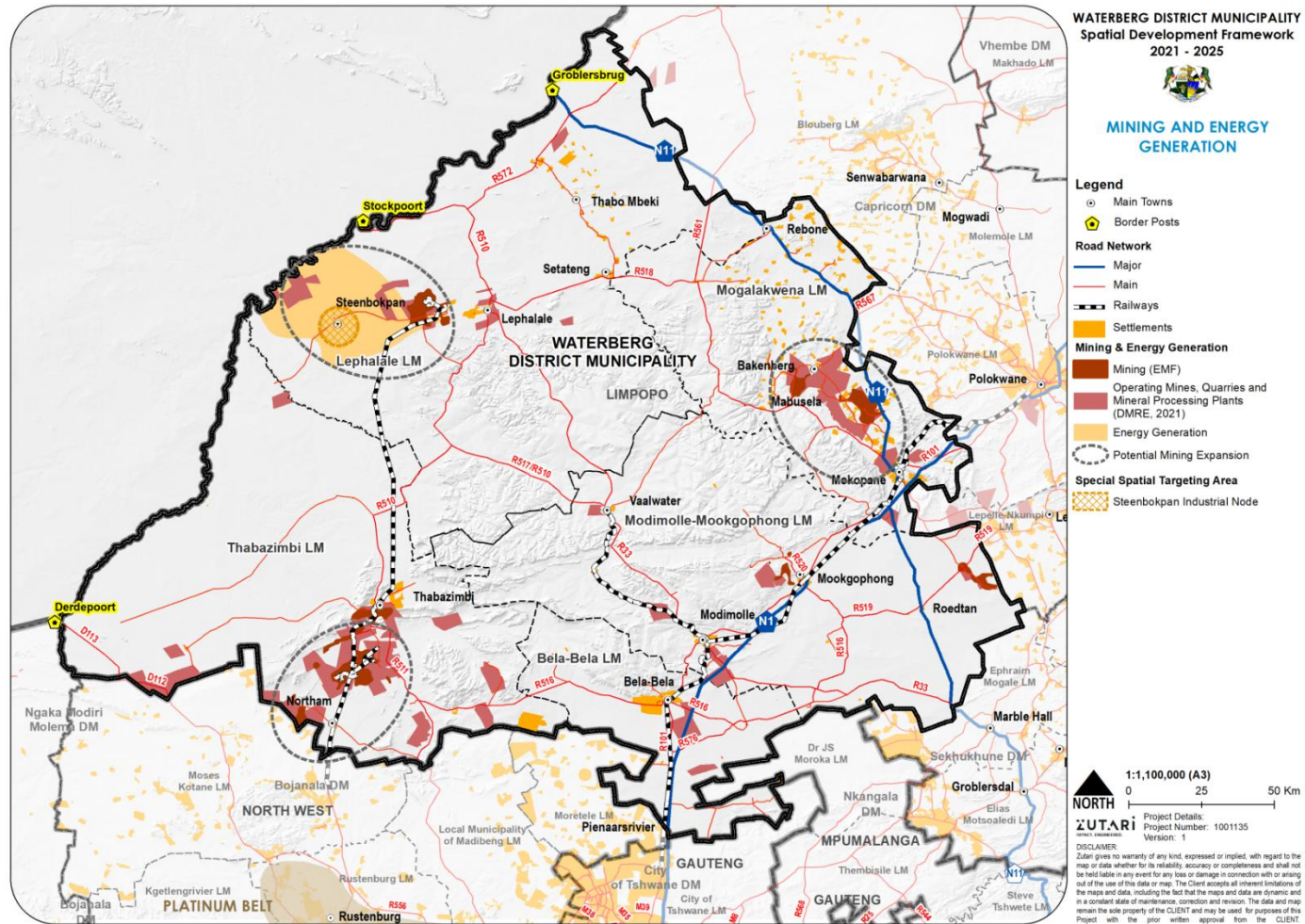
Right holders are obliged to commence with operations within 120 days for prospecting and 1 year for mining from the date of issuing of the right.

TABLE 98: : MINERAL COMMODITY PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY:

Municipality	Commodity
Thabazimbi	Andalusite,Chrome,Cobalt ,Gold,Nickel,Copper,Platinum,Precious Metals,Iron Ore,Limestone,Shale,Vanaduim
Modimolle- Mookgopong	Andalusite,Clay,Aggregates,
Mogalakwena	Chrome,Palladium,Rhodium,Ruthenium,Osmium,Iridium,Granite,Titanium,Iron,Platinum,Vanadium,Iron Ore,Nickel,Gold,Silver ,Copper
Bela-Bela	Diamonds in Kimberlites
Lephalale	Coal,Sand,Sandstone,Clay,Limestone,Shale,Aggregates



MAP 26: MINING SECTOR MAP



Areas of comparative advantage in the mining sector

The mining industry in the municipal area contributes largest to the economic development of the district. The Waterberg area is the largest production area of platinum in the province of Limpopo and the mining of coal and petroleum development in Lephalale has increased demand for the commodity for electricity generation. The raw minerals are a direct input into manufacturing/ processing presenting an opportunity for Waterberg to diversify,

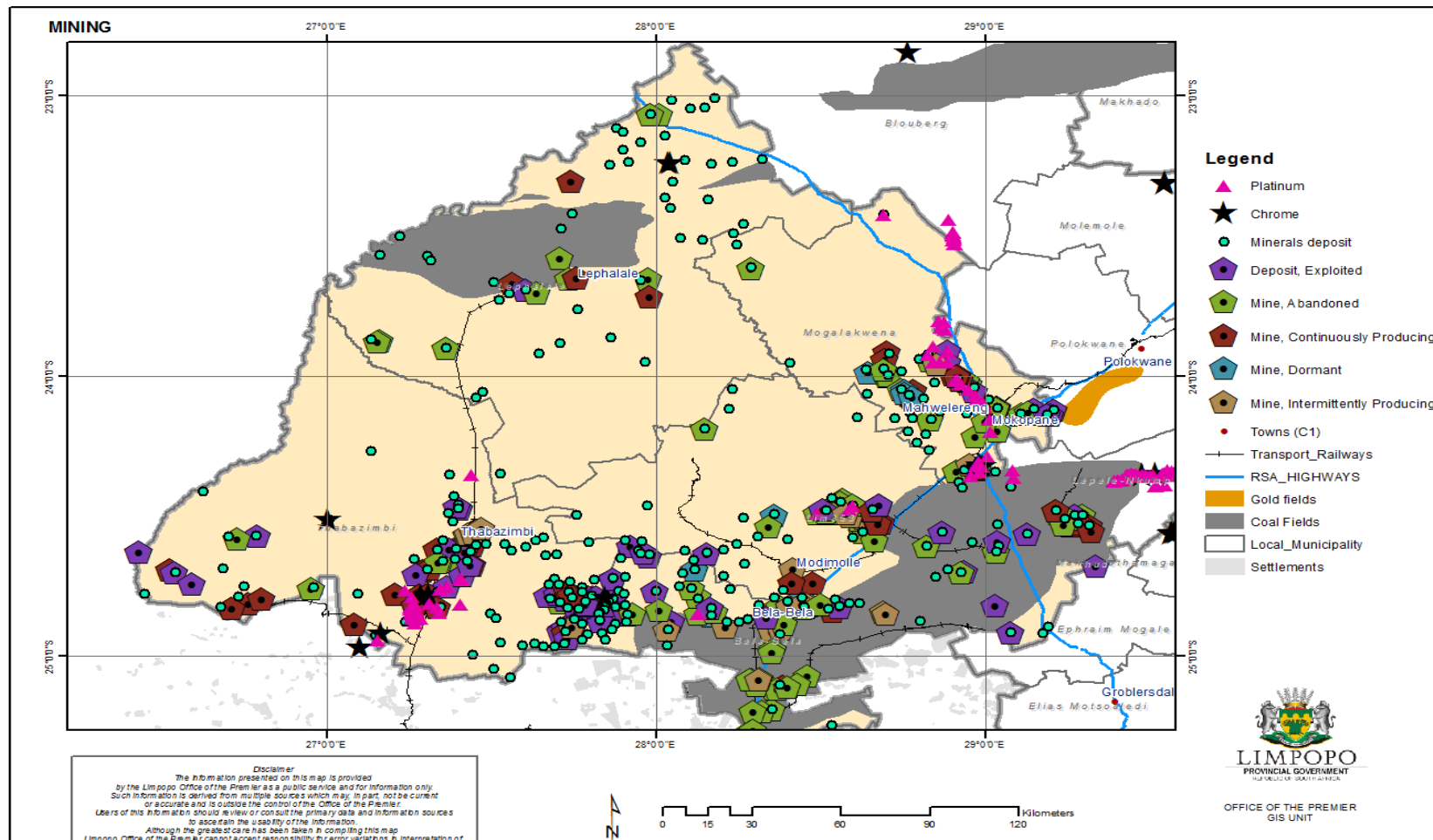
Minerals found in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, coal, iron and many other metals that have contributed to the flourishing of the mining industry in the district. The sector's output in the district is mainly characterized by extraction with limited value addition and diversification.

Lephalale local municipality has been identified by the Limpopo economic growth and development plan as an energy cluster and has attained the status of national development node. The coalfields, which boast more than 40% of the total coal reserve of South Africa, are located in Lephalale. The coal resource in the Waterberg field is estimated at 76 billion tons, which is more than 40% of the national coal reserve. Minerals found in the district include chrome, platinum, nickel, tin, tungsten, coal, iron and many other metals that have contributed to the flourishing of the mining industry in the district.

The Waterberg One Plan's strategy on the mining sector is to focus on mining as the most important economic sector of Waterberg District Municipality. The Waterberg District mining sector has been operational for many years. Aside from the Thabazimbi iron ore mines, the region produces vast quantities of platinum at Mokopane and Northam areas. It's coalfield at Lephalale, fuels a major Eskom power station, but its remaining reserves of the black gold are largely untapped." And the beneficiation strategy which is linked to the mining sector seeks to unlock potential and ability to encourage growth and create jobs via strong backward linkages with the primary sector and input suppliers but also forward linkages related to income generated from mining and agriculture, forestry that may enhance domestic and local demand for manufactured goods."



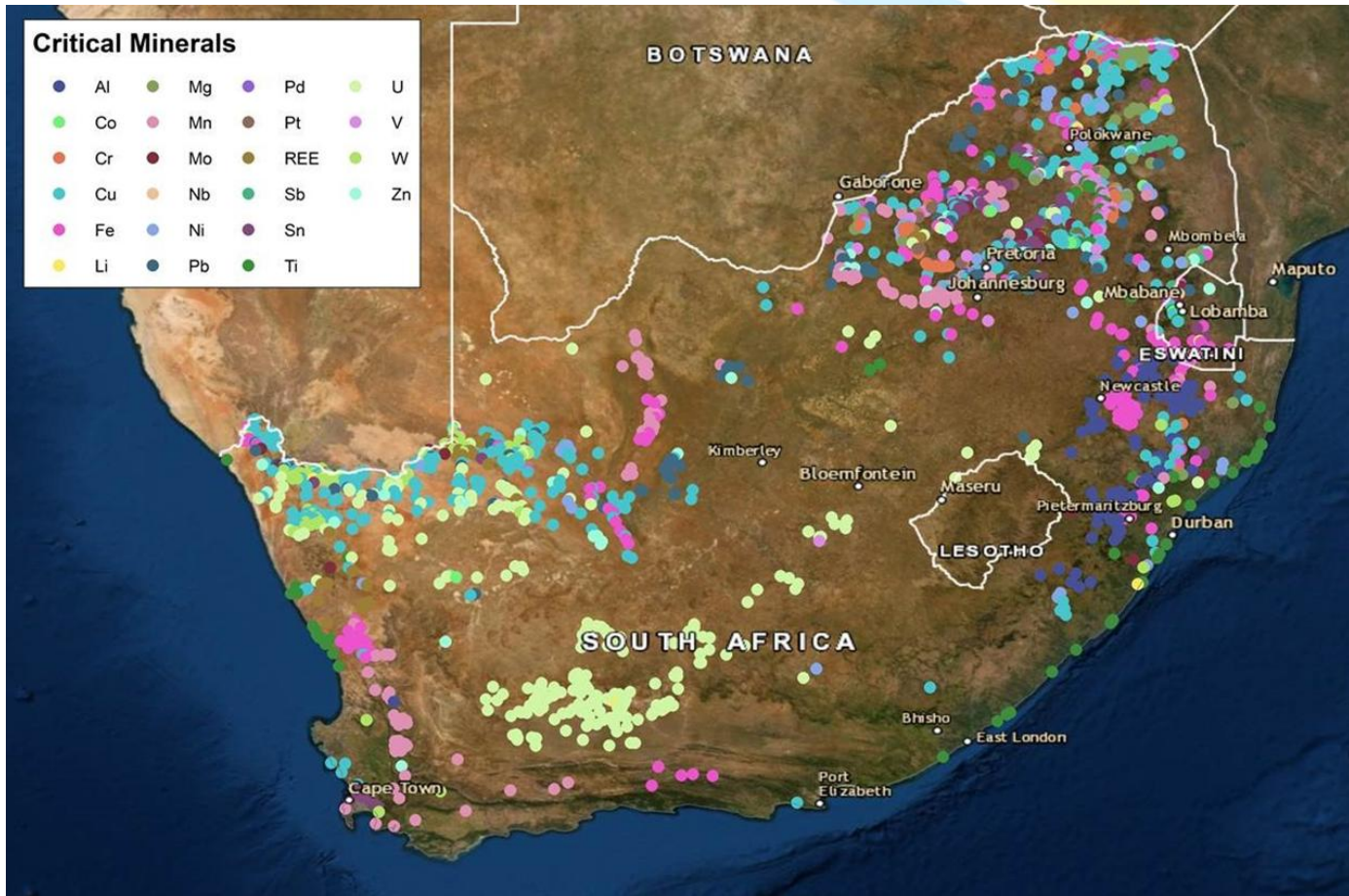
MAP 27: GEOGRAPHIC SPREAD MINES IN WATERBERG DISTRICT.



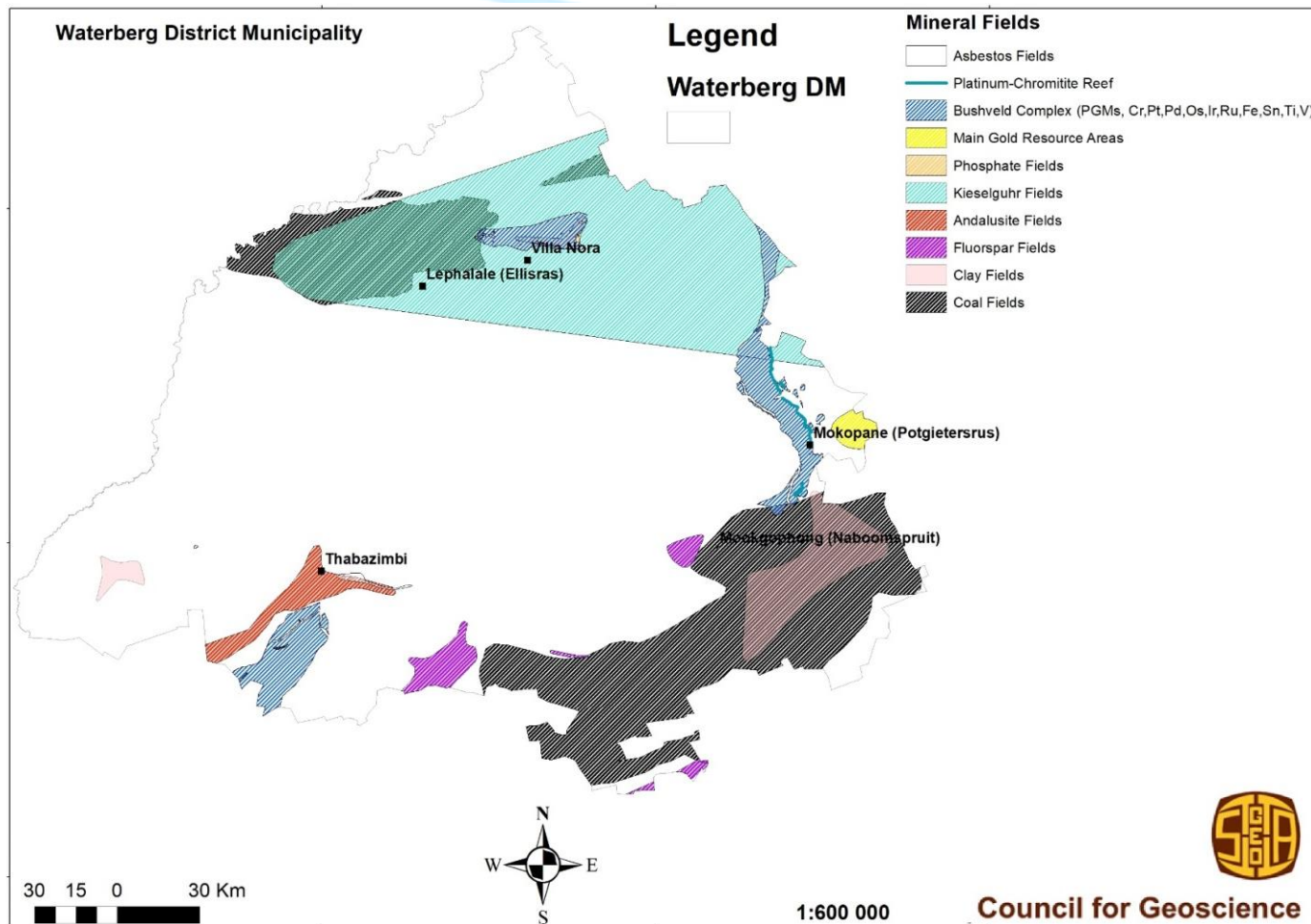
Future Developments

Waterberg mineral resources present a variety of future economic developments opportunities with broad potential contribution to industrialization, broader economic participation by Historically Disadvantaged Individuals and integrated community development.

MAP 28: **MINERALS OF THE FUTURE**



MAP 29: LITHIUM, COBALT, GRAPHITE, REE, SILVER, MOLYBDENUM, ALUMINIUM, COPPER, MANGANESE (SOURCE: COUNCIL FOR GEOSCIENCE)



Constraints

Lack of supportive rail infrastructure between Lephalale and Thabazimbi.

Infrastructure development projects (roads) often fail to take off due to PPP partners' inability to meet their commitment.

The major constraint is water use license.

The risk created by future mechanization in mining may drastically limit the effective participation of locals if skills development is not in line with mining modernization and the impacts of the Fourth Industrial Revolution. An integrated district-based skills development approach had been initiated with mines but needs to be broadened to include other sectors.

Strategic actions

The recent history of mining development in Limpopo has been marred by continuous conflicts mainly between the mining companies and communities especially in the Waterberg and Sekhukhune Districts. In 2011 the provincial government mandated the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism to develop and facilitate the Integrated Mining Development and Sustainability Framework that aimed at creating an inclusive economic growth amongst key stakeholders through creation of a mutually beneficial relationship by working together towards a common and shared vision. The implementation of this framework had since enhanced collaborative relationships between the government, mining companies and communities.

The government continues, through the Limpopo Mining Forum to facilitate collaboration with mines and communities with mines committing to implement developmental projects in three work streams: Business and Industrialization; Skills Development and Employment Creation; and Community Development.

4.4 AGRICULTURE

Waterberg is predominantly rural with fertile soil and a good climate, presenting a comparative advantage in the agricultural sector and value addition opportunities, which still needs to be realized to their full potential. The district is covered by large commercial agricultural land. The agricultural production area for the Waterberg District is 4.3 million hectares which is 38.51% of the provincial agricultural area. Waterberg has the biggest extent of agricultural area in Limpopo. Although named Waterberg, the district is actually classified as a semi-arid area with poor water resources.

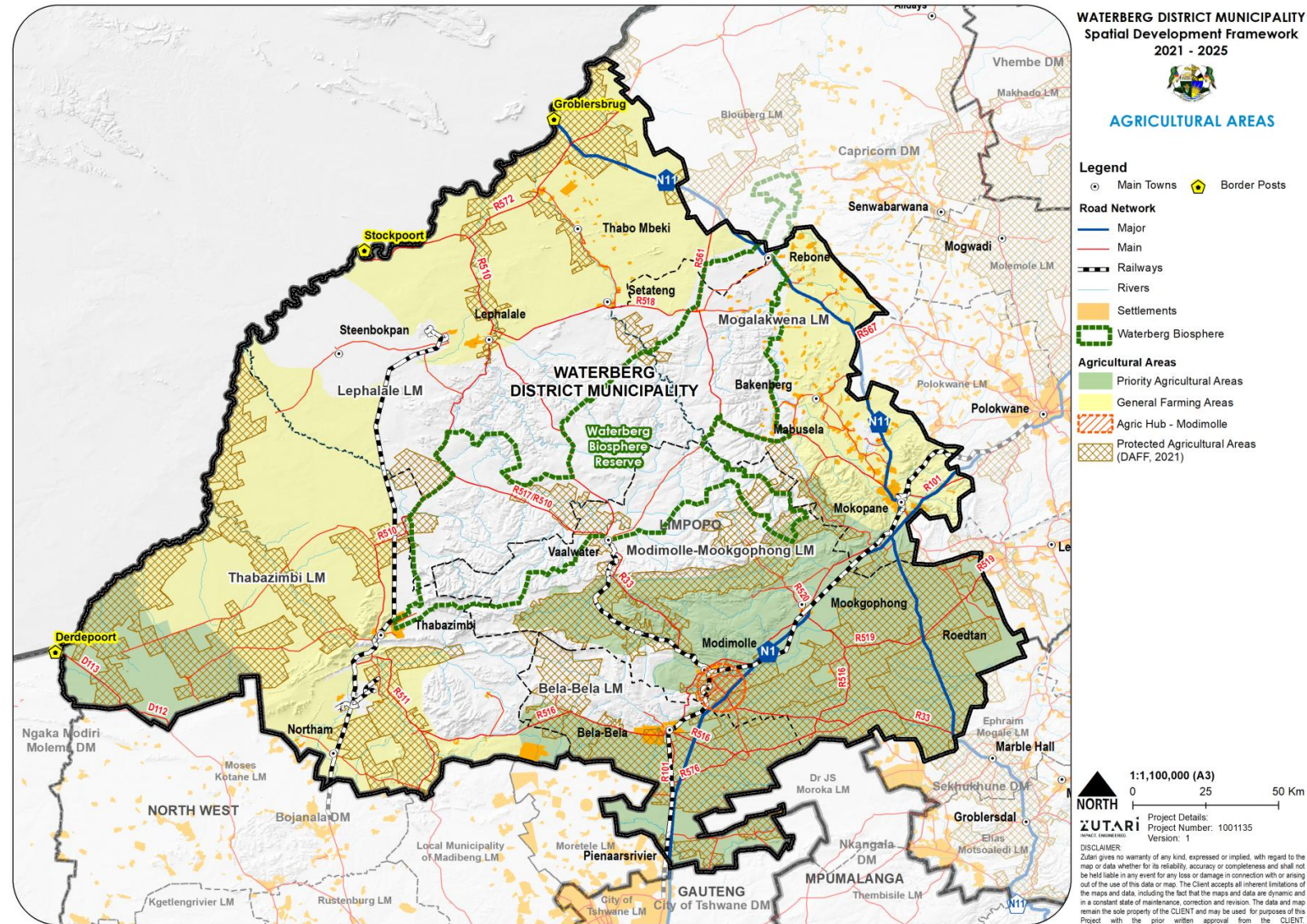
For crop farmers, there have been dramatic changes in many commodity prices leading to changes in cropping patterns. Crops such as cotton, tobacco, maize and sorghum have been badly affected by low international prices and over production and plantings have been reduced significantly, often with negative financial and employment implications. Alternative crops like sunflower, wheat, soya beans, groundnuts and paprika are all internationally traded commodities that are produced within the district and thus sensitive to the rand/dollar exchange rate.

Crop farming is dominant in the central parts especially towards the eastern parts of the Springbok Flats. The priority agricultural commodities in the district are cattle farming, maize crop farming and poultry farming. The spin-off commodities include meat production, production of feeds, eggs, animal hides processing. The total current agricultural production area for the Waterberg District is 4.3 million hectares. This translate to 38.51% of the provincial agricultural area. Commodities in Waterberg provide a base for growth of the sector in the district as well as an opportunity for value chain development and job creation. The land is mainly used for game ranching, grazing land for livestock, horticulture (vegetables) and field crops (Sunflower, Wheat, Maize and Sorghum).

Vegetable industry could be one of the largest contributors to job creation and improvement of livelihood if the potential demand in South Africa and SADC is considered. Waterberg has a fair share of vegetable production footprint though insignificant compared to other districts. From the map below, it is evident that there is scattered distribution of vegetable production in the district.

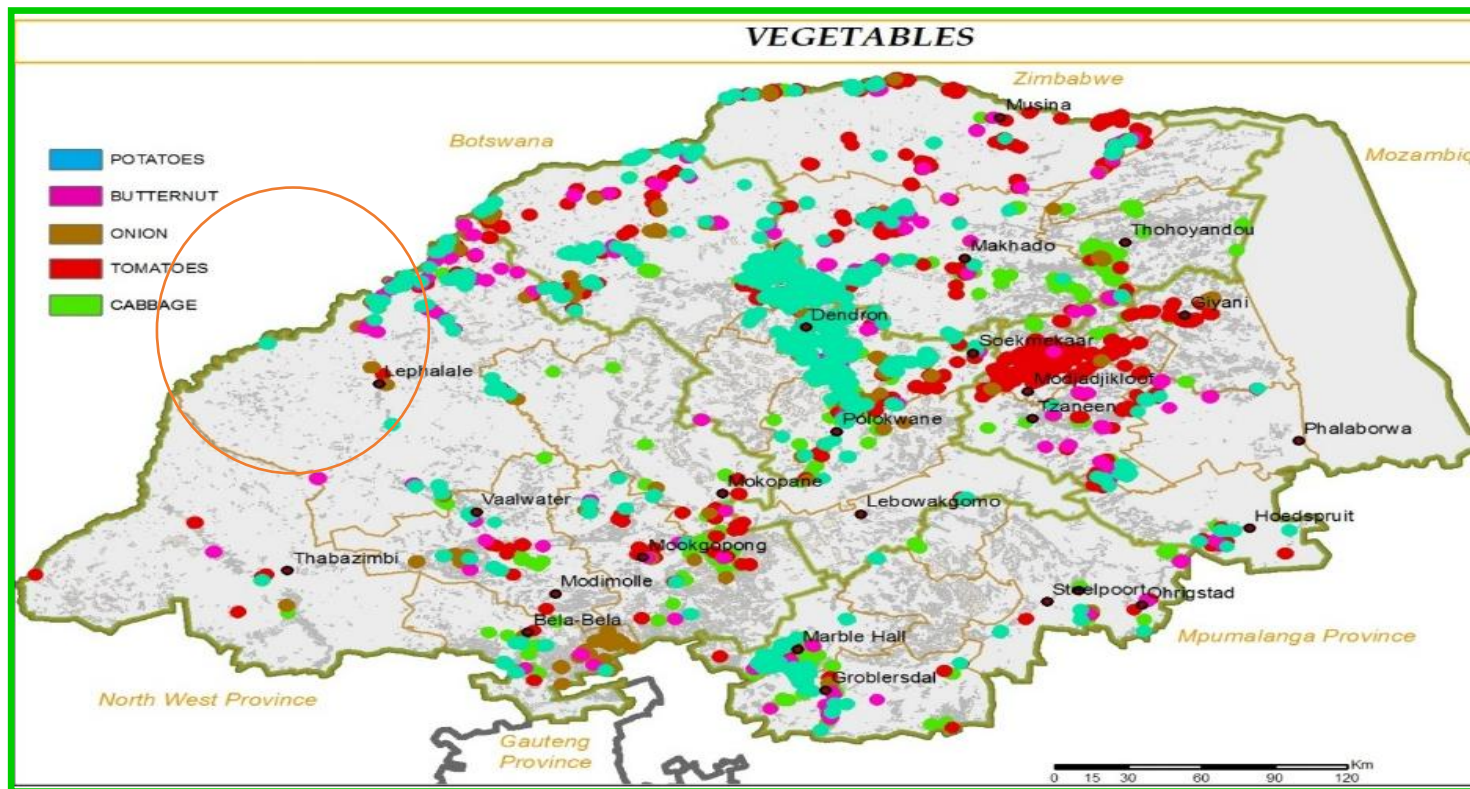


MAP 30: AGRICULTURE PRODUCTION AREA



MAP 31: PROTECTED AREAS

MAP 32: VEGETABLE PRODUCTION AREAS



Vegetables that are mainly produced in the area of Waterberg includes tomatoes, potatoes, cabbages and butternut. The district has a potential to increase the area under production in areas with suitable agro-climatic conditions.

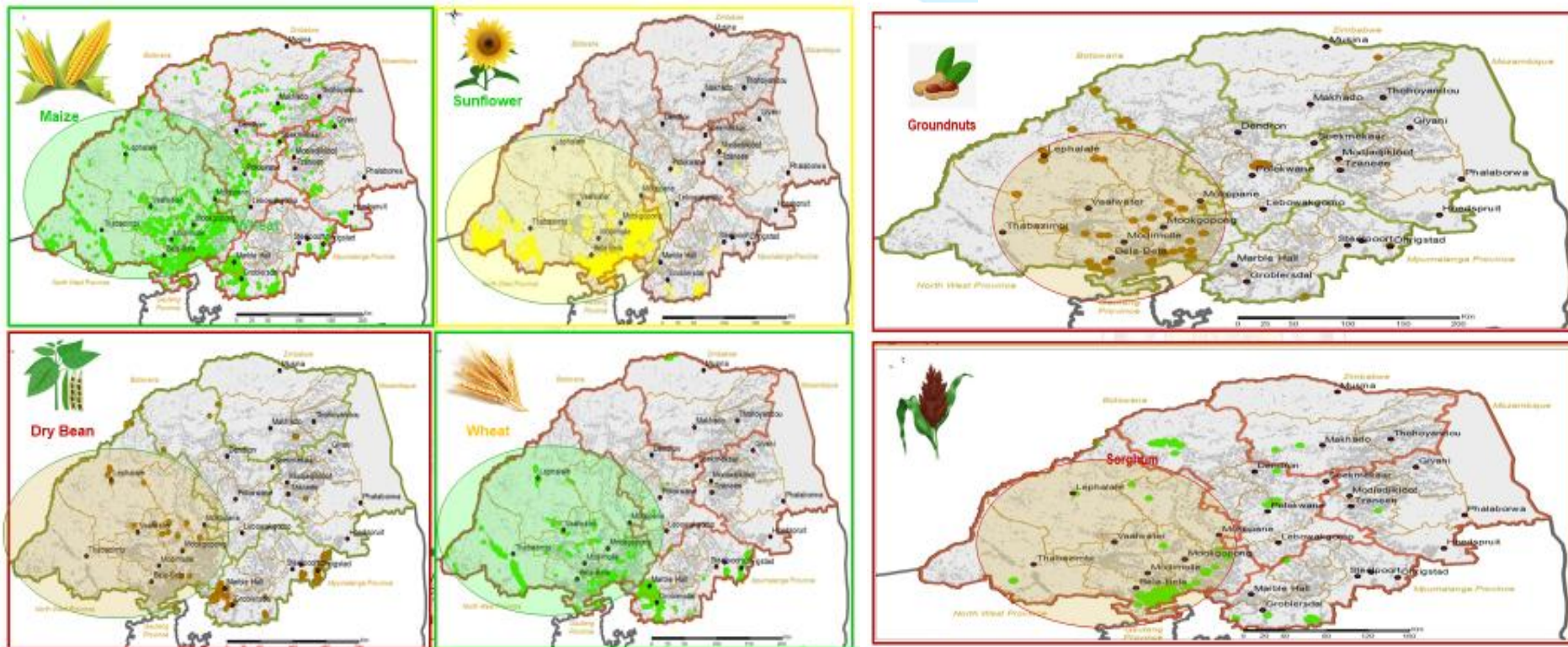
In the recent years, a growth in the adoption of climate smart agriculture systems where vegetables are produced under controlled environment such as tunnels. As part of farmer settlement support and recapitalization of land reform farms benefited from the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform with production infrastructure. Through intensive production system, there is potential to produce high value vegetable crops such as cucumbers, green peppers, herbs and baby vegetables for niche markets.



INTENSIVE FARMING PRODUCTION SYSTEM

GRAINS AND OILSEEDS PRODUCTION AREAS

Whilst Limpopo is highly competitive in fruits and vegetables, the province is an insignificant producer of grains and oilseeds however it has potential to its production given the existing agro-climatic limitations. Limpopo demand for grains and oilseeds products far outstrip the supply and the province mitigates its production shortfall through import from other provinces such as Free State and North-west. Generally, Limpopo climatic conditions are not conducive to produce enough grains under rain fed conditions. Most of the production of major crops such as Maize, Sunflower, Wheat and Grain sorghum are concentrated in Waterberg and Sekhukhune District with relatively higher rainfall than other districts. The production maps below illustrate production areas for grain and oilseeds.



MAP 33: GRAIN AND OILSEEDS PRODUCTION AREAS (LEFT) **MAP 34:** GROUNDNUTS AND SORGHUM PRODUCTION AREAS (RIGHT)

TABLE 99: SUMMARY OF GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION OF CROP PRODUCTION

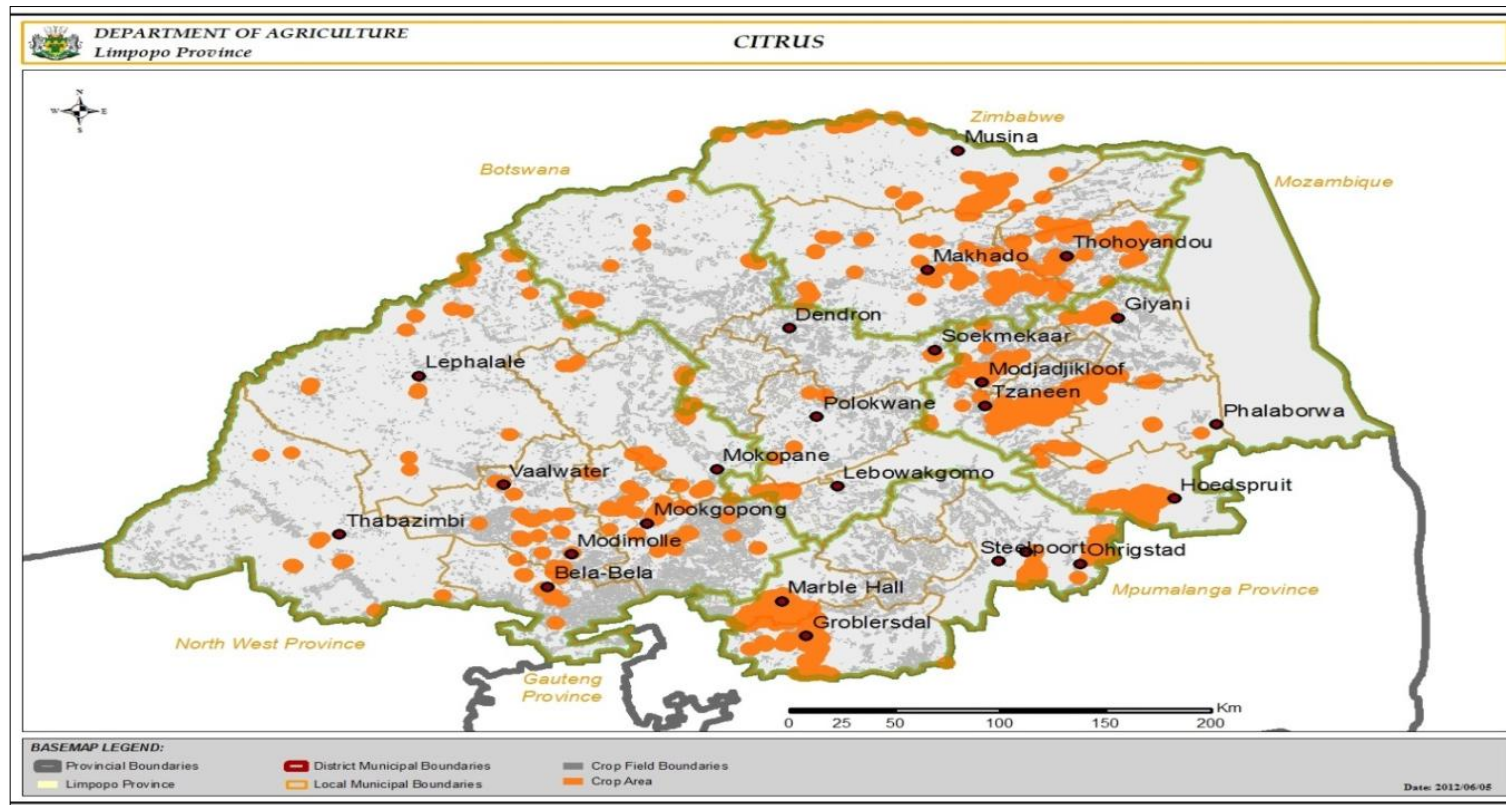
Crop	Area
Maize	Bela Bela, Modimolle and Mookgopong
Dry Bean	Bela Bela, Lephalale and Vaalwater
Sunflower	Bela Bela, Modimolle, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong
Wheat	Bela Bela, Vaalwater, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong
Sorghum	Bela Bela and Mookgopong
Groundnuts	Bela Bela, Modimolle, Thabazimbi and Mookgopong

CITRUS

Waterberg few citrus production enterprises in the Bela Bela, Mookgopong and Mogalakwena. Through revitalisation of Agriculture in land reform farms, there is potential to expand citrus production in existing citrus enterprises and in surrounding areas with suitable climatic conditions.



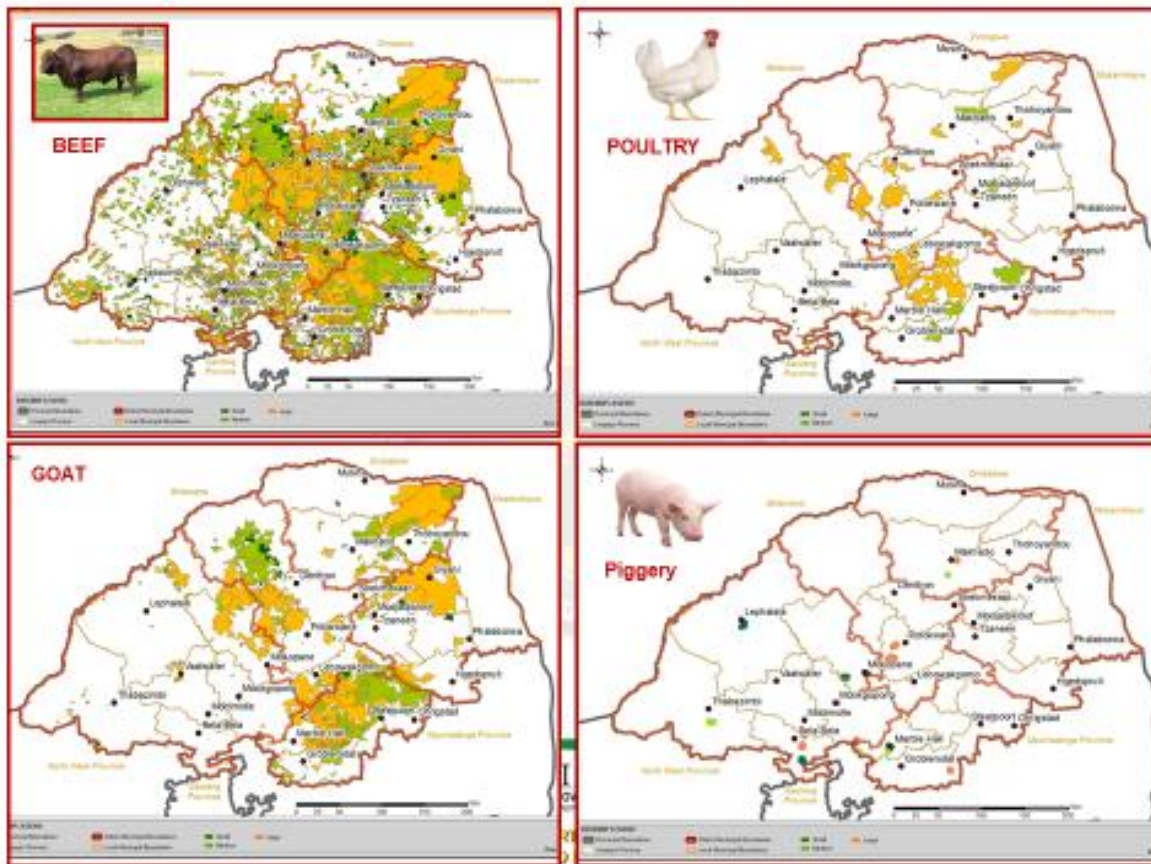
MAP 35: CITRUS PRODUCTION AREAS



RED MEAT

Beef production is one of the thriving industries in the areas of Waterberg owing to its grazing capacity and being outside the foot and mouth disease area. The district has medium to large scale livestock production enterprises in the area of Bela Bela, Modimolle-Mookgopong and Mogalakwena. There is also potential for production of white meat such as poultry, piggery and goat.

FIGURE 22: RED AND WHITE MEAT PRODUCTION AREAS

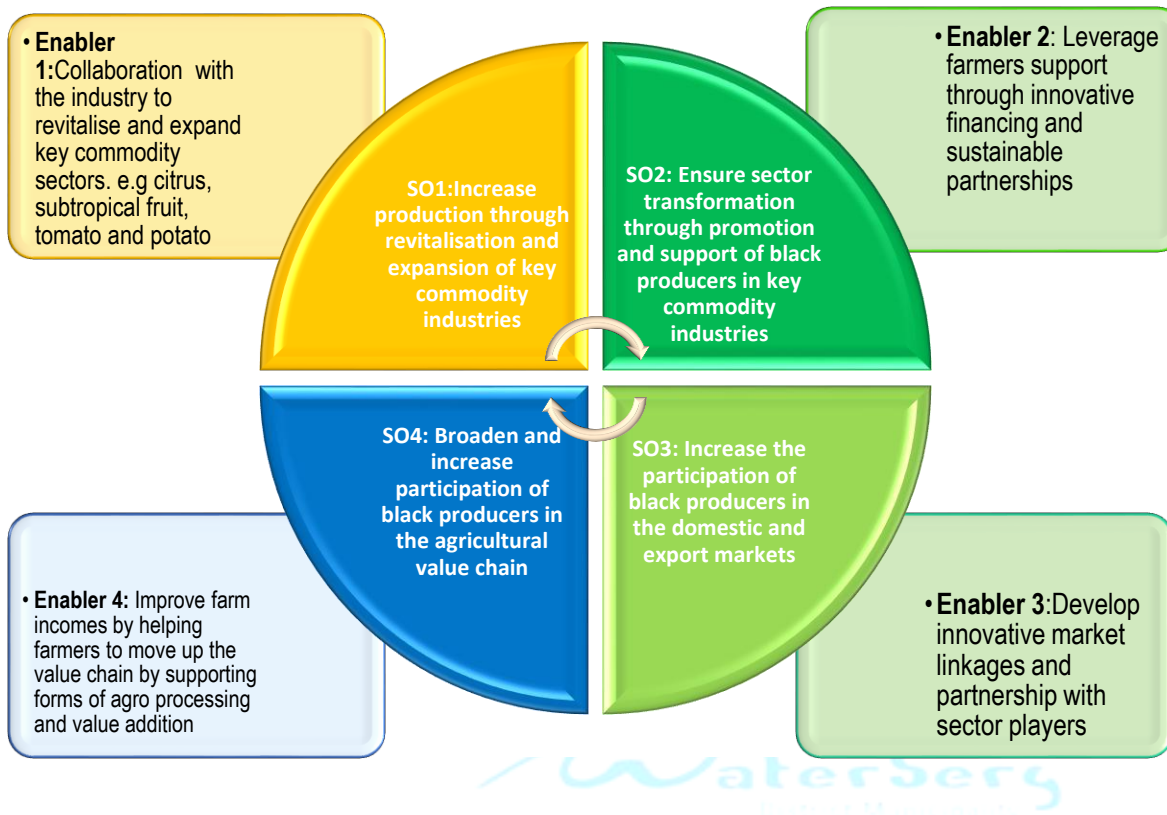


Waterberg
District Municipality

Key Programmes/Strategic Intervention

Agriculture continues to take centre stage as one of the key strategic economic sectors that can promote economic transformation, propel labour intensive growth and create a globally competitive economy. The sector focus is no longer about food security and rural livelihood to address social policy question but to position it as a major contributor to the provincial economy. The National Development Plan as a development blueprint of the country identified agriculture as a key economic stimulant. The NDP postulates certain agricultural commodities and subsectors as key winning areas where expansion in production and further value addition are sustainable in the long term. Government has conceptualised Revitalisation of Agriculture and Agro-processing Value Chains (RAAVC) plan as an intervention towards the realisation of NDP goals. Contained in the RAAVC plan are key strategic areas of intervention:

CHART 3: KEY AGRICULTURAL ENABLERS



Development of Grains and Oilseed Value Chain

There is an opportunity to commercialise oil seeds production linked with processing. In order to realise this, there is a need to increase:

Participation of black producers in grain sorghum production
Support to subsistence maize production for rural HH food security
Development of Rural Grain Milling Cooperatives linked with rural maize production.

Development of Red Meat Value Chain

South Africa does not produce enough beef for the domestic market. The number of cattle slaughtered has increased over the years due to development and accessibility to abattoirs but even with the increase in production, local demand is still not met. Red meat abattoirs are scattered throughout the province, with high concentration of red meat in the Vhembe and Mopani district.

Waterberg District has an opportunity to develop the red meat cluster through increased production, abattoir linkages with feedlots increasing vertically integrated business in the beef industry. In feedlot industry large feedlots own their own abattoirs and sell directly to consumers through their retail outlets or wholesale level. The department of Agriculture therefore should therefore expand red meat value chain aligned to the following existing projects:

- Immerpan Red Meat Development
- Modimolle Red Meat Development
- Mogalakwena Red Meat Development

The Department of Agriculture, Land Reform & Rural Development is investing in the sector to grow and sustain the Red Meat Cluster in the Waterberg District, the department is constructing Farmer Production Support Units (FPSUs) in the district as part the Agri-Park programme to support the red meat value chain. The department is working towards completion of the Witpoort FPSU. The FPSUs are meant to provide technical support for the local farmers in the identified areas. The long term plan is to have FPSUs in all the five local municipalities.



4.5 TOURISM

Waterberg's tourism competitive advantage is based on its unique rich biodiversity, cultural and heritage resource base. With an abundance of game reserves and more than ten provincial nature reserves, wildlife and eco-tourism can be flagged as the strength proposition of Waterberg. The district holds a critical position in the wildlife industry, with expanded value chain opportunities, the district should leverage on the industry's spin-offs. An area to note is the continuous growth in hunting. It is estimated that about 51% of the Limpopo wildlife ranching industry takes part in the eco-tourism sub-sector.

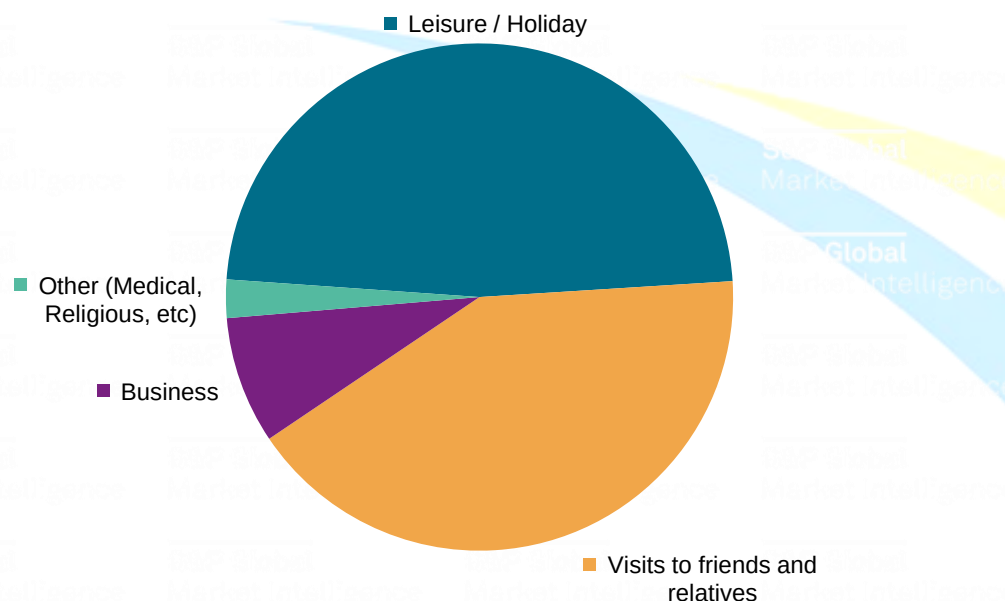
Waterberg hosts some of internationally significant attractions such as the Makapan's Valley World Heritage Site, Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, Marakele National Park, Hot Springs, Nylsvley Wetland (Ramsar Site), Limpopo Golf & Safari Route, this are some of the draw cards which presents more tourism opportunities: Tour operations , Business Tourism , Theme parks/recreational facilities , Dam Tourism, Heritage Sites profiling , Wildlife Industry , Linking tourism with agriculture, mining and supply These opportunities have the potential to boost the current tourism product supply, if enhanced and marketed well they can provide a mix of attractions and activities attracting the maximum number of tourists to the area resulting in strong economic base and increased job opportunities. There is also an opportunity in event tourism to attract a new market segment, (Reviving the Bela Bela Carnival, getting Thabazimbi Adrenalin Festival off the ground, and other potential draw cards events.

The One Plan's tourism development strategy's purpose is to expand and intensify the district tourism sector by leveraging of a number of key competitive advantages of the District. These competitive advantages include Unique eco-tourism attractions including bushveld landscapes, rich biodiversity, culture and heritage attributes; Waterberg Biosphere as a recognised UNESCO world heritage site which is part of the Biosphere Reserve programme; Proximity to major conurbations with high population numbers and spending power; Accessibility via a comprehensive National and Provincial road network; Proximity enabling short-stay tourism for domestic tourism; High concentration of game farming and wildlife management facilities; established wildlife hunting industry, and; Agri-tourism and mining-tourism opportunities.

In Waterberg District Municipality, the Leisure / Holiday, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest average annual growth rate from 2014 (343 000) to 2024 (558 000) at 5.00%. The type of tourism with the highest volume of tourists was also the Leisure / Holiday tourism with a total number of 558 000 annual tourist and had an average annual growth rate of 5.00%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Other (Medical, Religious, etc) tourism with an average annual growth rate of -6.17% from 2014 (53 800) to 2024 (28 400). The Leisure / Holiday at 47.89% has largest share the total tourism within Waterberg District Municipality. Visits to friends and relatives tourism had the second highest share at 41.56%, followed by Business tourism at 8.11% and the Other (Medical, Religious, etc.) tourism with the smallest share of 2.44% of the total tourism within Waterberg District Municipality.



CHART 4: TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIP - WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2024 [PERCENTAGE]



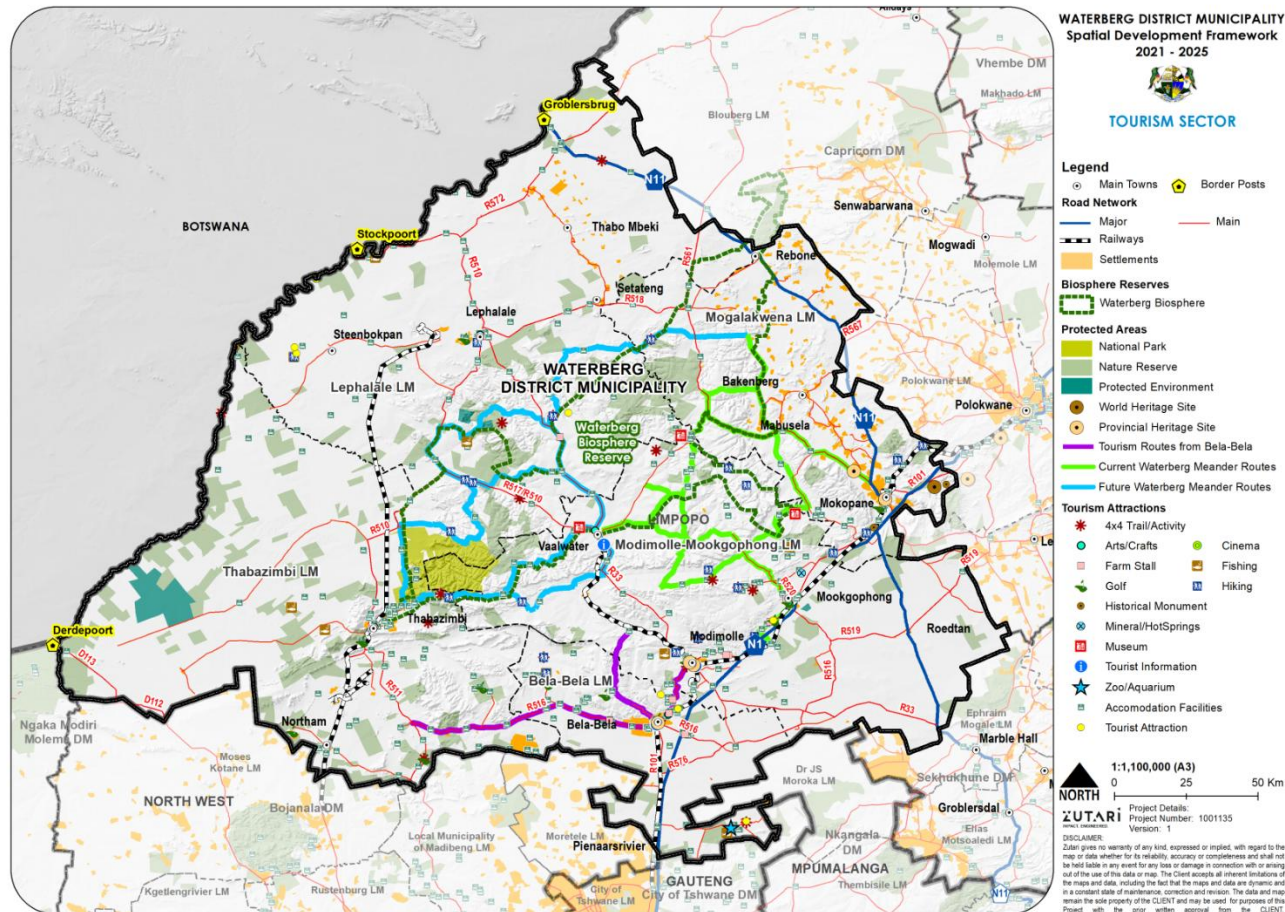
4.6 WATERBERG BIODIVERSITY

South Africa is the third most bio-diverse country in the world. *The National Biodiversity Economy Strategy* (NBES) of 2017 (reviewed in 2022) was developed to guide sustainable growth and development of sustainable economic opportunities in the wildlife, bio-prospecting and ecotourism segments. Limpopo has been identified as an area with the highest number of potential species with some economic value. The Waterberg Biodiversity Region in particular, prides itself on natural endowments, specifically the flora and landscapes. This translates into a potential opportunity for eco-tourism related products. Product development opportunities in Waterberg include establishment of botanical gardens, interactive biodiversity centres, bio-prospecting which may include medicinal drugs, biochemicals, and other commercially valuable material.

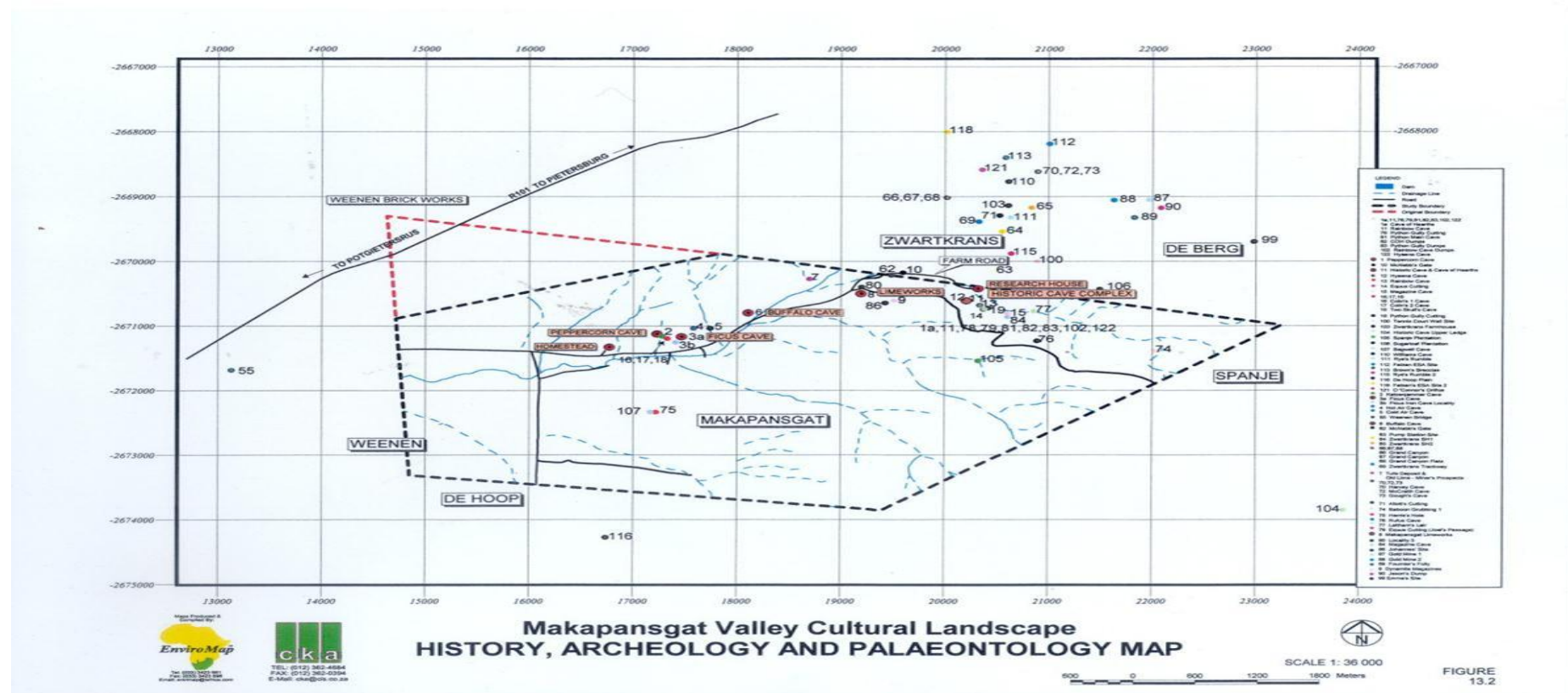
New developments in the biodiversity sector include the development of Thlagong Biodiversity Learning Centre in Rantlakane village in the Mogalakwena Local Municipality. The PPGI has brought together various stakeholders who are volunteering their services and resources to support the building of a biodiversity centre. The Lapalala Wilderness School, Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, the district municipality working the Universities of Ljubljana (Slovenia) and the University of Pretoria and various built environment professionals. The Thlagong Biodiversity Learning Centre will be an interactive centre aimed at teaching and empowering the host community and other adjacent communities with the knowledge of preserving, and benefiting from biodiversity. The

Department of Tourism has developed a biodiversity concept documents with a specific focus on a botanic garden. The Waterberg Biosphere Reserve is pursuing the process of expanding the reserve from a 662 059 hectares to 2 548 163 hectares for national and UNESCO's consideration, amongst other programmes.

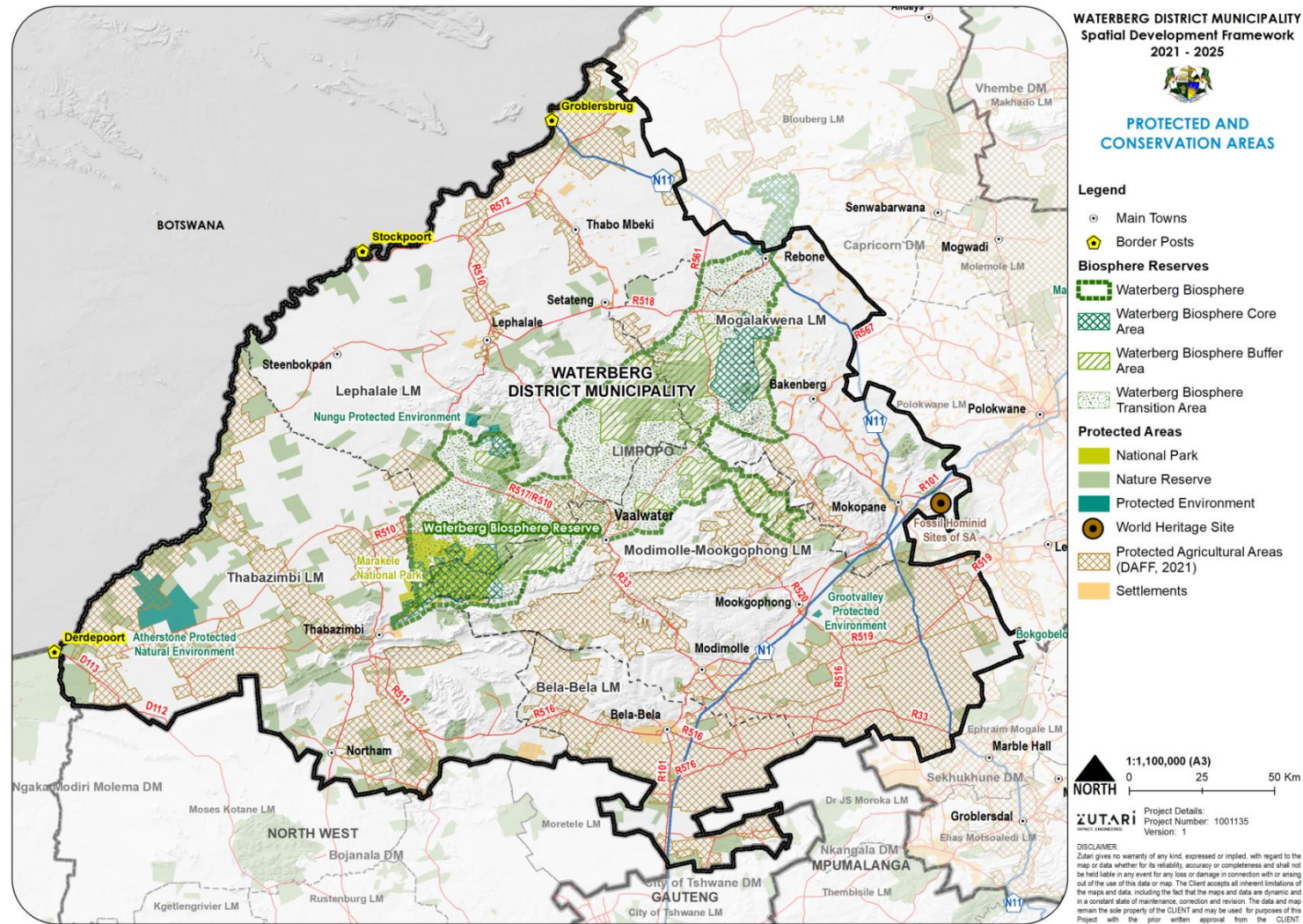
TOURISM SECTOR MAP



MAP 36: MAKAPAN VALLEY CULTURAL LANDSCAPE



MAP 37: WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (2021-2025), WITH A FOCUS ON PROTECTED/CONSERVATION AREAS AND WATERBERG BIOSPHERE RESERVE



4.7 SKILLS OF THE ECONOMY

Education and skills is important to the economic growth of the District and the development of its industries, producing a trained workforce and skilled professionals aligned to the district economic demand is of utmost importance.

Within Waterberg District Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2014 to 2024 with an average annual rate of -8.22%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 97,000 to 126,000. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 3.71%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 2.84%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education. (Source: South Africa Regional eXplorer v2650)

The Waterberg District Municipality 2026/2027 strategic planning session resolved to establish a District Skills Forum, with the aim of developing strategies and interventions responding to the current and future skills demand of the district economy. The forum brought together like-minded organisations, businesses, and government to collaborate on skills development programmes with the objective of addressing skills of the economy shortage and providing easier access to employment and enterprise development opportunities in different sectors of the economy.

The establishment of the Waterberg Skills Forum (WSF) responds to the goals of The District Development Model (DDM), which aims to improve service delivery and economic development by fostering collaborative planning and implementation across different government spheres. A key aspect of the DDM is its focus on addressing the challenges of poverty, unemployment, and inequality, including the development of a workforce with the skills needed for economic growth.

The objectives of the forum include:

- Skills supply and sources assessment in the district,
- Economic skills demand assessment
- Make an assessment of skills inputs in the district and local municipalities, including primary, secondary and high school
- Establish mechanisms for closing the skills gaps identified, per industry or sector of the economy
- Development of a curriculum addressing skills needs in the district, known as "skills of the economy"
- Collaborate and engage stakeholders, at local, national and international level, aiming at exchanging ideas and resources to close the skills gap
- Collaborate and engage both public and private education (skills) providers to ensure provision of specific skills, responding to the demand of the economy.

Progress to date include the 2025 Skills Supply and Demand Assessment for Circular Economy in the District, conducted in collaboration with the International Labour Organisation (ILO). The forum is seeking other collaboration partners to conduct assessments for the other economic sectors district wide.

Through the Limpopo Mining Forum engagements, mines agreed on a 'District-based' skills development approach wherein they will collaborate to implement integrated skills development projects. Other sectors of the economy are been drawn into this approach in order to share facility development costs and have an integrated impact. Mines have further committed to support technical schools in order to improve the legibility of local learners to enter technical vocations. Success stories of improved technical schools are emerging with support of mines such as: Thekganang Technical Secondary in Northam, Mabalane Seleka Technical school in Lephalale, and Phaladingwe Technical High in Mapela village, Mogalakwena municipality.

4.8 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT INTERVENTIONS UNDERWAY

❖ The Waterberg District Investment Advisory Committee

The Waterberg District Municipality has established the District Investment Advisory Committee, which is intended to provide independent technical and strategic advice to Waterberg District Municipality on priority catalytic investment projects. The Committee will support the Municipality in strengthening investment mobilisation, project preparation, and infrastructure development in order to promote:

- Economic growth and diversification, Job creation and local economic development
- Industrial development
- Agricultural value chain expansion
- Renewable energy transition
- Digital infrastructure development

Some of **the catalytic projects** the advisory committee will be focusing on include:

1. Solar Energy Development

- Utility-scale solar power generation
- Renewable energy infrastructure
- Battery energy storage systems
- Independent Power Producer (IPP) partnerships

2. Modular Housing and Construction Manufacturing

- Prefabricated housing technologies
- Rapid infrastructure delivery systems
- Construction materials manufacturing

- Affordable housing innovation
- 3. Industrial Manufacturing Development**
 - Industrial parks and manufacturing clusters
 - Localised production and supply chains
 - Engineering and fabrication industries
 - Industrial beneficiation opportunities
- 4. Data Centre Infrastructure Development**
 - Hyperscale and enterprise data centres
 - Digital infrastructure investment
 - Renewable-powered digital infrastructure
 - ICT and digital economy development
- 5. Smart Street Lighting Infrastructure**
 - Solar-powered and LED street lighting
 - Smart city infrastructure systems
 - Energy-efficient municipal infrastructure
 - Urban safety and lighting optimisation
- 6. Agro-Processing Value Chain Development**
 - Agricultural processing facilities
 - Food manufacturing and packaging industries
 - Agricultural logistics and storage infrastructure and Farmer integration and agro-SMME development

❖ **The proposed South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) Strategic Catalytic Investment**

STRATEGIC CATALYTIC INITIATIVE: SABC FILM STUDIO PARTNERSHIP

The Waterberg District Municipality (WDM), in partnership with the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) and key stakeholders, is advancing a transformative catalytic project aimed at positioning the district as a sustainable hub for film and television production. This initiative was endorsed during the strategic planning session and is aligned with the municipality's economic growth and job creation objectives.

At the core of the programme is the establishment of a film studio and production infrastructure, anchored by the development of a long-running daily drama series. The project represents a combined investment exceeding R360 million over three years, leveraging municipal participation to attract significant external funding. This model is expected to unlock downstream economic activity through procurement, infrastructure development, and strengthened local value chains.

Key Actions

Stakeholder plenary with DTIC: Develop a comprehensive business case to secure investment. (Short-term)

Identify land/infrastructure sites: Allocate suitable locations for studio development. (Medium-term)

Collaborate with Limpopo Tourism Agency: Leverage productions to promote tourism. (Medium-term)

Encourage local participation: Facilitate training, mentorship, and creative opportunities for youth, women, and artists. (Long-term)

Stakeholders

SABC, DTIC, Limpopo Tourism Agency (LTA)

WDM and its local Municipalities CFOs, LED Managers, and other social partners

Coordinated by the Director: PED

Expected Outcomes

Job creation: 200–250 employment opportunities annually, prioritizing youth empowerment.

Skills development: Accredited training, internships, and mentorship programmes to build a locally skilled workforce.

Tourism promotion: National broadcast exposure showcasing Waterberg's natural assets, heritage sites, and destinations.

Economic diversification: Strengthening MSME participation, construction, hospitality, transport, and creative industries.

Cultural preservation: Embedding local heritage and identity within productions.

Legacy Impact

Over the medium to long term, the initiative will establish permanent creative infrastructure, stimulate inclusive growth, and diversify the district's economic base. By anchoring a flagship creative industry project, WDM will enhance social development outcomes, empower local communities, and position itself as a competitive player in the national and international creative economy.

❖ Green Hydrogen Strategy

The District Municipality in collaboration with SALGA, and the German Development Cooperation (GIZ) participate in the Connective Cities Working Group. The connective cities working group is an international community for practice of sustainable urban development, established and facilitated by the German Development Cooperation (GIZ) Sub Saharan Africa. The working group promotes exchanges aimed at the co-creation of locally adapted solutions and plans to optimize on hydrogen opportunities for local economic development in the respective municipal territories. The focus is mainly on good practice examples or other pragmatic approaches that can be applied and/or adapted to different regional contexts. Waterberg District Municipality's green hydrogen proposed practical actions include:

- Technical Capacity Building
- Green Hydrogen Feasibility Study / Strategy
- A living lab – a green hydrogen mine haul truck testing lab in Waterberg

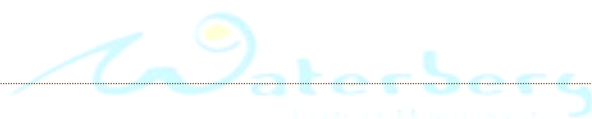
4.9 LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

Challenges	Possible Solutions
Poor & deteriorating economic infrastructure threatens retention & attraction of new investments	Economic infrastructure investment prioritisation. Development of wall-to-wall implementable infrastructure master plans that can be utilised for medium to long term infrastructure planning.
Scattered enterprise development support services	Development of a District Enterprise Development Support One-stop-centre
Too many regulatory compliance requirements by different government institutions,	Reasonable reduction of business regulatory red tape
Unemployment and structural inequality	Creation of decent employment through inclusive economic growth, economic diversification, sustainable livelihoods programmes, MSME development
Limited economic diversification (high dependency on the mining sector, contributing over 50% to the district GVA)	Local beneficiation, value addition, development of new industries, i.e. circular economy, renewable energy, industrial corridors
Lack of localised economic data	STATS-SA to provide localised economic data to enhance data-driven decision making



PROPOSED CATALYTIC PROJECTS

Project Theme	Focus Area	Strategic Impact
Solar Energy Development	Utility-scale solar, battery storage, IPP partnerships	Clean energy, reduced emissions
Modular Housing & Construction	Prefabricated housing, rapid delivery, affordable housing	Faster housing rollout, innovation
Industrial Manufacturing	Parks & clusters, localized supply chains, beneficiation	Job creation, industrial growth
Data Centre Infrastructure	Hyper scale centres, renewable-powered ICT	Digital economy, investment attraction
Smart Street Lighting	Solar LED lighting, smart city systems	Energy savings, urban safety
Agro-Processing Value Chain	Processing facilities, logistics, farmer integration	Food security, agro-SMME growth
SABC & WDM: Creative Industries & Digital Economy Development	Economic Growth, Social Development, Tourism & Branding	Anchors creative industry hub Waterberg Investment: R30m per annum for 3 years (R90m total) SABC Investment: R90m per annum for 3 years (R270m total)



CHAPTER 5 – FINANCIAL ANALYSIS

Financial management and viability of a municipality is core to the development of communities in a sustainable manner by providing municipal services. Within the Waterberg District financial management and viability of municipalities is fair with some challenges that must be addressed to accelerate service delivery.

5.1 REVENUE MANAGEMENT & BILLING

With powers and functions allocated to local municipalities for providing basic services such as water and sanitation, electricity and refuse removal, there are sources of revenue for local municipalities. All municipalities are generating revenue from water, electricity and property rates. It is important to note that revenue is mostly generated from towns and townships with limitations in the rural areas.

The implementation of property rates is still an inadequately tapped revenue source. The implementing MPRA is coupled by the following challenges:

Limited collection in rural areas where the custodianship of land is in the ownership of traditional leaders.

Limited collection in farming areas which are representative of more than 60% of the District area.

A large amount of debtors of municipalities is other spheres of government especially the Provincial Sphere of government.

The district municipality has limited possibilities for revenue due to reduced powers and functions and therefore we are fully dependent on national grants. Currently the District municipality relies on the following grants – EquiTable Share, Finance Management Grant, Municipal Systems Improvement Grant, EPWP Incentive Grant and Rural Road Asset Management Grant - to execute its powers and functions. A very small portion of our revenue is attributable to interest received on investments, abattoir income and other income. The district municipality developed a donor funding strategy and appointed a donor funder for the whole district area but this was unsuccessful in prior years.

The district municipality does not have a billing system as we are not a service authority and therefore only have minor billings on abattoir slaughtering accounts. Munsoft Integrated Financial System implemented at Waterberg District Municipality, Modimolle Local Municipality, Bela Bela Local Municipality and Thabazimbi Local Municipality does however have a functional billing system.

5.2 EXPENDITURE & CASHFLOW MANAGEMENT

The equiTable share formula has been reviewed, but has not been beneficial to WDM for the coming medium term. Our cash flows are increasing by less than our fixed operating expenditure is increasing, mostly due to personnel related expenditure increasing by more than inflation. This has necessitated restrained expenditure to ensure that cash outflows remain within the affordability parameters of the municipality's finances. Waterberg District Municipality thus has to implement increased austerity measures in the 21/22 IDP and Budget due to the current revenue resources becoming insufficient to fully fund the operational requirements of the municipality. The equiTable share is no longer sufficient to fund the operating expenditure of the municipality.

The shortfalls in every year on the operating budget are funded from the opening balance accumulated surplus but these funds are also being rapidly depleted. This is a major cause for concern as the indication is that we will continuously be short on the budget in future as our revenue is fixed per grants and majority of our operating expenditure is salary related which often increases by more than the CPI or relevant equity share percentage increase. The accumulated surpluses from previous years would, as per the state of affairs currently, only be able to fund the annual operating shortfalls for this new MTREF, after which surpluses will also be depleted. This will also have a detrimental effect on the IDP as surpluses which were previously allocated to the IDP will now have to be used to fund operating shortfalls, thereby decreasing the IDP amount for projects significantly.

Property, plant and equipment is utilised to render services and for administrative support. WDM does not have infrastructure assets as we do not provide basic services other than Environmental Health and Disaster Management. The only revenue-generating asset of WDM is the Abattoir, but which is currently running at an operating loss. Surplus funds are invested in banking institutions for periods ranging from call accounts up to 6 months with the majority being invested in 60 or 90 day investments.

5.3 FINANCIAL REPORT

- Section 17 (1) of the MFMA requires that the annual budget of the municipality must be in the prescribed format as follows:
- Setting out realistically anticipated revenue for the budget year from each revenue source.
- Appropriating expenditure for the budget year under the different votes of the municipality.
- Setting out indicative revenue per revenue source and projected expenditure by vote for the two financial years following the budget year.
- Setting out the estimated revenue and expenditure by vote for the current year and actual revenue and expenditure by vote for the financial year.
- Waterberg District Municipality is tabling an operating revenue of R171 million and increases to R180 million in 2026/27 financial year. The revenue represents an increase of 4% against the 2024/25 adjustment budget.
- The operating expenditure amounts to R204 million, a increase of 5% against the 2024/25 adjustment budget, resulting in a deficit of R33 million for the 2025/26 financial year.

The Table below indicates the high-level consolidated 2025/26-2028 Medium-term Revenue and Expenditure Framework.



TABLE 100: **CONSOLIDATED BUDGET SUMMARY**

Choose name from list - Supporting Table SA10 Funding measurement

Description	MFMA section	Ref	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24	Current Year 2024/25				2025/26 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
			Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2025/26	Budget Year +1 2026/27	Budget Year +2 2027/28
High Level Outcome of Funding Compliance												
Total Operating Revenue			147 732	154 660	159 434	165 077	165 077	165 077	165 077	171 662	180 095	188 267
Total Operating Expenditure			172 477	172 067	174 070	196 175	196 095	196 095	196 095	204 666	212 951	223 318
Surplus/(Deficit) Budgeted Operating Statement			(24 745)	(17 407)	(14 636)	(31 099)	(31 019)	(31 019)	(31 019)	(33 004)	(32 856)	(35 051)
Surplus/(Deficit) Considering Reserves and Cash Backing			134 487	255 096	379 082	(31 799)	(31 799)	(31 799)	(500 382)	(75 702)	(108 708)	(143 909)
MTREF Funded (1) / Unfunded (0)		15	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
MTREF Funded ✓ / Unfunded ✖		15	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü	ü

References

- The following key components are central to the Municipality revenue
- National Treasury's guidelines and macroeconomic policy;
- Growth in the municipal economic development;
- The rate of abattoir revenue collection is currently expressed as a 100% of annual billings. Cash flow is assumed to be 100% of billings, due to the majority of clients being cash clients, plus no provision for doubtful debt as old disputes have been written off and there are currently no new disputes or long outstanding debts;
- Determination of tariff escalation rate;
- The WDM revenue enhancement strategy; and
- Increased ability to render new service, Air Quality licensing



TABLE 101: **FINANCIAL POLICIES, STRATEGIES & SYSTEMS**

SYSTEM/POLICY/STRATEGY	AVAILABILITY (YES/NO)
Asset management policy	YES
Credit control & debt collection policy	YES
Supply chain management policy	YES
Banking & Investment policy	YES
Petty cash policy	YES
Virement policy	YES
Catering policy	YES
Tariff policy	N/A
Indigent policy	N/A
Rates policy	N/A

Waterberg District Municipality does not have a Tariff Policy or Indigent Policy or Rates Policy as we are not a basic service authority and therefore have no billings. The immaterial tariffs we do have related to the Abattoir and Fire Fighting Services. All other policies listed above are reviewed annually, complies with relevant legislation and are implemented effectively.



TABLE 102: **CONSOLIDATED OVERVIEW OF THE 2024/25-27 MTREF**

Description	2020/ 21	2021/ 22	2022/ 23	Current Year 2023/24				2024/25 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Pre-audit outcome	Budget Year 2024/25	Budget Year +1 2025/26	Budget Year +2 2026/27
High Level Outcome of Funding Compliance										
Total Operating Revenue	151 289	148 006	154 937	159 512	160 234	160 234	160 234	165 077	167 289	169 788
Total Operating Expenditure								196 175	202 948	212 282
(Deficit) Budget Operating Statement	166 821	175 491	172 277	186 142	185 168	185 168	185 168	(31 099)	(35 659)	(42 494)
Surplus (Deficit) Considering Reserve and Cash Backing	(15 532)	(27 486)	(17 339)	(26 630)	(24 934)	(24 934)	(24 934)	(31 799)	(35 659)	(42 494)
MTREF Funded (1) Unfunded (0)	23 870	135 017	256 743	(5 111)	(3 675)	(3 675)	(3 675)	0	0	0
MTREF Funded ✓ /Unfunded x	10	10	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

The operating expenditure equates to R194 million in the 2024/25 financial year and escalates to R202 million in the 2025/26 financial year. Total operating expenditure increased by 5% against the 2023/24 adjustments budget.

5.6 AUDIT

AUDIT, ANTI-CORRUPTION AND RISK MANAGEMENT COMMITTEES

Risk management units and committees have been established in all local municipalities.

INTERNAL AUDIT

It is a requirement by the Municipal Finance Management Act of 2003 that municipalities establish internal audit units and audit and performance Audit committees. Both the Audit and Performance Audit Committee are established in terms of the MFMA and Performance Regulation of 2001. In the main the members are 3 external people and senior management. The external members provide independent specialist advice on financial performance, efficiency, effectiveness and compliance with legislation, and performance management. All local municipalities including the District have Audit Committees which consist of at least three persons with appropriate experience of whom the majority are not in the employ of the municipality and meet at least four times a year as is required by section 166(4). There are all necessary approved internal audit and audit committee charter in place. Risk assessments are being conducted every year with the assistance of Treasury and COGHSTA. There are mechanisms in place to respond or deal with issues raised by the Auditor General in the audit report as required by section 166(2) (c).

Internal Audit Key Issues and Challenges

- Inadequate capacity of municipalities to deal with internal audit issues
- Lack of internal and external assessments to assess internal audit activities
- Inadequate synergy between Council and both the Audit and Performance Audit Committee
- Limited achievement on compliance with key issues of legislation, the MFMA, MSA and other regulations and policies
- Limited link between the municipality's performance and performance of employees

The following are available: Internal Audit & Audit Committee

Internal Audit units and audit committees established district wide

Anti-fraud and corruption

All municipalities have developed the anti-fraud and corruption strategies and risk management strategies.



5.7 AUDIT OPINION

TABLE 103: **AUDIT OUTCOME TREND AND MATTERS AFFECTING THE AUDIT REPORT FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2019/20-2023/24]**

2018/19	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24
Unqualified	Unqualified	Clean Audit	Clean Audit	Unqualified	Unqualified Audit Opinion with no material findings.
Matters affecting opinion: Irregular Expenditure Expenditure Management Strategic Planning and Performance Management Human Resource Management	Matters affecting opinion: 1. Supply Chain Management	Matters affecting opinion: 1. None.	Matters affecting opinion: 1. None.	Matters affecting opinion: 1. Property plant and equipment	Matters affecting opinion: 1. None.

5.8 AUDIT OUTCOME TRENDS FOR WATERBERG DISTRICT-WIDE FOR THE PAST 5 YEARS [2019/20-2023/24]

TABLE 104: **AUDIT OUTCOME TREND WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY for THE past 5 years [2018/19-2022/23]**

MUNICIPALITY	AUDIT OPINION				
	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24
Waterberg DM	Unqualified	Clean Audit	Clean Audit	Unqualified	Unqualified
Bela-Bela LM	Qualified	Adverse	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified

Lephalale LM	Unqualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Unqualified	Unqualified
Mogalakwena LM	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Unqualified
Modimolle-Mookgophong LM	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Adverse	Qualified
Thabazimbi LM	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Qualified	Disclaimer

5.9 AUDITED STATEMENTS

The performance of municipalities is measured in financial and non-financial terms. The performance of municipalities to achieve good audit reports is dependent on number of factors that include internal control systems namely; Budget, IDP, SDBIP, PMS and compliance to GRAP Standards.

The Auditor General's audit function was mostly focused on financial information with additional focus on non-financial information that also determines the extent that municipalities are delivering services in an efficient, effective and economic manner, but an audit opinion is not yet issued on non-financial information. Past outcomes on the audit reports was thus based on the fair presentation information disclosed in the municipality's financial statements and not on the performance of the municipality.

The current status quo of audit reports in the district has been shadowed by disclaimer, qualified and unqualified audit reports. Factors that have led to negative audit outcomes relate to capacity of Budget and Treasury Offices, poor record management and lack of a proper audit trail, outstanding reconciliations, inadequate financial management systems, difficulty in ensuring asset registers are GRAP compliant.

MEASURES TAKEN IN ADDRESSING THE AUDIT REPORT.

To address issues raised by the Auditor General

The systems are in place and the policies implemented. The Risk register also assist the municipality address issues of risk. Office of the municipal manager, audit unit, has a plan in place to assist the municipality in dealing with issues raised. The CFO forum needs to be effective in assisting the local municipalities to improve their financial status.



5.10 2023/24 AUDIT ACTION PLAN REPORT

ANNEXURE A: Post Audit Action Plan 24/25 Financial Year

The **Post Audit Action Plan Report 24/25** financial year comprises of **11 findings**. The WDM has received the Unqualified Audit Opinion with no material findings.

MUNICIPALITY	Waterberg District Municipality		No	%
Financial Year	2025/26	Resolved		
Audit Opinion	Unqualified with no material findings	Outstanding		
Reporting Period	2024/25	Total	11	100



No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Resolved; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative Progress	to							
	Financial Statements																
No. 1 pg 32	DIFFERENCES NOTED BETWEEN DISCLOSURE NOTE 10 (PPE) AND DISCLOSURE NOTE 25 (GENERAL EXPENSE) FOR THE AMOUNT OF REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Amount as per note 10</th><th>Amount as per note 25</th><th>Difference</th></tr><tr><td>Repairs and maintenance</td><td>R6 105 168</td><td>R5 425 246,00</td><td>R679 922,00</td></tr></table>	Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference	Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00	New	Management did not adequately review annual financial statements to ensure that correct amount of repairs & maintenance is disclosed in the Property, plant and equipment disclosure note and general expense disclosure note	Management will update the disclosure note on PPE. No journals required just disclosure update	01/11/2024	01/11/2024	Reporting specialist	Resolved	01/11/2024
Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference														
Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00														



No. 2 Pg 34	DISCLOSURE NOTE 12 OF EMPLOYEE BENEFIT OBLIGATION. DURING THE REVIEW OF ANNUAL FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 JUNE 2024 IT WAS NOTED THAT THE DISCLOSURE NOTE 12 FOR EMPLOYEE BENEFIT OBLIGATION CONTAINS INCOMPLETE NARRATIVES WHERE CERTAIN DETAILS ARE NOT PROVIDED.	New	Management did not adequately review annual financial statements to ensure that narratives in the disclosure notes are appropriately completed	Management will update the disclosure note on Employee benefit obligation	30/11/2024	01/11/2024	Reporting specialist	Resolved	Disclosure updated on PPE note disclosure.
	Compliance								Updated the disclosure note on Employee benefit obligation.
No. 3 Pg 36	Insufficient Resources at the Fire Stations Further evidence obtained from other sources confirms that fire services in the Waterberg District are under-resourced. Upon enquiry with management, it was confirmed that there was indeed a shortage of firefighting personnel which resulted from lack of a financing structure for the Disaster management and Fire Services functions. This highlights a key issue that some of the concerns that had been identified during the physical verification of fire service assets were not within the control of	New	Management did not implement effective HR management to ensure that adequate and sufficiently skilled resources are in place in order to ensure that the district has a sufficient number of firefighters to respond to fire incidents. The lack of fire	The municipality has established revenue enhancement committee to improve the revenue situation, furthermore the municipality will continue to engage provincial and national	01 Dec 2024	30 Jun 2025	CFO	In Progress	

	management because management does not have enough resources to maintain the services designated in terms of the Fire Brigade Services Act.		fighters has resulted in fire engines being redundant due to limited fire fighters who could operate them, consequently, expenditure to maintain them would have been wasteful.	government to consider the review of equitable share allocation.					
No. 4 Pg 40	OPERATING LEASE COMMITMENT DISCLOSURE DIFFERENCES DURING THE AUDIT OF THE OPERATING LEASE COMMITMENT, IT WAS NOTED THAT THE CURRENT YEAR'S OPERATING LEASE DISCLOSURE, AS PER NOTE 29, WAS NOT ACCURATE. SPECIFICALLY: - The minimum lease payments due within one year were overstated by R53, 307. - The minimum lease payments due in the second to fifth years were understated by R961, 40	New	Management did not adequately review calculation of straight-line amounts for the building and the VoIP contract, as reflected in their prepared schedule to ensure that correct amounts are disclosed. This led to an overstatement of the operating lease commitment within one year and an	Management will review and correct the straight-line calculations for all operating leases contract to ensure compliance with accounting standards and update the operating lease disclosure accordingly.	14/11/2024	14/11/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	We established the Revenue Enhancement Committee which held its meetings on 24 February 2025. The committee comprises of WDM management, Provincial Treasury, Department of Health, COGHSTA, & LEDET, Currently we are engaging the Provincial Treasury, National Treasury and other Departments for them to consider grant funding for the concerned services.

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Resolved; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative to Progress								
	Financial Statements																
No. 1 pg 32	DIFFERENCES NOTED BETWEEN DISCLOSURE NOTE 10 (PPE) AND DISCLOSURE NOTE 25 (GENERAL EXPENSE) FOR THE AMOUNT OF REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Amount as per note 10</th><th>Amount as per note 25</th><th>Difference</th></tr><tr><td>Repairs and maintenance</td><td>R6 105 168</td><td>R5 425 246,00</td><td>R679 922,00</td></tr></table>	Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference	Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00	New	Management did not adequately review annual financial statements to ensure that correct amount of repairs & maintenance is disclosed in the Property, plant and equipment disclosure note and general expense disclosure note	Management will update the disclosure note on PPE. No journals required just disclosure update	01/11/2024	01/11/2024	Reporting specialist	Resolved	01/11/2024
Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference														
Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00														
			understatement of the minimum lease payments due in the second to fifth years.														

No. 5 Pg 42	DIFFERENCES NOTED IN THE COMMITMENT BALANCE DISCLOSED During the audit of WDM commitments, We noted differences between client's calculated commitment balance and auditor's calculated commitment balance. These differences were as result of the contract amount being captured incorrectly. Refer to below Table for details: Difference in Contract amounts: <table><thead><tr><th>Supplier Name</th><th>Contract amount as per the client</th><th>Contract amount as per the auditor's recalculation</th><th>Difference (R')</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Emalan geni</td><td>358</td><td></td><td>91</td></tr><tr><td>Technologies</td><td>112,00</td><td>450</td><td>919</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td>031,43</td><td>,43</td></tr></tbody></table> Difference in commitment balance <table><thead><tr><th>Supplier Name</th><th>Commitment balance as per</th><th>Auditor's recalculation</th><th>Difference (R')</th></tr></thead></table>	Supplier Name	Contract amount as per the client	Contract amount as per the auditor's recalculation	Difference (R')	Emalan geni	358		91	Technologies	112,00	450	919			031,43	,43	Supplier Name	Commitment balance as per	Auditor's recalculation	Difference (R')	New	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that contract amounts are captured correctly from the source documents.	Adjust the disclosure note on commitments with amount R91 900.85. It will increase with the difference of contract amount because no payment was made before year end but only after year end.	30/11/2024	30/11/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	Adjusted the disclosure note for operating lease liability amounting to R907 667.08 (calculations are attached as well as how the revised AFS will look like). We also updated the operating lease liability with a journal adjustment amounting to R27 904 in order for the liability to be R54 991 to avoid prior period error in the next financial year.
Supplier Name	Contract amount as per the client	Contract amount as per the auditor's recalculation	Difference (R')																										
Emalan geni	358		91																										
Technologies	112,00	450	919																										
		031,43	,43																										
Supplier Name	Commitment balance as per	Auditor's recalculation	Difference (R')																										

No	Description of Finding	Findings Status [Recurring; New]	Root Cause	Action Plan Description	Start Date	Completion Date	Position	Progress [Resolved; In Progress; Not Yet Started]	Narrative Progress	to							
Financial Statements																	
No. 1 pg 32	DIFFERENCES NOTED BETWEEN DISCLOSURE NOTE 10 (PPE) AND DISCLOSURE NOTE 25 (GENERAL EXPENSE) FOR THE AMOUNT OF REPAIRS AND MAINTENANCE. <table><tr><th>Description</th><th>Amount as per note 10</th><th>Amount as per note 25</th><th>Difference</th></tr><tr><td>Repairs and maintenance</td><td>R6 105 168</td><td>R5 425 246,00</td><td>R679 922,00</td></tr></table>	Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference	Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00	New	Management did not adequately review annual financial statements to ensure that correct amount of repairs & maintenance is disclosed in the Property, plant and equipment disclosure note and general expense disclosure note	Management will update the disclosure note on PPE. No journals required just disclosure update	01/11/2024	01/11/2024	Reporting specialist	Resolved	01/11/2024
Description	Amount as per note 10	Amount as per note 25	Difference														
Repairs and maintenance	R6 105 168	R5 425 246,00	R679 922,00														
	the client's commitment balance Email address <table><tr><td>Tech nologies</td><td>358 111, 76</td><td>438 542, 78</td><td>80 431, 02</td></tr></table>	Tech nologies	358 111, 76	438 542, 78	80 431, 02												
Tech nologies	358 111, 76	438 542, 78	80 431, 02														

No. 6 Pg 44	Depreciation not accounted for During the audit of property, plant and equipment, it was noted that depreciation for some of the assets was not calculated in the current 2023/24 financial period. <i>Depreciation</i> $= \frac{\text{Opening Carrying amount} - \text{Residual Value}}{\text{Remaining useful life (in days)}}$ *366 days were used because the 2023/24 financial year is a leap year.	Recurring	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that all the assets purchased and pertain to the entity are depreciated in accordance with GRAP requirements and also change in estimates is disclosed as per requirements	Adjust the financial statements amounting to R884 991.93 that will affect the statement of financial position and performance.	14/11/2024	14/11/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	We adjusted the disclosure note on commitment accordingly. Grant reconciliation were performed for all 12 months for the year of 2024. The register and recon is available for review.
No. 7 Pg 46	Differences Noted in The Payables from Exchange Balance. During the audit of WDM payables from exchange we noted differences between VAT amounts as per the client creditor's listing/supplier's invoice and auditor's recalculated VAT amount.	New	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that amounts are captured correctly from	The population was tested and came to the conclusion that MPH was an isolated case, we therefore would like to request an	21/11/2024	21/11/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	Updated the asset register and captured the journal to effect changes.

			the source documents.	adjustment for the R3 068.45. Attached is an extract from the financial statements after consider the journal Debit – Payables R3068.45 Credit – VAT receivable R3068.45					
No. 8 Pg 48	Overstatement of Contingent Liabilities, understatement of Payables as at year end. On 16 May 2024 During the year under audit, the dispute between Imatu (Badenhorst & Reinecke) and the Waterberg district Municipality reached a settlement agreement for the travelling allowance for Mr. ER Badenhorst R400 000 and Mr. M Reinecke R350 000, for which the payments are required to be made before the 31 July 2024. The settlement agreement entered between Imatu and WDM is an actual obligation and whose existence was confirmed on the 16	New	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that transactions are correctly classified in the correct accounts.	Management will implement controls over monthly processing and reconciliations.	25/11/2024	25/06/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	We processed the journal to decrease payables.

	of May 2024 when the applicant and respondent signed a settlement agreement. The amount of obligation can be measured with sufficient reliability as an amount of R750 000 (Mr. ER Badenhorst R400 000 and Mr. M Reinecke R350 000). It can be concluded that the Matter was incorrectly stated as a contingent liability as it meets the requirements of a payable as of 16 May 2024.								
No. 9 Pg 50	Incorrect amount reflected for remuneration of councillors Differences were noted between disclosure note 27 (Remuneration of Councillors) and the auditor's recalculation as seen in Annexure A. A total difference of R358 793 was noted.	New	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that transactions are recorded at the correct amounts	Update disclosure note on remuneration of Councillors.	30/11/2024	26/11/2024	Reporting Specialist	Resolved	We adjusted the financial statements to rectify the contingencies and provision. We removed contingency and processed journal to make a provision amounting to R750 000.
No. 10 Pg 52	PPE – Residual Values not assessed at year end. Upon testing the Property, Plant and Equipment, it was noted that a total of 30 Motor Vehicles have a Residual Value of R1. This indicates that the residual values of vehicles have not been reassessed as at 30 June 2024. Considering the past pattern of	New	Management did not implement controls over daily and monthly processing and reconciling of transactions to ensure that to	We will implement the following improvements: a) Short-term actions:	30/11/2024	30/06/2025	Reporting Specialist	In progress	We updated disclosure note on remuneration of Councillors.

	disposing of vehicles through an auction, it can be confirmed that a residual value should be determined for such type of assets.		ensure that the residual value of all the assets is reassessed per annum in accordance with GRAP requirements.	Document the methodology used for residual value assessments more comprehensively Prepare detailed analysis supporting the conclusion that no significant changes were required Review historical auction results to validate current residual value positions b) Long-term actions: -Develop more detailed guidelines for						
--	---	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

				determining significance thresholds -Implement enhanced documentation procedures for annual reviews Create a formal residual value assessment framework					
No. 11 Pg 55	Non- Compliance with MSA schedule 2: Code of conduct for municipal staff members' sec 5(1) (Family interest). Through the audit, it was discovered that Mr. Kwen Vincent Mokgonyana, who is an employee of WDM as a special project officer, is the spouse of the director (Elizabeth Noko) of Mphuti Wa Jonas for which contracted with WDM in the current year of audit on several occasions. It was noted that the interest/ Spouse's direct benefit from a contract concluded with the municipality/ municipal entity was not declared in the annual	New	Management did not Review and monitor compliance with applicable laws and regulations, to ensure that all conflict of interests is declared.	a) <u>Immediate Actions</u> We have obtained a revised declaration form from the employee noting the spouses business interest. The employee has now provided full written disclosure of the	30/06/2025	30/06/2025	CFO	In progress	The following Specific actions will be implemented: • Establish a formal documentation process for residual value assessments • Create a checklist of factors to be considered in determining whether changes are significant • Maintain a database of historical disposal values

	declaration of Mr. Kwena Vincent Mokgonyana			relationship as required by Municipal Systems Act Schedule 2.					to support future assessments • Implement quarterly reviews of market conditions that might impact residual values • Provide training to staff
	Non- Compliance with MSA schedule 2: Code of conduct for municipal staff members' sec 5(1) (Family interest). Through the audit, it was discovered that Mr. Kwena Vincent Mokgonyana, who is an employee of WDM as a special project officer, is the spouse of the director (Elizabeth Noko) of Mphuti Wa Jonas for which contracted with WDM in the current year of audit on several occasions. It was noted that the interest/ Spouse's direct benefit from a contract concluded with the municipality/ municipal entity was not declared in the annual declaration of Mr. Kwena Vincent Mokgonyana			b) <u>System Improvements</u> - We will revise our declaration policy to include continuous disclosure requirements - We will implement a quarterly review of new vendors against employee relationships - Training will be provided to					The declaration of interest form has been revised and issued to employees on the 11 March 2025.

			all employees regarding MSA Schedule 2 requirements and SCM Regulation 45 - The declaration form will be updated to explicitly include requirements of MSA Schedule 2 Paragraph 5.						
			c) <u>Control Enhancements</u> - Implementation of a vendor verification process that includes specific checking for potential employee relationships before						

				contract awards - Regular updates to the conflict of interest register - Introduction of a formal process for declaring interests as they arise during the year						
--	--	--	--	---	--	--	--	--	--	--



COMMITTEES IN THE SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

BSC – Bid Specification Committee

BAC- Bid adjudication Committee

BEC- Bid Evaluation Committee

5.11 RISK AND INTERNAL CONTROL

As part of our approach to the identification and ongoing management of risks across WDM, the risk assessment process was facilitated with members of management aim at updating the previously identified business risks and also to develop a risk profile for WDM. The risk assessment was facilitated by Risk Officer in a form of departmental heads one on one with Section 57 Managers and Acting Manager and Divisional Managers.

Legal Framework and Best Practice Guidelines

Municipal Finance Management Act No 56 of 2003 (MFMA) Section 62. (1) (c). The accounting officer of a municipality is responsible for managing the financial administration of the municipality and must for this purpose take steps to ensure that the municipality has and maintains effective, efficient and transparent system of financial and risk management and internal control.

- **Section 3.2.1 of the Treasury Regulations published in term of the PFMA:** The accounting officer must ensure that a risk assessment is conducted regularly to identify emerging risks for the institution
- **King IV report – Corporate Governance-** Report on Corporate Governance for South Africa, 2016 Principle 11 – “ The Governing Body should govern risk in a way that supports the organization in setting and achieving its strategic objectives”
- **ISO 31000:2018:** Risk Management – Guidelines, provides principles, framework and a process for managing risk. It can be used by any organization regardless of its size, activity or sector.
- **COSO (Committee of Sponsoring Organizations)** is a joint initiative of five private sector organizations and is dedicated to providing thought leadership through the development of frameworks and guidance on enterprise risk management internal control and fraud deterrence.

Approach

The following process was followed:

Identification of risks

The attendees assisted to identify the risks that may impact the business in achieving its objectives. Business risks were defined as: “the threat that an event or action will adversely affect an organisation’s ability to achieve its business objectives and to execute its strategies successfully”.

Rating of risks

Each risk was evaluated in terms of potential loss, likelihood of occurrence and the effectiveness of controls in place to manage the risks according to the criteria set out below:

5.12 2025/26 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIC RISKS

No	Key Performance Area	Strategic Objectives	2025/2026 Strategic Risk	Responsible Department
1	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Air Quality – Waterberg has been identified as a hot spot	SDCS
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Fire Fighter - Effective Management	SDCS
3	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	High floods risk – Projected rain levels	SDCS
4	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development.	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to service.	Abattoir – competitive, efficient and effective services	PED

5	Good Governance and Public Participation.	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems.	-	-
6	Spatial Rationale	To coordinating spatial transformation.	Tribunal – Land re-zoning	PED
7	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.	-	-
8	Municipal Transformation and organizational development.	To attract develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Business continuity plan	OMM
9	Municipal Transformation and organizational development.	To attract develop and retain ethical and best human capital	High level of litigations	CSSS
10	Financial Management & viability	To effectively manage finances in an accountTable way and improve financial efficiency and sustainability.	Financial sustainability	BTO

5.13 FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT & VIABILITY: KEY ISSUES & CHALLENGES

- Ageing infrastructure in towns
- The District Municipality is almost 100% dependent on Government grants
- Insufficient financial resources to provide water, electricity, sanitation, solid waste, sports & community facilities
- Inadequate indigent registers
- Limited capacity to repay loans at normal interests' rates by some municipalities
- Inadequate staffing of budget and treasury offices and high turnover of CFO's
- Inadequate project management and supply chain management systems
- Inadequate costing and specifications of budgeted projects
- Many municipalities are under financial distress
- Challenges with knowledge and information management.
- Inaccurate data on billing systems resulting in incomplete or inaccurate billing and bad debts.
- None implementation of revenue enhancement strategies
- Lack of funds for capital expenditure to support the economic growth of the area
- Large indigents base

- Municipalities have high levels of debt: None payment of services by government, private business and the community
- Debt collection in previously black townships is a challenge.
- Inadequate skills base in the budget and treasury unit.
- Ineffective Internal Audit unit and audit committee
- Non-implementation of risk and anti-corruption strategies
- Although there is improvement, there are still negative audit opinions
- Increase in debt
- Difficulty in identifying related parties in SCM procurement transactions
- Implementation of residual values and lifespans of assets while complying with MFMA & related legislations as well as GRAP standards and resolution of inconsistencies between the two.
- Classification of roads between district and local municipalities and RAL in terms of the lack of implementation of the 2004 gazette assigning responsibilities to municipalities.
- Calculation of possible contingent liability on the future implementation of the SALGA Wage Curve Agreement in the absence of Final Outcome Reports for municipalities.
- Implementation of MSCOA(READINESS)



CHAPTER 6 – GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION ANALYSIS

6.1 FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES

TABLE 105: FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL COUNCIL AND COMMITTEES IN MUNICIPLAITIES

Municipality	No wards of	Council stability and functionality	Traditional Leaders	Audit, Performance Audit Committee and Risk Management	MPAC	Anti-Fraud & Corruption policies and committee	Supply Chain Committee	CDW's
Bela-Bela	09	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Modimolle-Mookgopong	14	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Policy available No Committee	Yes	Yes
Mogalakwena	32	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Not approved	Yes	Yes
Lephalale	13	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Thabazimbi	10 (02 not established)	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Waterberg	78	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

RELATIONSHIP WITH TRADITIONAL LEADERSHIP

There are 12 traditional authorities in the District Municipality. Recognition and involvement of the traditional leaders in matters of local government yield cooperative governance between the three recognized institutions. Traditional authorities both in Mogalakwena, Lephalale and Bela-Bela municipalities play a role in development of communities. They have a representative who has occupied an office in the District Municipality. There is a good communication

within the District Municipality and the Traditional leaders. The role of the authorities' in development is mostly profound in mobilizing communities and allocation of land for residents and development. However there are challenges as consultative and involvement processes of allocating land in accordance to the LUMS have not yet yielded planned settlements with basic infrastructure in the rural areas. The District Municipality has managed to establish the District Traditional Health Practitioners Committee in line with the Traditional Health Practitioners Act No 22 of 2007. Their role is to coordinate activities of the Health Practitioners and ensure that they practice according to the four recognized practices, thus Diviner, Herbalist, Traditional Birth attendant and Traditional Surgeon. They will also be working closely with the departments to promote public health and ensure the quality of health services within the traditional health practice.

6.2. FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPAL PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES AND CDWs

TABLE 106: FUNCTIONALITY OF MUNICIPALITY PUBLIC ACCOUNTS COMMITTEE, WARD COMMITTEES AND CDWS

	District	BelaBela	Modimolle-Mookkgophong	Mogalakwena	Lephalale	Thabazimbi
Political Management Team functionality	PMT forum functional. MPAC ESTABLISHED and functional however continuous capacitation still required.					
Number of established ward committees.	79	9	14	32	12	12
Number of functional wards committees.	79	0	13	32	12	12
Staff in speakers office (supporting public participation)	111 incl 4 for district	0	3	3	1	0 Ward & Public Participation Co-ordinator advertised)



6.3 INTERGOVERNMENTAL RELATIONS (IGR)

Local government does not have the powers and functions over a range of services that communities expect. These sit with the other spheres of government. While planning for such services should be integrated into the IDP, The process is highly dependent on the cooperation, commitment and involvement of provinces and national government in municipal processes.

District Municipalities are the core of promoting intergovernmental relations for better provision of service delivery. The establishment of municipal IGR forums within the district has positive yields but still with some challenges to accelerate service delivery.

The following forums take place in the District:

Mayor's Forum, Municipal Managers' Forum, CFO's Forum, Technical Forum, District Economic Planning Development Forum, IDP Managers Forum, ICT Forum, IDP REP Forum, M & E Forum, Communications Forum, District Tourism Forum, Occupational Health & Safety, Internal Auditors Forum, Internal Audit, Risk Management Forum, Traditional House, Skills Development Forum.

Active Environmental Forums in the Waterberg District:

WATERBERG ENVIRONMENT AND BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION FORUM: WEBC FORUM

WATERBERG AIR QUALITY FORUM: WAQF

WATERBERG IMPLEMENTATION TASK TEAM: WITT (LINKED TO AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN)

WATERBERG WASTE WORKING GROUP: WWWG

WATERBERG SOCIAL SERVICES FORUM: WSSF

NB: All these FORUMs / Structures sit Quarterly (4 x per annum)

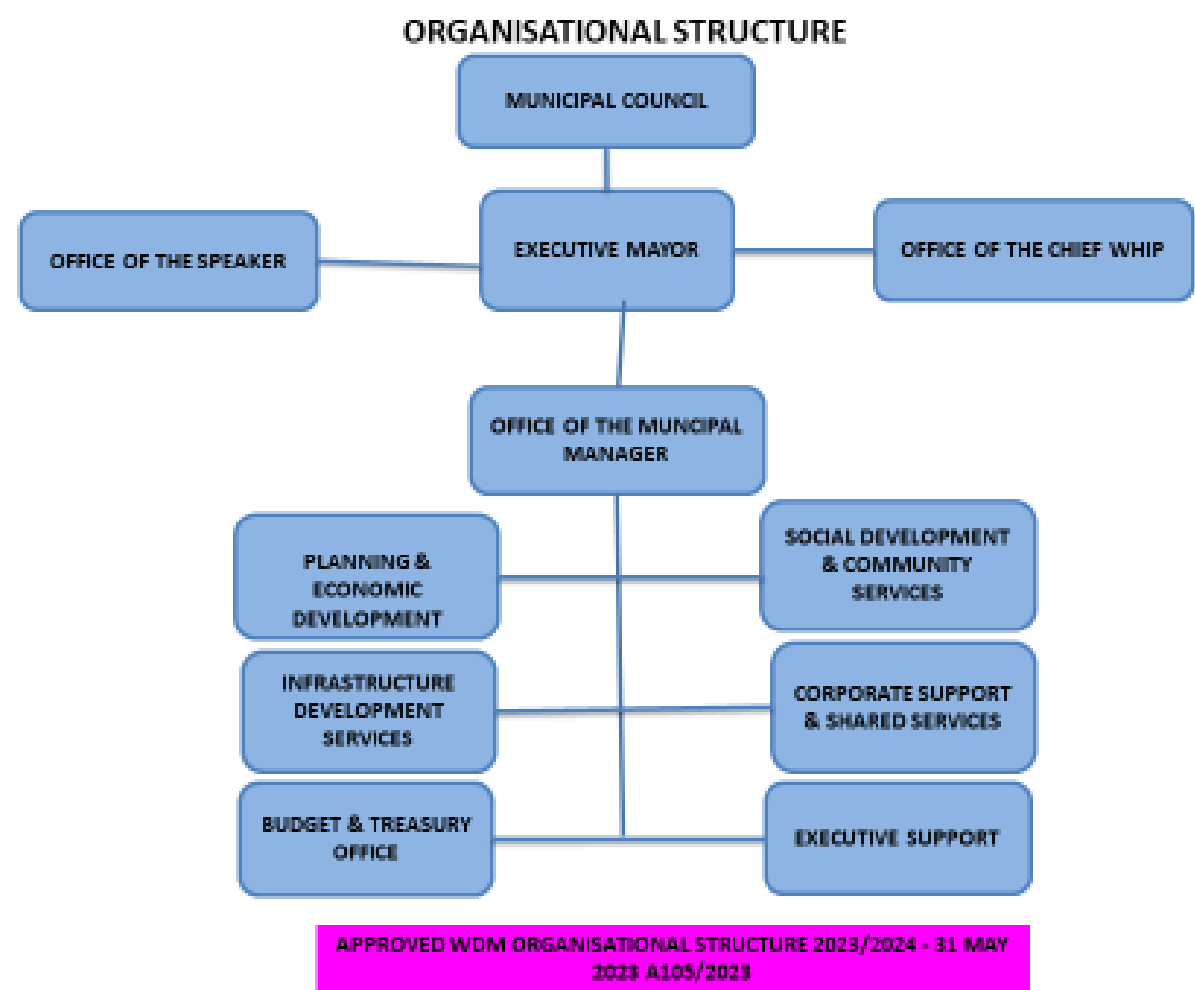
The following are also district wide council /committees:

Disability, youth, older persons, aids council early childhood development (jointly with Department of Education), sports and arts council, Moral regeneration, and domestic workers.

Inter-Governmental Relations issues and challenges include:

- Limited participation of other spheres of government in municipal planning processes
- Inadequate linkage of different priorities of other spheres of government by municipalities and vice versa
- Inadequate participation of District municipality in sector department strategic planning session to influence priorities to address service delivery challenges.

7.1. INSTITUTIONAL STRUCTURE



Current Organizational Structure

STAFF ESTABLISHMENT	TOTAL POSITIONS	TOTAL FILLED POSITIONS	VACANT	BUDGETED	NOT BUDGETED
Office of the Municipal Manager	14	09	5	2	3
Executive Support	16	16	0	0	0
Corporate Support & shared Services	29	24	5	3	2
Infrastructure Development	8	3	5	1	4
Planning and Economic Development	25	19	6	1	5
Budget & Treasury Office	19	15	4	4	0
Community Services (Fire Services, Environmental Health Practitioners	278	92	186	5	181
TOTAL	389	178	211	16	193

Total Posts Vacant	211
Total Number of Posts	389
Total Number of Filled Posts	178
Percentage of Vacancies	54% (8% budgeted)
Percentage of Filled Posts	46%



7.2 FILLING OF CRITICAL POSTS

TABLE 107: STATUS OF FILLING OF CRITICAL POSTS IN MUNICIPLAITIES

MUNICIPALIY	MUNICIPAL MANAGER	CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER	MANAGER INFRASTRUCTURE / TECHNICAL	MANAGER CORPORATE SERVICE	MANAGER PLANNING & ECONOMIC DEVELOPME NT	MANAGER SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES
Waterberg	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Bela-Bela	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Modimolle- Mookgopong	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mogalakwena	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Lephalale	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Thabazimbi	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Total	6/6	5/6	6/6	5/6	4/6	6/6



7.3 VACANCIES RATE AS AT 30 March 2026

TABLE 108: VACANCY RATES AS AT 30 MARCH 2026

OFFICE OF THE MUNICIPAL MANAGER		
POSITION	NO. OF POSTS	STATUS QUO
Head Monitoring and Evaluation PL 04	1	Vacant
PMS Officer	2	Vacant
PMS Administrator	1	Advertised
Admin Assistant IDP	1	Advertised
BUDGET AND TREASURY		
Divisional Manager Income, Budgeting and Reporting PL 03	1	Vacant
Payroll Clerk	1	Advertised
CORPORATE SUPPORT & SHARED SERVICES		
Manager ICT PL03	1	Vacant
IT Helpdesk/Desktop Support PL 08	1	Vacant
Secretary: CSSS PL 08	1	Filled
Messenger/Driver PL 09	1	Vacant
Cleaner PL 15	1	Advertised
PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT		
Manager Planning & Economic Development	1	Filled
Slaughteres L 13	5	Vacant
INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMNET		
DM: Capital Projects	1	Advertised
Manager PMU	1	Vacant
Technicians PMU	2	Vacant
Data Capturer PMU	1	Vacant

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT AND COMMUNITY SERVICES		
Snr Environment and Air Quality Officer PL04	1	Vacant
Environmental Health Practitioner Modimolle / Mogakwena / Bela-Bela / Thabazimbi PL 08	30	Vacant
Fire Fighter PL 09	31	Vacant
Leading Fire Fighter PL 08	23	Vacant
Fire Prevention Officer PL 06	3	Vacant
Control Room Operator PL 10	1	Advertised
Junior Fire Fighter PL 11	93	Vacant
EXECUTIVE SUPPORT		
TOTAL POSTS VACANT	204	
TOTAL NUMBER OF POSTS	388	
TOTAL NUMBER OF FILLED POSTS	186	
	% VACANCIES =	53%
	% FILLED =	47%

TABLE 109: **DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY TWELVE POWERS AND FUNCTIONS CONFERRED TO IT THROUGH SECTION 84 SUB-SECTIONS 1 OF THE LOCAL GOVERNMENT MUNICIPAL STRUCTURES ACT.**

APT – Authority to Perform, PFM – Powers Performed by Municipality, ESP – External Service Provider S78 – Section 78 Process in terms of System Act Complete, SDA – Service Delivery Agreement in Place					
Functions of the municipality according to the Constitution, the Municipal Structures Act and Systems Act	ATP	PFM	ESP or Other Sphere of Govt.	S78	SDA
Air pollution	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Bulk sewage purification and main sewage disposal	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Cemeteries and Crematoria	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal roads	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Education	No	No	No	No	No
Fire-Fighting Services	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Local Economic Development	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Abattoir	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No
Municipal Airports	Yes	No	No	No	No
Municipal Health Services	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
Municipal Public Transport Planning	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Public Works	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Municipal Planning	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Safety and Security	No	No	Yes	No	No
Social Development	No	No	Yes	No	No
Sports, Arts and Culture	No	No	Yes	No	No
Refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

The implementation of the development mandate is comprised mainly by limited financial and human resources capacity, unavailability of institutional plan, limited options to retain skilled and technical staff members and limited implementation of section 78 processes to transfer powers and functions.

To implement the powers and functions of the municipality, there are oversight committees established to ensure accountability and transparency of municipal processes. The political oversight role of council is performed by Council functionaries that are established in terms of the Municipal Structure Act.

7.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (PMS)

The measurement of the outcome of integrated development planning at local government can be realized when municipalities establishes performance management systems that are integrated and seamless to the IDP. Performance management system is developed for the purpose of improving the public service (i.e. through increased economy, efficiency and effectiveness in service delivery) and to reinforce accountability, so that organisations are clearly held to account for the resource they use, and the outcomes achieved. At local government the system is consists of developing the IDP aligned to the budget, development of SDBIP, reporting, assessment, performance auditing, appraisal and community participation in monitoring performance.

There are consecutive steps taken by municipalities to develop performance management system. The development of the system is still at an infancy level as municipalities are still struggling to develop a system that entrench good governance to improve service delivery. The performance assessment is still conducted at top management level with the limitation of cascading the system to all individual employees.

Organisational Performance Management System

Waterberg District Municipality has established its automated Performance Management System in 2009 with the Service Provider, Institute for Performance Management. WDM has a Balanced Score Card. The components of a Performance Management as envisaged by section 41 of the Municipal System Act, are in existence such as:

- Key Performance Indicators
- Measurable Performance Targets
- Monitoring of Performance
- Performance Assessments
- Regular Reporting
- Performance Agreements
- Performance Auditing

Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan is used as the monitoring and management tool which implement an IDP. The SDBIP has 33 KPIs excluding the new B2B indicators, which are spread over the seven departments of the municipality. A performance framework and policy have been reviewed to accommodate changes precipitated by the legislation.

Individual Performance Management System

Section 54 and 57 Section Managers sign Performance Agreements within one month of their employment. To hold them accountable they also develop their Performance Plans in line with the SDBIP, which they are review on a quarterly basis. Those who perform outstandingly preceded by the approval of Oversight Report are entitled to performance bonuses; on condition such bonuses were budgeted for the same financial year.

Performance Management System (PMS) Key Issues and Challenges:

- Inadequate baseline information to monitor progress for implementation of IDP
- Limited involvement of communities to monitor the performance of municipalities.
- Performance management is not cascaded to all municipal employees. It is limited to top management.

Employment Equity

The Waterberg District Municipality’s Employment Equity Plan aims to promote workplace equity by fostering a more representative workforce and ensuring fair and equitable employment practices. Additionally, the plan seeks to cultivate an inclusive organizational culture that values diversity, eliminates discrimination, and recognizes employees' contributions. The municipality implements its employment equity plan and numerical targets in accordance with legislative requirements. However, a key challenge remains in recruiting individuals with disabilities.

Employment Equity Challenges

- Limited appointment of persons with disabilities.
- Accessibility of municipal buildings for employees with disabilities.

7.5 SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

Waterberg District Municipality is committed to strengthening institutional capacity through systematic skills development aligned with strategic priorities. Annually, it prepares a Workplace Skills Plan (WSP) and Annual Training Report (ATR), endorsed by the training committee and approved by Council before submission to LGSETA by 30 April. The municipality has consistently met these deadlines, ensuring efficient planning and execution.

Quarterly training reports to LGSETA monitor WSP implementation, assessing the effectiveness of training initiatives for all employees, including junior staff, senior managers, Councillors, and Traditional Leaders. Training interventions include in-house sessions, on-the-job development, and workshops by accredited service providers. The municipality also promotes self-development through bursaries, enabling employees to pursue undergraduate and postgraduate qualifications, strengthening overall workforce competency. By integrating skills development into the IDP, the municipality ensures a sustainable approach to human resource growth, reinforcing its commitment to service excellence and institutional efficiency.

TABLE 110: **TRAINING NEEDS IDENTIFIED**

Division & Training Identified
Social Services: CPD points for Municipal Health Practitioners, Food Safety, Solid Waste Management, Occupational Health & Hygiene, Environmental Management, SAMTRAC, Microsoft Excel, Management Ethics, Law Enforcement, Project Management, Advanced Computer Training, Office/Admin Management, Compliance, Report Writing.

Fire Fighting Services: Fire Detection, Hazardous Chemical Management, Risk Assessment, Law Enforcement, OHS Act Compliance, Confined Space Rescue, Fire & Hazmat Training (Instructor, Awareness, Operator, Technician), High Angle Rescue, Incident Command, Pump Operation, Structural Collapse, Swift Water, Trench & Vehicle Extrication Rescue.
Disaster Management Services: Disaster Risk Reduction, Risk Assessment, Preparedness, Mitigation, Strategy, Integrated Flood Management.
Control Room: Call Centre Training.
Corporate Support & Shared Services: Public & Project Management, Change Management, Creativity, Policy Design, Customer Care, Decision Making, Emotional Intelligence.
Office of the Municipal Manager: CIA Examinations, Certified Fraud Examiner.
Budget & Treasury Office (BTO): Caseware, Advanced Microsoft Excel/Word/PowerPoint, Report Writing, GRAP, Records Management.
Executive Support: Project & Change Management, Advanced Microsoft PowerPoint, Report Writing.
Planning & Economic Development: Slaughtering Techniques, Hygiene.

NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN

The Waterberg District Municipality's Workplace Skills Plan (WSP) was submitted to the Local Government Sector Education and Training Authority (LGSETA) on or before 30 April 2026. The skills development initiatives outlined in the WSP are aligned with the District's Integrated Development Plan (IDP) Strategic Objectives and the Growth and Development Strategy. These include programmes such as OHS Training, leadership, records management, Work-Based Learning and Development, Firefighting, , and initiatives supporting the disaster management centre and Abbartour.

TABLE 111: **NUMBER OF OFFICIAL CAPACITATED IN TERMS OF THE WORKPLACE SKILL PLAN**

Period	Training provided/Ongoing	No of Officials/ Cllrs.	Status	Intervention	Name of Service provider
Apr 2024	Finance, Audit, & Risk Conference	05	Completed	Conference	CIGFARO
May 2024	Human Capital Symposium	08	Completed	Symposium	SALGA
May 2024	MFMP	8 Officials	Completed	Learnship	LGSETA
June 2024	Bachelor of HRD	1 Official	Completed	Bursary	North-West University
	MCOM	1 Official	Ongoing	Bursary	MANCOSA

	BCOM Procurement	1 Official	Ongoing	Bursary	UNISA
	Hons Public Admin	3 Official	Ongoing	Bursary	UNISA
	NC: Fire and Rescue	2 Officials	Ongoing	Bursary	Practicon Academy
	Bachelor Public Admin	1 Official	Ongoing	Bursary	Richfield College
	Safety Management	1 Official	Completed	Bursary	UNISA
	Diploma LG	1 Official	Ongoing	Bursary	Richfield
	BCOM HR	1 Official	Completed	Bursary	UNISA
	OHS Training	1 Official	Completed	Short Corse	SALGA
July 2024	Apprenticeship Plumber	09 Unemployed Learners	Ongoing	Apprenticeship	MPH Training and Skills
Sept 2024	Law enforcement/Peace Officers	36	Complete	Skills Programme	Tshwane Metro
Oct 2024	Training Committee Training	09	Complete	Workshop	LGSETA and COGHSTA
Nov 2024	Employment Equity Training	11	Completed	Workshop	MPH Training and Skills
Nov 2024	Records Management	02	Completed	Skills Programme	SALGA
Nov 2024	Leadership in Municipal Governance	03	Completed	Skills Programme	WITS Business School ABSA/SALGA
Jan 2025	BHRD Honours	01	Ongoing	Bursary	North-West University
Jan 2025	NC: Emergency Services Fire and Rescue	01	Ongoing	Bursary	Practicon Academy
Jan 2025	Diploma in Management: Fire Technology	01	Ongoing	Bursary	STADIO
Jan 2025	Advanced Diploma in Management:	01	Ongoing	Bursary	STADIO
Jan 2025	Bsc Honours in Environmental monitoring and modelling	01	Ongoing	Bursary	UNISA
Jan 2025	Diploma in Management	01	Ongoing	Bursary	MANCOSA

Jan 2025	Post graduate Diploma in Project Management	01	Ongoing	Bursary	MANCOSA
Feb 2025	MFMP	03	Ongoing	Learnership	University of Pretoria
April 2025	Business Communication	10	Complete	Skills Program	MPH training and skills

7.6 SUCCESSION PLAN AND RETENTION PLAN

Succession and Retention plan are still lacking.

INSTITUTIONAL & ORGANIZATIONAL DEVELOPMENT CHALLENGES

- Inadequate institutional capacity due to lack of resources to fund the organizational structure
- Lack of service delivery by – laws and implementation
- Office space.

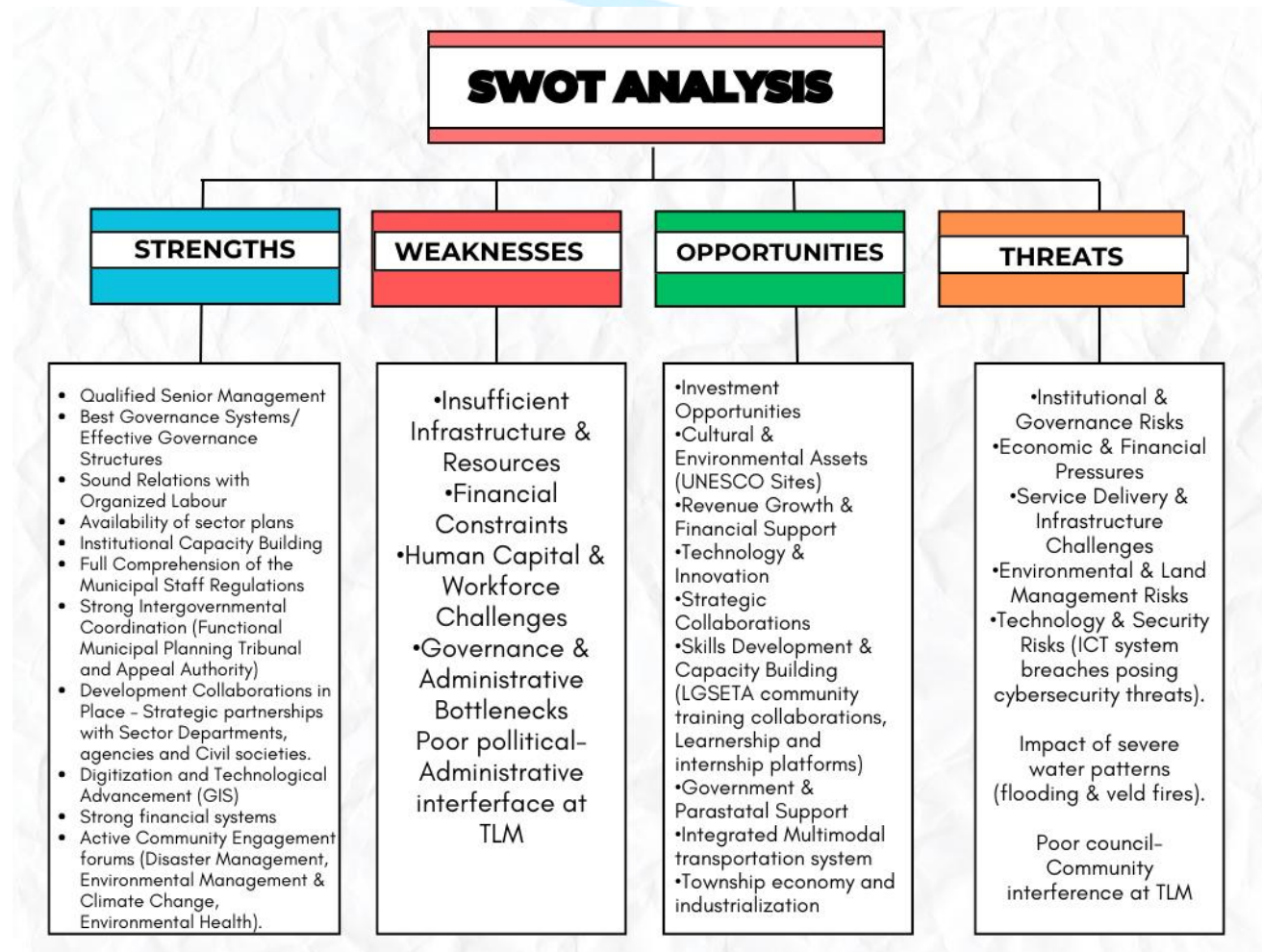
7.7 COMPLAINTS MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The Municipality has a complaints Management system which is functional and it respond to complaints and compliments from the community.



7.8 WDM 2026/27 SWOT ANALYSIS

CHART 5: THE WDM SWOT ANALYSIS



Strengths

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Functional GIS platform
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	None
3	Local Economic Development	District-Wide Local Economic Development strategy
4	Financial Viability and Management	Uniformed & Functional Financial system
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	None
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Compliant Employment Equity plans Uniformed & Functional Human Resources system

Weaknesses

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Integrated Development Planning Integrated & Compliant Spatial Development framework
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Grant spending Poor forward planning
3	Local Economic Development	Implementation of Local Economic Development strategy Enforcement of By-Laws
4	Financial Viability and Management	Grant dependency Enforcement of By-Laws
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	Inter-Governmental Relations structures
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Sound Management practices Vacant key positions i.e. Fire & Air Quality Services High staff turnover

Opportunities

#	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Land access for development Regional landfill site
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	EPWP for job creation
3	Local Economic Development	Growth point Public Private Partnerships
4	Financial Viability and Management	Broad revenue base i.e. farms and game reserves Emission license
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	None
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	None

Threats

	KPA	ATTRIBUTE
1	Spatial Rationale	Informal settlements Urbanization i.e. dolomitic areas
2	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Deteriorating service delivery standards Community unrest
3	Local Economic Development	High levels of unemployment, especially among the youth Economic exclusions
4	Financial Viability and Management	Lack of political will to maintain District mandates
5	Good Governance and Public Participation	Unintegrated IGR structures
6	Municipal Transformation and organisational development	Institutional relevance



7.9 KEY DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES PER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY 2026/27

TABLE 112:: KEY DEVELOPMENT PRIORITIES PER MUNICIPALITY 2026/27

NO.	LIST OF PRIORITY ISSUES PER MUNICIPALITY					
Mun	WATERBERG DISTRICT	THABAZIMBI	LEPHALALE	BELA- BELA	MOGALAKWENA	MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPONG
1	Municipal Health & Environmental Management	Water, Sanitation, Electricity, Roads and Storm - water	Sustainable and integrated rural development and human settlement	Water, Sanitation Electricity, Roads and Stormwater & Refuse removal	Electricity, Water, Sanitation, Roads and Stormwater, Refuse & Solid Waste Management	Water and Sanitation
2	Air Quality	Local Economic Development	Financial management (revenue, expenditure, and supply chain)	Land and Housing	LED and Unemployment	Electricity Reticulation
3	Fire fighting Services	Land for development	Maintenance and upgrading of infrastructure and quality services in all municipal areas	Good Governance and Public Participation	Institutional Arrangements	Municipal Roads and Storm water
4	Disaster Management	Institutional Development and Financial Viability	Sustainable local economic development (manufacture, buy and employ local)	Local Economic Development	Land & Environmental Management	Refuse Removal
5	Abattoir	Waste Management and Environment	Environmental management	Municipal Support and Institutional Arrangements	Housing & Community Facilities	Sport and Recreational Facilities
6	Local Economic Development & Tourism	Community participation and Communication	Relationships with stakeholders	Sports, Arts and Culture	Crime Prevention, Safety & Security	Traffic and Parking
7	Community Participation and Good Governance	Sports, Arts and Culture	Community empowerment (special projects)	Financial Viability	Health & Welfare	Cemeteries and Crematoria
8	Financial Viability	Disaster Management	Infrastructure development through public/private partnerships.		Communication	Sports, Arts and Culture
9	Municipal Roads & Storm Water	Transport and Community Safety	Innovative and proactive thinking.		Education	Public Participation and Good Governance

10	Municipal Support & Institutional Development				Sports, Arts & Culture	Municipal Support and Institutional Development
11	Sports, Arts and Culture				Transport	Local and Rural Economic Development & Planning
12	Water & Sanitation					Tourism
13	Electricity					
14	Transport					

CHAPTER 8 – CROSS CUTTING ISSUES (DISASTER MANAGEMENT)

8.1 DISASTER RISK ANALYSIS

The WDM is legally obliged to prepare a Disaster Risk Management Plan (DRMP) for its area according to the circumstances prevailing in the area, to co-ordinate and align the implementation of its plan with those of other organs of state and institutional role players and to regularly review and update its plan. The municipality must also consult the Limpopo Provincial Disaster Management Centre (PDMC) on the preparation or amendment of its plan. According to Section 53 of the Disaster Management Act No.57 of 2002, each municipality must –

- Conduct a disaster risk assessment for its municipal area;
- Identify and map risks, areas, ecosystems, communities and households that are exposed or vulnerable to physical and human-induced threats;
- Prepare a disaster management plan; and
- Through appropriate mechanisms, processes and procedures established in terms of Chapter 4 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000), consult the local community on the preparation or amendment of its plan.

Although the WDM faces a broad range of disaster risks, it is not possible, given resource constraints, to address all potential threats at once. Effective Disaster Risk Management (DRM) planning by all municipal organs of state as well as other role-players requires careful identification of priority disaster risks

and the most vulnerable areas, communities and households to these risks. The process of identifying priority disaster risks is critically informed by the district Disaster Risk Assessment (DRA) findings.

While a wide range of different disaster events can occur at district municipality and municipal levels, they are relevant as a district Disaster Risk Management (DRM) planning priority only when a Disaster Risk Assessment (DRA) and/or ongoing risk monitoring processes indicate that:

- A specific disaster risk affects more than one local municipality or exceeds the capabilities of a single local municipality to manage it effectively;
- A disaster risk results in the same type of disaster event occurring repeatedly and at different times in more than one municipality with significant cumulative impacts on lives, property and the natural environment, but that are not necessarily classified as provincial disasters.

The assessed disaster risks must be prioritised, and the intolerably high disaster risks must have Disaster Risk Reduction Plans (DRRP's) designed for each one. Once the disaster risks have been mitigated to a tolerable level then Disaster Preparedness Programs (DPP's) can be designed for each of the risks.

TABLE 113: COMBINED PRIORITY HAZARDS FOR THE WDM IDENTIFIED DURING 2014 AND IN 2025/2026 WERE AS FOLLOWS:

2014 Priority Hazards	2025/26 Priority Hazards
Fires	Road Accidents
Road Accidents	Drought
Epidemics (HIV/AIDS)	Crime
Floods	Veld Fire
Crime	HIV/AIDS
Pollution (air, water)	Structural fire
Social (drugs, alcohol)	River floods
Drought	Severe thunderstorms

Waterberg District Disaster Risk Management

Road Accidents & Crime – While both are priority hazards, they do not qualify as disaster risks under the Disaster Management Act (DMA). However, Disaster Risk Reduction Plans (DRRP's) must be developed to mitigate their impact.

The Waterberg District Municipality Green Book Risk Profile Report identified these risks: Climate Hazards such as Drought, heat, wild/Veld fires, floods, severe thunderstorms and HIV/AIDS.

Disaster Risk Reduction Priorities – Focus must be given to:

- Strategic infrastructure & economic zones
- Fragile ecosystems vulnerable to disasters
- Communities exposed to extreme weather & social vulnerabilities
- Underserved rural and urban areas frequently affected by disasters
- Highly vulnerable households, including child-headed and elderly-led families

Challenges in Risk Profiling – Budget constraints prevented detailed risk assessments at ward-level, requiring urgent attention in future planning.

Capacity Shortages – The current disaster management system is critically under-resourced, facing:

Severe staff shortages across municipalities

Insufficient budgets

Lack of essential relief resources (food, shelters, hygiene packs)

Conclusion – To strengthen Waterberg District’s Disaster Management, immediate funding & resource interventions are needed to improve staffing, risk profiling, and emergency response capabilities.

TABLE 114: **MUNICIPAL PRIORITIZATION**

KPA	Summary by order of priority
Spatial	1. SDF Review 2. DMPT Coordination 3. GIS Maintenance
Social	1. Review of the Air Quality Management Plan 2. Review of the Disaster Management Plan 3. Rehabilitation of then Bela Bela Fire Station

Economic	1. SMME Development and Support 2. Tourism Development 3. Agricultural Development
Environment	1. Promulgation of ByLaws 2. Ambient Air Monitoring Station 3. Development of the Regional Land fill site
Infrastructure	1. intergrated WSDP for District 2. Intergrated ITP Review
Financial	Financial viability
Institutional	1. ICT Equipment 2. Pool Vehicles 3. Automation of PMS

CHAPTER 9 - STRATEGIC PHASE

TABLE 115: STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES OF WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY

KPA	Strategies objectives
Spatial Rationale	To coordinating spatial transformation.
Basic Service Delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.
Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development.
Financial Management & Viability	To effectively and efficiently manage finances and resource mobilisation.
Good Governance & Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems

Transformation & Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital
--	---

The Table below seeks to summarise departmental and stakeholders' presentations that painted the status quo of the District and its Local Municipalities in a form of prevailing challenges and mitigating circumstances against each National KPA.

TABLE 116: SUMMARY OF DEPARTMENTAL AND STAKEHOLDER PRESENTATIONS – CHALLENGES AND MITIGATION MEASURES PER NATIONAL KPA IN THE MUNICIPALITIES

KPA	CHALLENGE	STRATEGIES
Spatial Rationale	Dysfunctional spatial patterns	The SPLUM By-laws needs to be revised and customised
	Illegal occupation of land/ land invasion	Development of integrated Spatial Development Framework Formalisation of informal settlements to inform spatial hierarchy
Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Lack of funding and identifying new projects	Obtain licence to be a WSA Acquire rights to implement Rural Household Sanitation for the entire district
	Lack database for service providers	Procure O & M service providers as and when required (electrical maintenance, plumbing, air conditioners and civil work) Provision for implementation of O & M projects
	Excessive Overtime payment due to shortage of staff	Appointment of additional junior fire fighters using the amount budgeted for overtime
	The Social Development & Customer Care function is under capacitated	Review organisational structure and align to IDP. Match and place municipal officials according to competency levels.
	Lack of infrastructure to house the firefighting stations	Refurbish the donated fire station in Bela Bela Construction of a fire station in Thabazimbi
	Absence of By Laws to regulate core functions	Promulgation of firefighting, Municipal Health and Air Quality Management By Laws
	Office accommodation for EHP`s located in various local municipalities (excessive rental payment)	Engage local municipalities to accommodate EPHs operating within their jurisdiction
	Unlicensed landfill sites (full to capacity)	Development of the Regional Landfill site
Local Economic Development	Compromised quality services at the abattoir	Upgrading, Marketing & Public Private Partnership Alternatively Lease the abattoir
	Red tape and slow turnaround time from funding institutions	Establishment of a One stop shop
	Lack of public transport ranking facilities	Land acquisition and budget allocation by relevant authorities

KPA	CHALLENGE	STRATEGIES
Financial Viability and Management	Unable to raise own income because the district is not a water nor electricity service rendering municipality. The District Municipality remains grant dependent	Develop financial model that will encourage own income base Seek other sources of revenue to fund projects, especially fire fighting vehicles and related equipment. There is a need to diversify more sources of revenue.
	Alignment of 2025/26 Annual Budget captured on mSCOA version 6.2	mSCOA committees to meet regularly in order to address any challenges Timeous interaction with Munsoft to address any challenges
	Excessive personnel costs	Review and cost organisational structure to be proportional with to income Monitor personnel spending patterns Transfer excess personnel to support distressed Local Municipalities
	Poor audit status	Improve accountability through a proper consequence management
Good Governance and Public Participation	Dysfunctional IGR structures Poor participation of community members in the affairs of the municipality	Development of the IGR Protocol Framework document Reconfiguration of some IGR structures
	Poor participation of community members in the affairs of the municipality	Development of the Public Participation Strategy
	Lack of integrated planning	Systemic approach to integrated planning and monitoring of programmes
	Ward Committee Coordination	Capacity building programmes for ward committees to promote good governance at the local level
Municipal Transformation and organisational development	The organisational structure is not aligned to the IDP priorities	Review organisational structure and align to IDP. Match and place municipal officials according to competency levels.
	Lack of a system to track performance and recognise, reward and award incentives	Develop talent management strategy and automate performance management system

9.2 OPERATIONAL STRATEGIES

Strategy is about choice, which affects outcomes. The nature of the strategy adopted and implemented emerges from a combination of the structure of the organisation, the type of resources available and the strategic priorities being pursued. There is strategic consistency when the actions of an organisation are consistent with the expectations of the community. It is therefore critical that the identified strategies be linked to the different KPAs governing local government institutions. The following strategies have been identified to ensure the attainment of the identified outcomes and priorities within the WDM.



TABLE 117: **WDM 2026/2027 RESOLUTIONS IMPLEMENTATION ACTION PLAN**

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
KPA 1: Basic Services & Infrastructure Development						
1.	Infrastructure Development	Undertake feasibility study of catalytic projects with DBSA, DTIC & other Social Partners. Align projects with IDPs & SDGs	1.1. Identify all the Strategic Partners capable of supporting the District with undertaking Feasibility for all infrastructure related Catalytic Projects for WDM. (MT-S) 1.2. Monitor and report on status of the above Catalytic Projects. (MT-O) 1.3. Apply for CIP funding to support infrastructure needs across the District. (MT-S)	OTP, DBSA, DTIC, MISA, GTAC; Private sectors	Director: Infrastructure Development	30 June 2026 Quarterly (2026/7)
2.	Sector Plans Development/R review	Undertake a comprehensive review of sector plans (water, sanitation, and energy, waste, roads and stormwater).	2.1. Updated Sector Plans/strategies that address gaps and strengthen compliance.(MT-S)	OTP; CoGHSTA;ESKOM Municipalities;DWS etc	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing
3.	Infrastructure Grant Expenditure	All the 5 Local Municipalities to spend 100% of their Grant Allocations	3.1. Ensure optimal functionality of MIG , Energy, EPWP Forums for Agile project performance management (Project Score Card). (ST_O)	WDM Local Municipalities DWS, Dept of energy and electricity and ESKOM CoGHSTA Water Boards Implementing Agents	Director: Infrastructure Development	Monthly Quarterly



No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
4.	Devolution of D-Roads to WDM	Devolution of District Roads back to Waterberg District Municipality Challenges: a) Funding shortfalls if provincial transfers are inadequate. b) Capacity gaps in Waterberg's technical staff and equipment. c) Coordination issues between province, district, and SANRAL.	4.1. Facilitate discussions with both National and Provincial Departments of Transport towards devolution of D-Roads from Road Agency Limpopo (RAL) to WDM in adherence to applicable funding follow function Protocols. (LT-S) 4.2. Monitor and report on progress of devolution of D-Roads from RAL to WDM. (MT-O)	Provincial Department of Roads & Transport, National Department of Transport, CoGHSTA, WDM, RAL, Local Municipalities	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing
5.	Water Security & Resilience	Water Security across the district (Design Horizon 2045)	5.1. Coordinate all bulk water supply projects across the District (MCWAP2, North Eastern Bulk water supply, OMM bulk water supply from Flag Boshielo Dam. (LT-S)	LNW, DWS, Traditional leader Matlala), CoGTA, MLM and WDM, Badirammogo	Director: Infrastructure Development	2026-2028
6.	Water Security & Resilience	Coordinate collaborative response to all the water related challenges across the District, with the primary view of ensuring seamless access to water amongst all communities.	6.1. Establish the District Water Crisis Committee.(ST-S) 6.2. Coordinate the Launch and Support functionality of Water War Rooms from all the 5 LMs.(ST-S)	PMT+1, DWS, CoGHSTA, Local municipalities, Traditional leaders, ESKOM, Water boards, Water user associations, Farmers association (irrigation board)	Director: Infrastructure Development	June 2026
7.	Water Security & Resilience	Enhance monitoring and reporting of drinking water quality standards. Catalytic Impact: Safeguards public health and builds trust in municipal service delivery. Unlock partnerships with national departments, private sector (e.g., SANTUM), and communities.	7.1. Monitor and report on Implementation of corrective measures (corrective action plan) in municipalities with non-compliance.(ST-S)	DWS; CoGHSTA, Local Municipalities; Water Boards, water user association, ESKOM, mining houses.	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
8.	Air Quality Monitoring & EMU	Strengthen organizational capacity in environmental governance, ensure compliance with applicable legislation, and advance sustainable development practices. The intervention will also enhance the District capabilities in the following areas: Air Quality, Waste Management, Biodiversity Conservation, and Climate Change.	8.1. Establishment of an Environmental Management Unit (EMU) within the permanent staff establishment of the District. (ST-S) 8.2. Appoint a Senior Environment Officer: who shall oversee air quality, waste management, biodiversity conservation, and climate change initiatives, ensuring compliance with environmental legislation and advancing sustainability goals. (ST-O).	WDM, LEDET, other Stakeholders	Director SDCS	30 May 2026 30/06/2027
9.	Environmental Protection	Sewerage spillages are one of the biggest threats to underground water quality, since untreated effluent can introduce pathogens, nitrates, and heavy metals into aquifers.	9.1. Monitor and report on effective operations of Waste Water Treatment Works and Water Treatment Works to improve the Blue Drop and Green Drop status. (ST-S)	DWS, DFFE, LEDET, CoGHSTA; LMs	Director: Infrastructure Development	30/06/26
10.	Waste Management	Ensure proficient disposal of Medical Waste in line with the applicable Legislation	10.1. Feasibility study for establishment of a District Medical waste disposal facility. (LT-S)	LEDET, Department of Health, etc	Director SDCS	30 October 2026
11.	Fire Services	- Large geographic coverage area with dispersed settlements with long emergency response distances. - Limited number of fire stations across a large geographic district.	11.1. Engage Social Partners for Technical and Financial support towards construction of small satellite fire stations (Thabazimbi, Northam, Vaal water, Pienaarsriver) to respond to fire events within 15 minutes.(MT-S)	Santam, Working on fire DFFE, Mining Houses, neighbouring municipalities and districts, Eskom Matimba & Medupi Power Stations, Grooteegeluk Coal Mine, Valterra Mine	Director SDCS Municipal Manager	Ongoing

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
			11.2. Enter into Memorandum of Agreements (MoUs) with varying Strategic Partners.(MT-O)			
12.	Disaster Management Early Warning & Preparedness	Immediate commencement of emergency proactive maintenance on storm water infrastructure and the clearance of debris from natural waterways to mitigate the risk of flooding and damage to municipal assets following the South African Weather Service (SAWS) Impact –Based Warning System for Waterberg Region. These weather patterns pose a direct threat to municipal infrastructure, particularly where drainage systems may be compromised by debris or lack of maintenance.	12.1. Issue Advisory to all Local municipalities in Waterberg District to implement the following proactive measures under the Waterberg District Disaster Risk Management Plan. (MT-S) ➤ Storm water & Waterway Clearance – immediate cleaning of all storm water channels; ➤ River & Stream Maintenance – identify & remove large debris blocking natural watercourses ➤ Infrastructure Vulnerability Checks ➤ Public Awareness: launch a “Clean Our Waterways” campaign to discourage illegal dumping into storm water drains.	SAWS PDMC- COGHSTA Public Works DFFE All LMs in WDM	MM MSDCS & MID	31/08/26
13.	Disaster Management Early Warning & Preparedness	Prioritize interventions in areas with the highest risk or need to enable targeted resource allocation and evidence-based planning.	13.1. Map and identify service delivery and environmental hotspots across the district.(ST-O)	SAWS PDMC- COGHSTA Public Works DFFE All LMs in WDM	MSDCS	31/09/26

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
KPA 2: Local Economic Development, Economic Growth and Job Creation						
14.	Economic Growth and Job Creation	Leverage DDM imperatives to galvanise varying Strategic Stakeholders to collaborate on various areas aimed at unlocking the District Economy, with particular emphasis on amongst others the following: a) Skills Development; b) Agro-processing; c) Renewable Energy; d) Tourism Development; Electric Car Manufacturing Plant etc	14.1. Facilitate an engagement with the Minister of Higher Education and CEOs of varying SETAs and TVETs with footprint in the District. (ST-S) 14.2. Facilitate and convene an engagement with Minister of Tourism on varying Tourism Development related matters across the District, including the collection and use of Tourism Levy. (ST-S) 14.3. Facilitate and convene an engagement with Ministers of DTIC, DMPR and DEE on opportunities around Electric Vehicle manufacturing plant considering mineral endowed within the District. (ST-S)	Lead by both National and Provincial DDM Champions. Department of Higher Education & SETA, TVETs; Department of Tourism, Tourism SA, TOMSA, DMPR, DTIC, LEDET, LTA, Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Council (ARC); PMTs etc	Director PED	Ongoing
15.	Economic growth and job creation	WDM – SABC Film Studio Catalytic Project Facilitation. Municipalities should formally consider participation in the investment initiative. Engage in cost-sharing partnerships to secure hosting rights.	15.1. Convene stakeholder plenary meeting with DTIC & Develop a business case. (ST-S) 15.2. Identify land or infrastructure sites suitable for studio development.(MT-S) 15.3. Collaborate with Limpopo Tourism Agency to leverage productions for tourism promotion.(MT-S) 15.4. Encourage local artists, youth, and women to participate in training and creative opportunities.(LT-S)	SABC, DTIC, LTA, Municipal CFOs & LED Managers and other Social Partners	Director PED	16 April 2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
16.	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Resuscitation of the Waterberg Development Agency as a strategic implementer of high impact Economic Growth and Job Creation interventions across the District.	16.1. Appointment of an Economic Advisory Council to oversee the resuscitation of the agency. (ST-S) 16.2. Development, implementation and progress reporting on the Development Agency Roadmap.(MT-O)	IDC, DTIC, DBSA, NT/PT, LEDA etc.	Director PED	30 th June 2026
17.	Economic Growth & Job Creation	District Wide Business Registration Data	17.1. Consolidation and Submission of Business Registration Reports/Data by LMs to the District on a quarterly basis.(ST-S).	All the 5 Local Municipalities	Director PED	31 st March 2026 (Continuous)
18.	Economic Growth & Job Creation-Investment promotion & facilitation	Solicit collaborations from private sector & social partners to facilitate an investment summit	18.1. Convene District Investment Summit.(ST-S) 18.2. Progressively monitor and report on implementation progress and impact of Investment Summit Commitments. (MT-O)	Waterberg Chamber of Commerce, Mining Companies, & other strategic partners/Investors	Director PED	30 October 2026 Ongoing
19.	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Facilitation of a District Mining Indaba	19.1. Convene a District Mining Indaba (ST-S).	DMPR, LEDET, DSBD & Social Partners	Director PED	29 May 2026
20.	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Facilitation of Economic Empowerment Road Shows/ Workshops	20.1. LED Units to work with DTIC & other government funding agencies to raise awareness among local businesses about business support incentive programmes.(ST-O)	LMs, DTIC, IDC, LEDET, Provincial Treasury & other government funding institutions	Director PED	30 September 2026
21.	Abattoir Business Case	RFPs for abattoir leasing/ Enhance economic activity through leasing of abattoir facilities to private operators.	21.1. Issue RFPs to attract partnership of interested parties towards enhanced business case of the Abattoir Facility.(ST-S). 21.2. Monitor compliance with food safety and economic development objectives as	WDM, Local Farmers, Dept of Agriculture, Agribusinesses, Private Sector Investors.	Director PED Director MSDCS	30 June 2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
			per Legislative prescripts. (ST-S)			
KPA 3: Good Governance and Public Participation						
22.	Intergovernmental Relations	Poor attendance of IGR structures due to limited intragovernmental collaboration. This poor attendance also have a negative impact on the DDM imperatives since these are the Structures tasked with implementation thereof.	22.1. Develop and communicate Annual Schedule with all the 5 LMs and Sector Departments for incorporation in their respective Calendar of events to enhance optimal participation of all Councillors and Officials.(ST-O) 22.2. MMs to ensure IGR attendance is incorporated as part of the KPIs in the Performance contracts of Senior Managers. (MT_S) 22.3. Prepare and submit a Quarterly Report on functionality of the IGRs Structures to both Council and the MEC Coghsta.(ST_O)	OTP; CoGHSTA, PMTs; MMs etc	COO ES	30 March 2026 30 June 2026
23.	Local Government Election Readiness	Leading to the 2026 Local Government Elections coherence of Government messaging collectively in the District will be imperative so as to minimise any form of misinformation to the citizens	23.1. Develop an integrated District wide Communication approach to be used and adhered to by Government as a whole as a Standing Item in the Mayors' Forum. (MT-S).	IEC; MDB; StatsSA; OTP; Sector Departments; SALGA; SAPS; SSA and Private Sector.	COO ES	30 April 2026
KPA 4: Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development						

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		particularly in the mining and agricultural sector.				
27.	Revenue Enhancement – LMs Support to WDM	That all local municipalities within the Waterberg District be engaged to consider supporting the sustainability of the WDM with allocation of an annual contribution of 2% of total budget to the District Municipality, effective 1 July 2026, for a period of 24 months as a start, to support the provision of municipal health services, fire and rescue services, and disaster management.	27.1. Engage with all 5 Local Municipalities through District IGR to consider making provision in the 2026/2027 budget of 2% of total budget towards the District for the provision of Disaster Management, Fire & Rescue Services as well as Municipal Health Services.(MT-S)	Local Municipalities, COGHSTA National Treasury CoGTA SALGA Limpopo Provisional Treasury PED, LEDET	CFO/Municipal Manager	31 March 2027 2026/2027
28.		The District and Traditional Authorities share a common goal: ensuring that every family has a safe place to build a home. To prevent future tragedies involving house collapses, drowning and property loss, we are proposing a collaborative process for land allocation. Update a list of Waterberg environmental sensitive areas	28.1. Stakeholder Engagement: The District shall formally engage all Traditional Leaders within its jurisdiction to establish a collaborative framework. This engagement will emphasize that no new residential sites should be allocated in areas identified as flood-prone or environmentally sensitive. 28.2. Mandatory consultation with Town Planning on land allocation in flood-prone and environmentally sensitive areas. All Traditional Authorities are requested and encouraged to submit site allocation plans to the Department of Development Planning for a technical "suitability assessment"	DFFE CoGHSTA	Director PED	

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
			prior to the finalization of any land grant.			
29.	Disaster Management Funding	Building Back Better(Resilience) <i>Ensuring that all new infrastructure projects (roads, bridges) undergo a "Disaster Risk Assessment "before approval.</i>	29.1. All new infrastructure projects(roads, bridges in Waterberg) undergo a disaster risk assessment before approval. MT-S	COGHSTA MISA DWS	Director MSDCS	Ongoing
30.	Disaster Management Funding	Waterberg District Municipality has adopted mandatory disaster risk assessments for all new infrastructure projects, including roads and bridges, in line with the Disaster Management Act (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Management Framework (2005) . However, current funding mechanisms from the national fiscus and conditional grants prioritize cost efficiency and delivery speed over resilience.	30.1. Lobby and submit a proposal to both the Limpopo PT and National Treasury during the FRP process to consider amongst others: ➤ Adopt resilience scoring as a funding criterion. ➤ Amend grant guidelines to include conditional resilience compliance. ➤ Establish a National Resilience Fund for climate adaptation in infrastructure. ➤ Pilot the framework in Waterberg District Municipality before scaling nationally. (LT-S)	National Treasury; COGTA; Provincial Treasury; CoGHSTA; etc	Director MSDCS	Ongoing
31.	Revenue Enhancement Solutions	The strategy focuses on four high-impact areas: • Fire & Rescue: Monthly Fire Safety Levies for high-risk industrial/commercial	31.1. To contribute to the WDM's financial health, we propose shifting from a "free service" model to a "service recovery" model. (MT-S)		MSDCS CFO	30/06/27

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		zones and standby fees for private events. - Municipal Health (MHS): Tiered pricing for <i>Certificates of Acceptability</i> (COA) and mandatory annual health inspections. - Environmental Management: Administrative fines for illegal dumping and processing fees for Atmospheric Emission Licenses (AEL). - Disaster Management: aggressive pursuit of Climate Adaptation Grants.	Phase 1 (Q1): Review & gazette updated Tariff Bylaws to ensure legal backing for new fees. Phase 2 (Q2): Integrate Departmental "Job Cards" and "Inspection Reports" with the Municipal Billing System. Phase 3 (Q3): Launch a public awareness campaign on "Paying for Safety" to reduce community pushback.			
32.	Improved Audit Outcomes	Develop and maintain "Operation Clean Audit" programme to achieve clean audits within 3 years	32.1. WDM to facilitate and develop a comprehensive District wide clean audit strategy.(ST-S).	PMTs+1; OTP, CoGHSTA, PT; SALGA; AGSA etc.	CFO	30 June 2026
33.	Financial Recovery plan	Optimal cooperation and active participation in the development and implementation of the Financial Recovery Plan by National Treasury	33.1. Report on the progress of development and implementation of Waterberg Financial Recovery Plan(MT-S)	PMT+1; National Treasury FRP Unit, Provincial Treasury, Appointed SP	CFO	Ongoing
34.	Funding of the Budget	Responding to unfunded budget. To secure a sustainable, predictable and fair revenue stream that empowers the municipality to fulfill its constitutional mandates without compromising its financial viability.	34.1. Continue to engage both National Treasury and COGTA through Sister Provincial Departments and DDM Political Champions with a view of LGES increase pending the finalization of Local Government funding Formula. (MT-S)	CoGHSTA, LPT, CoGTA, NT DDM Champions	CFO	30/09/26
35.	Revenue enhancement	Ensure incorporation of all the tariffs in relation to the functions performed	35.1. Compile, Table and implement comprehensive tariff book(LT-S)	All WDM Directors, Council, NT , PT and SALGA	CFO	30/06/2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		the District consistent with promulgated by-laws Cost effective tariffs				
KPA 6: Spatial Rational and Integrated Human Settlements						
36.	Integrated Planning	Culminating from developmental issues raised by communities during the Analysis Phase of the IDP. Incorporate all responsive programmes/projects from Sector Departments and Private Sector in the IDPs of all Municipalities.	36.1. All Programmes/Projects from Sector Departments and Private Sector incorporated in the respective Municipal 2026/27 IDPs. (ST-S) 36.2. Continue to improve the quality and preventability of IDPs across the District. (LT-S) 36.3. Explore the use of technology amongst other mechanisms to improve public participation in the IDP processes by varying Stakeholders. (MT-S)	OTP; CoGHSTA; All Sector Departments; Municipal Councils; Municipal Managers	COO SP and M&E	30 May 2026
37.	Integrated Planning	Prioritise the Review & Development of strategic planning documents/IDP Sector Plans (LED Strategy, SDF, Climate Change Response Strategy, ITP, GIS Strategy)	37.1. Mobilise support & collaboration with relevant Sector Departments and Private Sector to develop/review varying Sector Plans(MT-S)	Dept of Transport and Community Safety, CoGTA, CoGHSTA, DFFE, LEDET, DLRRD, Mining Houses	Director PED	30 June 2027
38.	Integrated Planning	Maximum successes realization of the DDM One Plan implementation	38.1. Development of DDM One Plan monitoring & evaluation systems. (ST-	OTP, COGTA, COGHSTA	COO ST and M & E	30 June 2026



No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
39.	Informal Settlements Upgrading	Ensure the formalization or, where necessary, humane relocation of informal settlements to guarantee access to basic services, minimize disaster risks, safeguard property, and protect lives through integrated drainage, waste management, and environmental health systems.	39.1. Liaise with CoGHSTA to update and share a list of all informal settlements per Local Municipality in Waterberg. (MT-S) 39.2. Engage all affected LM to provide strategies with specific timelines on their plan of action to relocate especially those in environmentally sensitive areas. (MT-S) 39.3. Monitor and report on enforcement of Municipal By-Laws regarding illegal occupation of land across the District (MT-O)	CoGHSTA HDA All LMs in WDM	Director PED	30/06/27
40.	Spatial Planning	Ascertain land ownership across the District	40.1. Conduct a comprehensive land audit for development purpose & municipal revenue generation (MT-S)	COGHSTA, DLRRD	Director PED	30 June 2027
41.	Transport Planning	Progressively review the Staff establishment to enhance the Public Transport Planning capabilities of the District	41.1. Undertake cost benefit analysis towards establishment Public Transport Planning Unit. (MT-S)	Dept of Transport and Community Safety,	Director PED	30 June 2027

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Spatial Development	Conduct a district-wide land audit	Conduct District Wide Land Audit	Appointment of Service Provider Develop the Land Audit Report	Implementation	Implementation
	Municipalities to initiate the process of transferring the ownership of	Initiate a processes of transferring the ownership of national and provincial Land to WDM		Engagement and transferring land with	Engagement and transferring land with

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

	land from national and province to the WDM			the Relevant Department	the Relevant Department
	Engage mining houses to look into the possibility of them availing under-utilized land they own for possible development programs and projects.	Engage mining house on unutilized land for development programme and projects	Engage Mining House	Project & Programme Implementation	Project & Programme Implementation
	Ensure that there is integrated and functional district-wide GIS	District to develop intergraded and functional District wide GIS	Engage DBSA and COGTA to assist with the functional District Wide GIS	Implementation of District wide GIS	Implementation of District wide GIS
	Consider the development of Social Housing Guidelines and the potential of a District Housing Agency at a district level should be explored	District to consider the development of social housing guidelines and potential of a District Housing Agency at District level	Development of Feasibility Study	Implementation	Implementation
	The Waterberg District Municipality Council needs to engage the Land Claims Commissioner to fast track the land claims process in order to support with the following: •Formalising informal settlements •Rural development programmes •Land for infrastructure and economic development	WDM engage land claim commission to speed up land claims in the District to assist in formalizing informal settlement, Rural development and land for infrastructure development.	Engage the Land Claim Commission	Implementation of the projects	Implementation of the projects
	Plan for and engage the relevant parties to make the case for the devolution of functions to the district municipality: •district roads •human settlements and housing delivery •bulk infrastructure; i.e. water & sanitation, energy, telecommunications infrastructure •Transport planning and transport services; buses, taxis etc	Engage relevant authorities to transfer the following function to the District 1 District roads 2 Human settlement and housing 3 Bulk Infrastructure Water & sanitation Energy and telecommunication - Transport planning	Engage the Relevant Authorities	Implementation	Implementation

	Resuscitate the smart city development in WDM	Resuscitate the Smart City development in Waterberg	Appointment of Service provider to develop feasibility study	Implementation	Implementation
	Improved utilisation of open spaces and beatification of towns	Improve utilization of open spaces and beatification of towns	Appointment of Service provider to develop feasibility study	Implementation	Implementation

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Invest in Human Capital – Training All EHPs in Environmental Management Inspectorate	To ensure that there is adequate capacity to deal with incidents, emergencies and disasters	Filing up of all available budgeted posts	The ratio of EHP's per community to be adhered to (shortage as per WHO 1: 10 000=39)(shortage as per National Norm 1: 15000=16) Compliance with SANS 10090	The ratio of EHP's per community to be adhered to (shortage as per WHO 1: 10 000=39)(shortage as per National Norm 1: 15000=16) Compliance with SANS 10090
	Enforcement of Polluter Pay Principle.	To establish preparedness, prevention, adaptation and mitigation strategies as the focus of all the units of SDCS;	Availing of required resources Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders	Availing of required resources Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders	Continuous education campaigns to the communities and all stakeholders
	Speed up Finalisation of Bylaws for enforcement purposes	Intensify training of EHP on environment management inspections	Recruitment and training of EHP's in disease outbreak prone areas. Procurement of portable less complex and affordable equipments.	Assessment and planning of monitoring networks.	Assessment and planning of monitoring networks.
	Prioritise Review of Air Quality Management Plan, Integrated Waste	Finalize bylaws for enforcement purposes.	Capacity of air quality management.	Development of climate change adaptations and mitigation strategies;	Campaigns on adaptations and mitigating strategies

Management Plan and Environmental Framework,			<i>WDM Local Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan – A Green Economy Approach</i>	
The Municipality should consider appointing additional EHPs in line with the regulations and World Health Organisation standards.	Review of Air Quality Management Plan, Integrated Waste Management Plan and Environmental Framework	Developing Regional Landfill site. Enforce compliance on air polluters for revenue enhancement	WDM to appoint more EHP as per regulation and WHO standards.	Enforce compliance on air polluters for revenue enhancement
Make provision for dedicated budget for Disaster Centres and Fire Stations.	Conducting Public Education. Finalisation of standard operating procedures(SOP's). Finalization of By-laws. Delicate budget for Fire Services.	Procurement of loose equipment & tools to 6 stations. To comply with National Fire Codes and Standards(SANS 10090) in terms of personnel	Procurement of 3x 6000L water tenders/tankers. Procurement of 4x Rapid Intervention Vehicles(RIV)	Building of three bay Fire Stations in Thabazimbi and Mookgophong. Building of satellite Fire Stations in Northam, Rebene, Vaalwater, Pienaarsrivier, Steenbokpan/Bulgerivier, Witpoort.
Speed up the process of developing the Regional Landfill Site.	Intensification of public awareness and campaigns	Establishment, raining and utilisation of Volunteer unit	Delicate budget for Disaster Management	Intensification of public awareness and campaigns
Identify five impactful Catalytic Infrastructure Projects	Lack of intergraded bulk water	WDM develop compressive water service development plan	Implement the plan	Implement the plan
Engage Private Sector in funding Catalytic Projects.	Lack of alternative source of energy	Waterberg District Municipality develop Energy master plan and identify catalytic project	Implement the plan	Implement the plan
Priotise budgeting for Operations and Maintenance.	No waste management projects and lack of review of Integrated waste plan	All Municipalities develop budget for waste management and review of waste management plan	Implementation of waste management plan	Implementation of waste management plan

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Local Economic Development	Municipalities should enter into MOU arrangements with the Department of Small Business Development to avail under-utilised infrastructure/buildings to the department to be utilised by youth SMMEs for manufacturing purposes.				
	Prioritise Review/Development of LED strategies District Wide	LED Coordination: Review/Development of District Wide LED Strategies	Source funding	Develop/review 2 LED Strategies	Develop/Review 2 LED Strategies
	Establishment of the District SMME Coordinating Council through SEDA in partnership with municipalities				
	Consider the feasibility of the development of a dry port/ logistic hub opportunity within the district, particularly Modimolle – as a long term plan through the One Plan (DDM).				

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Financial Management & Viability	Explore the outdoor advertisement potential as a revenue generation mechanism	Explore outdoor advertisement potential as revenue generation mechanism	Develop advertise strategy	Implementation of advertise strategy	Implementation of advertise strategy
	Effective management of indigent register	Develop effective management of indigent register	Develop building programme Capacity local Municipalities	Local municipalities to implement strategy to review their indigents registers	Local municipalities to implement strategy to review their indigents registers
	Improve revenue management and collection				

	Consider the implementation of shared services for governance committees such as Risk and Audit Committees where applicable.	Explore possibilities of share services for governance committees such as Risk and Audit committees	Engage Local Municipalities on share services and signed MOU	Implementation of the MOU	-
	Reduce unavoidable use of consultants, particularly where municipalities have capacity	Develop strategy to capacitate BTO for preparation of Financial Statements	Development of the strategy to capacitate BTO	Implementation of the strategy	-
		Develop plan to phase out Consultants in the preparation of FS.	Coordinate summit with all Local Municipalities to develop strategy using Waterberg as benchmarking	Implementation of summit resolution starting in house FS preparation by all Local Municipalities	Implementation of summit resolution starting in house FS preparation by all Local Municipalities
		Unfunded mandate for Municipal Health and Fire Fighting Services	Establish internal term to develop Concept document that will entail financial implications to be presented to National Treasury and COGTA	Engage with National treasury and COGTA	-

KPA	Resolution	Programme/ Project	STRATEGIES		
			Short term - 1-2 Years	Medium term - 2-3 Years	Long term - 3-5 Years
Municipal Transformation & Organizational Development	Advocating for digitalisation of local government operations and services	Municipality to immigrate to digitalization of its operation and services	Develop strategy for digitalization	Implement strategy	Implement strategy
	Cascading of Performance Management System to beyond the Section 56 managers	Cascading PMS to lower positions to enhance performance	Develop strategy for different options and method	Implement the strategy	-
	Develop skills development programmes that support the new economy (inclusive of industry 4.0/4IR) that encompass municipal employees and community members	Develop District wide skills development programme that is responsive to current economic needs. Eg Mining and Agricultural skills	Conduct visibility study about current status quo of Waterberg. Conduct District wide skills audit	Conduct District wide skills Audit for all local municipalities	-
	Explore the possibility of managing the output of employee rather than time	Utilization of consultants to compliment the capacity of the municipalities			

	Use of consultants strategically to complement the capacity of municipalities				
	Support and participate in the provincial broadband network programmes.	Support and participate in the Provincial Broadband network programmes	Develop strategy for different options available	Implement the best practice	-
	Strengthen the information and records management capability within the district and local municipalities	Strengthen and improve information and record management capacity within WDM and Local Municipalities	Develop strategy on various options and conduct research on best practise	Implement strategy	Implement strategy

9.3 DEVELOPMENTAL STRATEGIES AND STRATEGIC ALIGNMENT

It is a requirement that in developing a municipal integrated development plan, its strategies must be aligned to those of other spheres of government. In the language of the IDP, it is about horizontal and vertical alignment.

NDP/MTSF	LDP	WDM OBJECTIVES
Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life (NDP Chapter 8)	OUTCOME 8: Human Settlement Development: Limpopo will create functionally integrated, balanced and vibrant urban settlement through usage of all spatial planning instruments	Enforcement of SPLUMA and Implementation of spatial planning and land use polices i.e. SDF, LUMS, EMF etc.
Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources (NDP Chapter 5)	OUTCOME 10: Environmental Protection: Limpopo to transit to an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low carbon economy and just society will be well under way	Implementation of Environmental Management Plan , ICLEI LAB Wetland Programmes- Rehabilitation of wetlands, land care management, Waterberg Biosphere Management Plan
Create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world (NDP Chapter 7)	OUTCOME 11: Regional Integration: Collaborate with developed economies [neighbouring countries or across Provinces] for increased access to markets and resources by various industrial sectors in the province	Benchmarking, best practices, investing in Waterberg: inward and outward missions, export awareness programmes, market access linkages

NDP/MTSF	LDP	B2B	WDM OBJECTIVES
----------	-----	-----	----------------

A long and healthy life for all (NDP Chapter 10)	OUTCOME 2: Long and Healthy Life: Limpopo must provide primary health care to reduce mortality rates, filling of critical posts and enhancing health information systems	Putting people first. Delivering Municipal services – (basic services)	Some of the causes of deaths in Waterberg-diarrhoeal diseases (in children), poor sanitation conditions, unsafe water, etc Outbreak of diseases is also a concern-hence Environmental Health – Water quality monitoring, food safety & control. First line of defence against communicable diseases-control & monitor, prevent further occurrences MHS- Strengthening health System effectively Empowering of communities through awareness campaign
Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources (NDP Chapter 5)	OUTCOME 10: Environmental Protection: Limpopo to transit to an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low carbon economy and just society will be well under way	Putting people first. Delivering Municipal services – (basic services)	WDM due to the various mining industries, is a producer of greenhouse gases. Environmental challenges to be addressed in the 3 identified hotspots. WDMAQMP-emission inventory compiled for monitoring Integrated Waste Management Plan - will guide in monitoring of waste management system in the locals
An efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network (NDP Chapter 4)	OUTCOME 6: Competitive Economic Infrastructure: Limpopo needs to invest in a network of economic infrastructure designed to support medium and long term economic objectives. The focus should be on road network, rail network, ICT Broadband, energy, bulk water infrastructure	Delivering Basic Services	Development of infrastructure plan to guide on implementation of infrastructure projects to address the backlogs

NDP/MTSF	LDP	WDM OBJECTIVES
Decent employment through inclusive economic growth (NDP Chapter 3)	OUTCOME 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth: Dealing with challenges of unemployment, inequality and creating a more inclusive society. Implementation of the NGP and IPAP, Limpopo Industrial Master Plan, Green Economy Plan to create jobs and grow the economy	Jobs created through local economic development initiatives: Implementation of the District LED Strategy, Sustainability of Business Development Forum, continued implementation of the CWP Programme and EPWP, ICLEI LAB Wetlands Programme, implementation of Agri-park, sustainability of SPP.
Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing to food security for all (NDP Chapter 6)	OUTCOME 7: Comprehensive Rural Development: Limpopo will have rural areas which are spatially, socially and economically integrated and where there is potential for economic growth, food security and jobs as a result of agrarian transformation and infrastructure development	Job Creation & Food security: implementation of the Agri-park Programme, Capacity Building Programmes for Emerging Farmers and Land reform



NDP/MTSF	LDP	B2B	WDM OBJECTIVES
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities	To effectively manage and improve financial sustainability A clean , accountable , transparent , responsive, effective and efficient Municipal financial management system
An efficient, effective and development oriented public service (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 12: Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated provincial institutions with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services.	Sound Institutional and Administrative capabilities	Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated municipalities with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services
A long and healthy life for all (NDP Chapter 10)	OUTCOME 2: Long and Healthy Life: Limpopo must provide primary health care to reduce mortality rates, filling of critical posts and enhancing health information systems	Delivering Municipal Services	Quality Health Care for all: The district must ensure provision of quality health care for all within its jurisdiction Advocate the application of 5km radius in terms of providing health care services
All people in South Africa are and feel safe (NDP Chapters 12 and 14)	OUTCOME 3: All People are Safe: People living in Limpopo must feel safe at home, at school, at work and enjoy community life without fear.	Putting people first	Community safety: Municipalities in Waterberg District to conduct safety audits and develop community safety plan
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance.	Ensuring Good governance	To develop & implement integrated management & governance system
An efficient, effective and development oriented public service (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 12: Developmental Public Service: Need for well run and effectively coordinated provincial institutions with skilled public servants who are committed and capable of delivering high quality services	Putting people first	To empower the community and instill the sense of ownership for development

Decent employment through inclusive economic growth (NDP Chapter 3)	OUTCOME 4: Decent employment through inclusive growth: Dealing with challenges of unemployment, inequality and creating a more inclusive society. Implementation of the NGP and IPAP, Limpopo Industrial Master Plan, Green Economy Plan to create jobs and grow the economy.	Building capable local government	To develop attract and retain best human capital
Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path (NDP Chapter 9)	OUTCOME 5: Skilled and Capable workforce: Limpopo will have access to education and training of the highest quality. The education, training and innovation systems should produce highly skilled labour force. R&D should be expanded.	Building a capable local government.	To develop attract and retain best human capital
Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system (NDP Chapter 13)	OUTCOME 9: Developmental Local Government: Limpopo will enforce a developmental local government that is accountable, focused on citizen's priorities and capable of delivering high quality services consistently and sustainably through cooperative governance.	Good governance	To develop and implement integrated management and governance system

9.4 2025/26 STRATEGIC PLANNING RESOLUTION

Infrastructure as Enabler of development toward sustainable communities	➤ DWS to capacitate municipalities for the development and updating of the WSDP. ➤ DWS to assist municipalities in developing and implementing action plans to improve the Blue and Green drop ratings. ➤ Sector departments to assist municipalities in ensuring that O & M budget is ring fenced within the MFMA prescripts. ➤ Provision of resources for the Construction of a District Water Laboratory. ➤ Encourage Public Private Partnership for funding for infrastructure projects.
Creating Safer, Healthy, Habitable and Cohesive District to harness sustainable livelihoods	➤ Review of Integrated Waste Management Plan, Review of Air Quality Management Plan and Review of District Disaster Management Plan. ➤ Implementation of Reservist policy ➤ Appointment of Senior Environmental and Air Quality Officer X1 ➤ Environmental Management Officer x 1 ➤ WDM to negotiate the donation of land to build offices and Fire stations which will save costs in future/Long Term ➤ MOUs be entered into with Neighbouring District, Business Partners and Learning Institutions ➤ MOUs be entered into with High Learning Institutions/Universities ➤ Appointment of new disaster Management Coordinators

Finance Viability	➤ Moratorium on non service delivery expenditure and Costs containment measures ➤ Costs reflective tariffs (Trade licences, Fire fighting, Abattoir, Water testing laboratories, water, electricity and refuse) ➤ Review and increase Review Sale of Redundant equipment ➤ Revision and implementation of revenue enhancement strategy ➤ Introduction and revision of policies and By-laws that bring about additional revenue ➤ Capacity building through training and multiskilling of employees ➤ Legislative amendments (Sec 118 MSA and sec 10 schedule 2 MSA) ➤ Audit turn around strategy for the WDM
Good Corporate Governance	➤ Source and solicit grant funding in line with the District Powers and Functions. ➤ That a District wide skills audit be conducted. ➤ District wide application for identified skill shortage/gaps(employed and unemployed) be submitted to LGSETA to source funding through Discretionary Grant. ➤ SALGA and CoGHSTA to assist municipalities in the finalisation of the Task Job Evaluation Process. ➤ Introduction of Seamless intra-reporting between all municipal ICT systems and performance monitoring. ➤ Municipalities sign MOU on provision of support through secondment and possible transfer of staff(both technical and administrative) ➤ A partnership with Higher Learning Institutions be explored to develop tailor-made training/intervention programs. ➤ Leveraging technology to improve efficiency and effectiveness across the District through digitalisation of recruitment, record management, case management, fleet management including a common financial system for the district
Enabling Spatial Transformation and nature based solutions, thereby unlocking Land potential for sustainable\development	➤ Development of Tariff Bylaws for Spatial Planning and Land Use Applications ➤ ALL municipalities are encouraged to join the district planning tribunal. ➤ Municipalities to invoice the Department of Land Reform



9.4 FIVE YEAR DISTRICT WIDE STRATEGIC OUTCOMES & TARGETS

DEVELOPMENTAL PRIORITY	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE	KPA	STRATEGIC OUTCOME	PERFORMANCE INDICATORS	BASE-LINE	2021/22	2022/23	2023/2024	2024/2025	2025/2026
Integrated planning	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	SR	Alignment	Number of highly rated IDPs	6	6	6	6	6	6
				Percentage of Alignment of Budget & IDP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of SDF & land Use Management system developed & approved in line with the SPLUMA	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Bulk infrastructure	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for provision and access to services	BSD	Quality service delivery	Percentage of households with access to basic level of water	94%	95%	96%	96%	96%	96%
				Percentage of households with access to electricity	87%	88%	89%	90%	90%	90%
				Percentage of households with access to solid waste	48%	50%	50%	50%	60	65%
				Percentage of households with access to basic level of sanitation	86%	88%	90%	90%	90%	90%
				Number of municipalities which achieved blue drop status	1	4	5	5	5	5
				Number of municipalities which achieved green drop status	1	4	5	5	5	5
				Percentage of electricity saved	4%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
Project management				Percentage of municipalities' budget	50%	65%	70%	80%	80%	80%

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

				actually spent of capital projects						
			Quality service delivery	Percentage of municipality's budget spent on maintenance of infrastructure	4%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
	To ensure optimal utilization and adherence to space economy	LED	Job creation	Number of Jobs created through LED initiatives	538	700	750	800	900	1000
				Percentage of LED strategy aligned to the Provincial & National LED strategy/framework	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Number of Jobs created through EPWP	320	400	500	600	700	800
				Number of green projects initiated	0	6	6	6	6	6
				Number of cooperatives supported	60	70	80	90	100	120
Financial Management	To effectively manage finances and improve financial sustainability	FVM	Improved revenue	Number of municipalities whose debt collection exceeds 80%	2	4	5	5	5	5
				Percentage of cost coverage	28%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
			Expenditure management	Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	9%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
				Percentage of Capital budget variance in terms of SDBIP	8%	10%	10%	10%	10%	10%
		FVM	Budget and reporting	Percentage of Adjustments budget submitted within timeframe	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Timeous submission of Annual Financial Statements	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%

		FVM	Management	Number of municipalities which participate in an integrated financial system	2	3	5	5	5	5
Community awareness		GGPP	Improved Community involvement	Number of functional ward committees	70	79	79	79	79	79
				Number of municipalities which convene community feedback meetings	5	5	5	5	5	5
Clean audit	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	GGPP	Auditing	Number of municipalities with clean audit outcome	1	3	4	4	4	5
Good Governance	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	GGPP	Adherence to legislative requirements	Percentage of Submission of Annual Performance Report (Sec 46 MSA) by 31 August	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Submission of Annual Report (Sec 121 MFMA) & adopted	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
				Percentage of Approved SDBIP aligned with the IDP & Budget	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
			Governance	Number of municipalities with functional Municipal Public Accounts Committees	5	5	5	5	5	5

				Number of council meetings held	4	4	4	4	4	4
Municipal Health	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	BSD	Sustainable livelihoods	Number of municipalities with licensed landfill sites	15	8	8	8	8	8
				Percentage of budget spent on maintenance of infrastructure	2%	5%	5%	5%	5%	5%
Environmental management				Number of Environmental management plans reviewed	1	1	1	1	1	1
Competency development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	TOD	HRM	Number of people from EE groups employed in the three highest levels of management in compliance with EE plan	80%	95%	95%	95%	95%	95%
				Percentage of a municipality's budget actually spent on implementing its workplace skills plan	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%	2%
				Number of municipalities which consistently implement HIV/AIDS workplace strategy	5	5	5	5	5	5
				Percentage of Approved and funded Organogram aligned with the IDP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Clean audit		GGPP	Institutional excellence	Number of municipalities with clean audit	1	3	5	5	5	5
				Number of municipalities with effective Audit Committees	5	5	5	5	5	5

Intergovernmental relations	To develop and implement integrated and governance systems	GGPP		Number of municipalities which attend DIGF meetings	5	5	5	5	5	5
				Number of municipalities employing a credible performance system	5	5	5	5	5	5

9.6 2025/2026 INSTITUTIONAL SERVICE DELIVERY INDICATORS AND TARGET

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence / POE
1.	Spatial rationale	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	Integrated Planning	Number of Highly rated IDP	1	1X highly rated IDP attained by 30 June 2026	N/A	N/A	N/A	1 highly rated IDP	MEC IDP Assessment report
2.	Spatial rationale	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	Integrated Planning	Number of IDP (s) Approved by council by 31 May 2026	1/1	1X 2024/25 IDP Approved by 30 June 2026	N/A	N/A	1 Draft IDP by 30 March 2026	1 Final IDP 31 May 2026	Approved 2025/26 IDP with Council resolution



	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
3.	Spatial rationale	To facilitate access and transform land and rural tourism development	Integrated planning	Number of DMPT Meetings held	4/4	4X DMPT Meeting held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4X Set of Invitations Agenda Minutes Attendance register
4.	Basic service delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Municipal Health	Number of Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance	94	160 X Food outlets issued with certificate of compliance by 30 June 2026	40	40	40	40	160 X Set of Signed copies of certificates
5.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor social and infrastructure development for the provision and access to services.	Municipal health	Number of land fill site inspections conducted	36	36 X Number of land fill site inspections conducted by 30 June 2026	9	9	9	9	36X Set of Monitoring Reports and checklists
6.	Basic Service delivery	To preserve and protect natural resources and promote public health	Air quality management	Number of Monitoring of emissions from listed activities	4	4X Number of Monitoring of emissions from listed activities by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4X Monitoring reports

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
7.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to services	Disaster Management	Number of Disaster Management stakeholder consultative forums held	8	4 X Disaster Management stakeholder consultative Forum held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Invitations Agenda Minutes and Attendance register
8.	Basic service delivery	To coordinate and monitor infrastructure development for the provision and access to services	Fire fighting	Number of Fire-fighting reports submitted by local stations	20	24 X Fire-fighting reports submitted by 30 June 2026	6	6	6	6	24 X Set of Fire-fighting reports
9.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilization.	Expenditure Management	Percentage of Operating budget variance in terms of SDBIP	20,31%	≤10% of Operating budget variance attained by 30 June 2026	≤10%	≤10%	≤10%	≤10%	Financial Reports
10.	Financial management and viability	To effectively manage finances and resource mobilization.	Reporting	Number of section 71 MFMA reports submitted.	12/12	12 X Section 71 MFMA reports submitted within 10 working days of the start of each Month by 30 June 2026	3	3	3	3	12 X Set of financial reports

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
11.	Local Economic Development	To create a conducive environment for radical economic development .	Economic Development	Number of LED forum meetings held	4	4 X LED forum meetings held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of invitations, agenda, minutes, attendance register and resolutions
12.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of section 72 Report (s)-Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report submitted	1/1 24/01/2025	1 X (MFMA Section 72 Report) Mid-year Budget and Performance Assessment Report submitted by 25 January 2026	N/A	N/A	1	N/A	Submission letters to NT,PT & EM with acknowledgements letters & A Copy of Mid-year Budget and performance Assessment Report
13.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management & governance systems	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Submission of Annual Performance Report (APR) and Annual Financial Statement (AFS) .	1/1-APR 1/1-AFS	1X APR and 1x AFS submitted to AGSA by 31 August 2026	1-APR 1-AFS	N/A	N/A	N/A	Submission letters.
14.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	AG -Audit outcome/Opinion	Unqualified	Unqualified attained by 30 November 2026	N/A	Unqualified	N/A	N/A	AGSA audit report.

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
15.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of AG Audit queries resolved	100% 10/10	100% of Prior year audit queries resolved by 30 June 2026	N/A	20%	60%	100%	2023/24 Post Audit action plan
16.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of Identified risks mitigated	50% 9/18	100% of Identified risks mitigated by 30 June 2026	25%	50%	75%	100%	Risk register
17.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Percentage of internal audit queries resolved	70% 14/20	100% of internal audit queries resolved by 30 June 2026	25%	50%	75%	100%	Internal audit action plan
18.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Auditing	Number of Audit committee meetings held	4	4 X Audit committee meetings held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and Attendance register

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence / POE
19.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Governance	Percentage of Council resolutions implemented.	88.3% 83/94	100% Council resolutions implemented by 30 June 2026	100%	100%	100%	100%	Council resolutions register
20.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Public Participation	Number of IDP Representative Forum meetings convened	4/4	4 X IDP Representative Forum meetings convened by 30 June 2026	1X Approval of IDP Review Process	1X Analysis phase	1 X Preparation for Tabling of the 2026/27 Draft IDP for Adoption	1 X Preparation for Tabling of the 2026/27 Final IDP for Approval	4X Set of Invitations, Agenda, minutes & attendance register
21.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Governance	Number of MPAC meetings held	6/4	4x Number of MPAC meetings held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Invitations, agenda, Minutes and Attendance register
22.	Good Governance and Public Participation	To develop and implement integrated management and governance systems	Governance	Number of 2024/25 Oversight report approved by council	1	1 X 2024/25 Oversight report approved by council by 31 March 2026	N/A	N/A	1	N/A	Council resolution with 2024/25 Oversight Report

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
23.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Human Resources Management	Number of Senior Managers with signed Performance Agreements	6/6	6 X Senior Managers with signed Performance Agreements by 31 July 2025	6	N/A	N/A	N/A	Signed Performance Agreements
24.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Capacity building and Training (HRD)	Number of officials and Councillors capacitated	21	40X Officials and Councillors capacitated by 30 June 2026	20	20	20	20	Attendance registers
25.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To Improve, attract, develop and retain best human capital	Occupational Health and Safety	Number of OHS Committee meetings held	4/4	4 X OHS Committee meetings held by 30 June 2026	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	1 OHS Meeting	4X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register
26.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Information and Communication Technology	Number of ICT Steering Committee Meetings Held	4	4 X ICT Steering Committee Meetings Held by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register
27.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Organisational Development	Number of approved 2025/26 SDBIP by the Executive Mayor	1-SDBIP June 2024	1 X 2025/26 SDBIP Approved by the EM by 28 June 2025	N/A	N/A	N/A	1 X approved 2025/26 SDBIP	Approved 2025/26 SDBIP

	KPA	Strategic Objective	Programme / Focus area	Performance Indicators	Baseline 2024/25	Annual Target 2025-2026	Target Quarter 1	Target Quarter 2	Target Quarter 3	Target Quarter 4	Evidence /POE
	Development	human capital									
28.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of 2023/24 Annual Performance evaluation conducted	1/1	1X 2023/24 Annual Performance evaluation conducted by 30 June 2026	N/A	N/A	N/A	1	Minutes and attendance register
29.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To attract, develop and retain ethical and best human capital	Monitoring and Evaluation	Number of Annual report (section 121) adopted & submitted to MEC	1 AR approved 27 March 2025	1 X Annual Report (section 121) adopted & submitted to MEC by 31 March 2026	N/A	N/A	1X Approval of final 2024/25 AR	N/A	Annual report, council resolution and submission letter to the MEC
30.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Legal Services	Number of litigation reports compiled and submitted to council	4	4 X litigation reports compiled and submitted to council by 30 June 2026	1	1	1	1	4 X Set of Litigation Reports with Council Resolutions
31.	Transformation and Organisational Development	To improve Administration and Governance Capacity	Human Resource Management	Number of LLF meetings held by 30 June 2026	8	8 X LLF meetings held by 30 June 2026	2	2	2	2	8 X Set of Invitations, agenda, minutes and attendance register

TABLE 118: 2026 STRTEGIC PLANNING RETREAT RESOLUTIONS

Disclaimer: These resolutions cover at a high level all matters that were dealt with during Plenary and in the Commissions. Where a matter was not indicated in the resolutions and it is viewed important, it is either the authors reviewed the matter as operational or can be addressed through internal departmental processes. Where there is a need to appeal that the matter be part of resolutions, amendments will be made accordingly.

Summary and categorization of Resolutions according to the KPAs, implementation timeframes and classification.

Key Performance Area (KPA)	Short-Term		Medium-Term		Strategic	Operational	TOTAL
	Strategic	Operational	Strategic	Operational	Strategic	Operational	
Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	5	3	5	3	3	0	19
Local Economic Development	10	1	2	1	2	0	16
Good Governance and Public Participation	0	2	2	0	0	0	4
Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development.	1	0	1	0	1	0	2
Municipal Financial Viability and Sustainability	1	0	9	0	2	0	12
Spatial Rationale and Integrated Human Settlements	2	0	6	1	1	0	10
TOTAL # OF RESOLUTIONS PER TIMELINE CLASSIFICATION	19	6	25	5	9	0	64



Consolidated Resolution Register from 2026 Strategic Planning Retreat

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
KPA 1: Basic Services & Infrastructure Development						
1	Infrastructure Development	Undertake feasibility study of catalytic projects with DBSA, DTIC & other Social Partners. Align projects with IDPs & SDGs	41.2. Identify all the Strategic Partners capable of supporting the District with undertaking Feasibility for all infrastructure related Catalytic Projects for WDM. (MT-S) 41.3. Monitor and report on status of the above Catalytic Projects. (MT-O) 41.4. Apply for CIP funding to support infrastructure needs across the District. (MT-S)	OTP, DBSA, DTIC, MISA, GTAC; Private sectors	Director: Infrastructure Development	30 June 2026 Quarterly (2026/7)
4	Sector Plans Development/Review	Undertake a comprehensive review of sector plans (water, sanitation, and energy, waste, roads and stormwater).	42.1. Updated Sector Plans/strategies that address gaps and strengthen compliance.(MT-S)	OTP; CoGHSTA;ESKOM Municipalities;DWS etc	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing
4	Infrastructure Grant Expenditure	All the 5 Local Municipalities to spend 100% of their Grant Allocations	43.1. Ensure optimal functionality of MIG , Energy, EPWP Forums for Agile project performance management (Project Score Card). (ST_O)	WDM Local Municipalities DWS, Dept of energy and electricity and ESKOM CoGHSTA Water Boards	Director: Infrastructure Development	Monthly Quarterly

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
4	Devolution of D-Roads to WDM	Devolution of District Roads back to Waterberg District Municipality Challenges: d) Funding shortfalls if provincial transfers are inadequate. e) Capacity gaps in Waterberg's technical staff and equipment. f) Coordination issues between province, district, and SANRAL.	44.1. Facilitate discussions with both National and Provincial Departments of Transport towards devolution of D-Roads from Road Agency Limpopo (RAL) to WDM in adherence to applicable funding follow function Protocols. (LT-S) 44.2. Monitor and report on progress of devolution of D-Roads from RAL to WDM. (MT-O)	Implementing Agents Provincial Department of Roads & Transport, National Department of Transport, CoGHSTA, WDM, RAL, Local Municipalities	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing

N o .	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
4	Water Security & Resilience	Water Security across the district (Design Horizon 2045)	45.1. Coordinate all bulk water supply projects across the District (MCWAP2, North Eastern Bulk water supply, OMM bulk water supply from Flag Boshielo Dam. (LT-S)	LNW, DWS, Traditional leader Matlala), CoGTA, MLM and WDM, Badirammogo	Director: Infrastructure Development	2026-2028
4	Water Security & Resilience	Coordinate collaborative response to all the water related challenges across the District, with the primary view of ensuring seamless access to water amongst all communities.	46.1. Establish the District Water Crisis Committee.(ST-S) 46.2. Coordinate the Launch and Support functionality of Water War Rooms from all the 5 LMs.(ST-S)	PMT+1, DWS, CoGHSTA, Local municipalities, Traditional leaders, ESKOM, Water boards, Water user associations, Farmers association (irrigation board)	Director: Infrastructure Development	June 2026
4	Water Security & Resilience	Enhance monitoring and reporting of drinking water quality standards. Catalytic Impact: Safeguards public health and builds trust in municipal service delivery. Unlock partnerships with national departments, private sector (e.g., SANTUM), and communities.	47.1. Monitor and report on Implementation of corrective measures (corrective action plan) in municipalities with non-compliance.(ST-S)	DWS; CoGHSTA, Local Municipalities; Water Boards, water user association, ESKOM, mining houses.	Director: Infrastructure Development	Ongoing



No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
48	Air Quality Monitoring & EMU	Strengthen organizational capacity in environmental governance, ensure compliance with applicable legislation, and advance sustainable development practices. The intervention will also enhance the District capabilities in the following areas: Air Quality, Waste Management, Biodiversity Conservation, and Climate Change.	48.1. Establishment of an Environmental Management Unit (EMU) within the permanent staff establishment of the District. (ST-S) 48.2. Appoint a Senior Environment Officer: who shall oversee air quality, waste management, biodiversity conservation, and climate change initiatives, ensuring compliance with environmental legislation and advancing sustainability goals. (ST-O).	WDM, LEDET, other Stakeholders	Director SDCS	30 May 2026 30/06/2027
49	Environmental Protection	Sewerage spillages are one of the biggest threats to underground water quality, since untreated effluent can introduce pathogens, nitrates, and heavy metals into aquifers.	49.1. Monitor and report on effective operations of Waste Water Treatment Works and Water Treatment Works to improve the Blue Drop and Green Drop status. (ST-S)	DWS, DFFE, LEDET, CoGHSTA; LMs	Director: Infrastructure Development	30/06/26

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
5	Waste Management	Ensure proficient disposal of Medical Waste in line with the applicable Legislation	50.1. Feasibility study for establishment of a District Medical waste disposal facility. (LT-S)	LEDET, Department of Health, etc	Director SDCS	30 October 2026
5	Fire Services	- Large geographic coverage area with dispersed settlements with long emergency response distances. - Limited number of fire stations across a large geographic district.	51.1. Engage Social Partners for Technical and Financial support towards construction of small satellite fire stations (Thabazimbi, Northam, Vaal water, Pienaarsriver) to respond to fire events within 15 minutes.(MT-S) 51.2. Enter into Memorandum of Agreements (MoUs) with varying Strategic Partners.(MT-O)	Santam, Working on fire DFFE, Mining Houses, neighbouring municipalities and districts, Eskom Matimba & Medupi Power Stations, Grootegeeluk Coal Mine, Valtterra Mine	Director SDCS Municipal Manager	Ongoing
5	Disaster Management Early Warning & Preparedness	Immediate commencement of emergency proactive maintenance on storm water infrastructure and the clearance of debris from natural waterways to mitigate the risk of flooding and damage to municipal assets following the South African Weather Service (SAWS) Impact – Based Warning System for Waterberg Region. These weather patterns pose a direct threat to municipal infrastructure, particularly where	52.1. Issue Advisory to all Local municipalities in Waterberg District to implement the following proactive measures under the Waterberg District Disaster Risk Management Plan. (MT-S) ➤ Storm water & Waterway Clearance – immediate cleaning of all storm water channels; ➤ River & Stream Maintenance – identify & remove large debris blocking natural watercourses ➤ Infrastructure Vulnerability Checks ➤ Public Awareness: launch a “Clean Our Waterways” campaign to discourage illegal	SAWS PDMC- COGHSTA Public Works DFFE All LMs in WDM	MM MSDCS & MID	31/08/26

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		drainage systems may be compromised by debris or lack of maintenance.	dumping into storm water drains.			
5.	Disaster Management Early Warning & Preparedness	Prioritize interventions in areas with the highest risk or need to enable targeted resource allocation and evidence-based planning.	53.1. Map and identify service delivery and environmental hotspots across the district.(ST-O)	SAWS PDMC- COGHSTA Public Works DFFE All LMs in WDM	MSDCS	31/09/26
KPA 2: Local Economic Development, Economic Growth and Job Creation						
5.	Economic Growth and Job Creation	Leverage DDM imperatives to galvanise varying Strategic Stakeholders to collaborate on various areas aimed at unlocking the District Economy, with particular emphasis on amongst others the following: e) Skills Development; f) Agro-processing; g) Renewable Energy; h) Tourism Development; Electric Car Manufacturing Plant etc	54.1. Facilitate an engagement with the Minister of Higher Education and CEOs of varying SETAs and TVETs with footprint in the District. (ST-S) 54.2. Facilitate and convene an engagement with Minister of Tourism on varying Tourism Development related matters across the District, including the collection and use of Tourism Levy. (ST-S) 54.3. Facilitate and convene an engagement with Ministers of DTIC, DMPR and DEE on opportunities around Electric Vehicle manufacturing plant considering mineral endowed within the District. (ST-S)	Lead by both National and Provincial DDM Champions. Department of Higher Education & SETA, TVETs; Department of Tourism, Tourism SA, TOMSA, DMPR, DTIC, LEDET, LTA, Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Council (ARC); PMTs etc	Director PED	Ongoing
5.	Economic growth and job creation	WDM – SABC Film Studio Catalytic Project Facilitation.	55.1. Convene stakeholder plenary meeting with DTIC & Develop a business case.	SABC, DTIC, LTA, Municipal CFOs &	Director PED	16 April 2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		Municipalities should formally consider participation in the investment initiative. Engage in cost-sharing partnerships to secure hosting rights.	(ST-S) 55.2. Identify land or infrastructure sites suitable for studio development.(MT-S) 55.3. Collaborate with Limpopo Tourism Agency to leverage productions for tourism promotion.(MT-S) 55.4. Encourage local artists, youth, and women to participate in training and creative opportunities.(LT-S)	LED Managers and other Social Partners		
5	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Resuscitation of the Waterberg Development Agency as a strategic implementer of high impact Economic Growth and Job Creation interventions across the District.	56.1. Appointment of an Economic Advisory Council to oversee the resuscitation of the agency. (ST-S) 56.2. Development, implementation and progress reporting on the Development Agency Roadmap.(MT-O).	IDC, DTIC, DBSA, NT/PT, LEDA etc.	Director PED	30 th June 2026
5	Economic Growth & Job Creation	District Wide Business Registration Data	57.1. Consolidation and Submission of Business Registration Reports/Data by LMs to the District on a quarterly basis.(ST-S).	All the 5 Local Municipalities	Director PED	31 st March 2026 (Continuous)
5	Economic Growth & Job Creation-Investment promotion & facilitation	Solicit collaborations from private sector & social partners to facilitate an investment summit	58.1. Convene District Investment Summit.(ST-S) 58.2. Progressively monitor and report on implementation progress and impact of Investment Summit Commitments. (MT-O)	Waterberg Chamber of Commerce, Mining Companies, & other strategic partners/Investors	Director PED	30 October 2026 Ongoing

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
5	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Facilitation of a District Mining Indaba	59.1. Convene a District Mining Indaba (ST-S).	DMPR, LEDET, DSBD & Social Partners	Director PED	29 May 2026
6	Economic Growth & Job Creation	Facilitation of Economic Empowerment Road Shows/ Workshops	60.1. LED Units to work with DTIC & other government funding agencies to raise awareness among local businesses about business support incentive programmes.(ST-O)	LMs, DTIC, IDC, LEDET, Provincial Treasury & other government funding institutions	Director PED	30 September 2026
6	Abattoir Business Case	RFPs for abattoir leasing/ Enhance economic activity through leasing of abattoir facilities to private operators.	61.1. Issue RFPs to attract partnership of interested parties towards enhanced business case of the Abattoir Facility.(ST-S). 61.2. Monitor compliance with food safety and economic development objectives as per Legislative prescripts. (ST-S)	WDM, Local Farmers, Dept of Agriculture, Agribusinesses, Private Sector Investors.	Director PED Director MSDCS	30 June 2026
KPA 3: Good Governance and Public Participation						
6	Intergovernmental Relations	Poor attendance of IGR structures due to limited intragovernmental collaboration. This poor attendance also have a negative impact on the DDM imperatives since these are the Structures tasked with implementation thereof.	62.1. Develop and communicate Annual Schedule with all the 5 LMs and Sector Departments for incorporation in their respective Calendar of events to enhance optimal participation of all Councillors and Officials.(ST-O) 62.2. MMs to ensure IGR attendance is incorporated as part of the KPIs in the Performance contracts of Senior Managers. (MT_S) 62.3. Prepare and submit a Quarterly Report on functionality of the IGRs Structures	OTP; CoGHSTA, PMTs; MMs etc	COO ES	30 March 2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
			to both Council and the MEC Coghsta.(ST_O)			30 June 2026
6	Local Government Election Readiness	Leading to the 2026 Local Government Elections coherence of Government messaging collectively in the District will be imperative so as to minimise any form of misinformation to the citizens	63.1. Develop an integrated District wide Communication approach to be used and adhered to by Government as a whole as a Standing Item in the Mayors' Forum. (MT-S).	IEC; MDB; StatsSA; OTP; Sector Departments; SALGA; SAPS; SSA and Private Sector.	COO ES	30 April 2026
KPA 4: Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development						
6	Capability Building	To secure funding for training interventions beyond LGSETA allocations	64.1. WDM to facilitate Collaborations with relevant SETAs and other stakeholders and enter into MOUs.(ST-S) 64.2. Explore establishment of Executive Mayoral Bursary Fund in collaboration with all the relevant SETAs.(MT-S)	SETAs, TVETs Colleges within WDM; CSSS Capacity Building Service Providers appointed by WDM Private Sector.	Directors: CSSS & COO ES	Ongoing
6	ICT Infrastructure and Disaster Recovery	Secure more funding for additional systems through available grants, with support from COGTA, to improve governance and service delivery capacity and efficiencies	65.1. Waterberg District Municipality to apply for additional funding for additional ICT systems through available grant with support from COGTA, other Sector Departments and Private Sector. (LT_S).	CoGTA, Department of Communications & Technologies, SALGA and Mining Companies.	Director CSSS	30 June 2028
KPA 5: Municipal Viability & Sustainable Resource Management						
6	Revenue Enhancement –	Restoration of Water Services Authority (WSA) status to ensure	66.1. Write a letter signed by EM to the Minister of Water and Sanitation to formally request a review and	DDM National & Provincial Champions	Director ID & CFO	30/06/26

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the © Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		regional water security and financial sustainability. <i>Financial Viability.</i> The lack of WSA Status has significantly diminished the District's "own-revenue" generation capabilities. Restoring this status allows for the ring fencing of water tariffs to fund critical infrastructure maintenance and expansion. <i>Alignment with the District Development Model (DDM):</i> Restoring WSA status aligns with the One Plan approach, ensuring that water planning is integrated with regional economic development, particularly in the mining and agricultural sector.	subsequent restoration of Waterberg District Municipality (DC36) status as a (Bulk)Water Services Authority (WSA), as provided for under the Water Services Act (Act 108 of 1997) and the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act.(MT-S) 66.2. Compile a formal legal process outlining the Legal Path to Restoration Ministerial Determination- Section 78 of the Systems Act Capacity Assessment, Council Resolutions of both WDM & LMs, Section 12 Notice.(MT-S)	DWS CoGTA CoGHSTA MISA SALGA		30/06/2027
6	Revenue Enhancement – LMs Support to WDM	That all local municipalities within the Waterberg District be engaged to consider supporting the sustainability of the WDM with allocation of an annual contribution of 2% of total budget to the District Municipality, effective 1 July 2026, for a period of 24 months as a start, to support the provision of municipal health services, fire and	67.1. Engage with all 5 Local Municipalities through District IGR to consider making provision in the 2026/2027 budget of 2% of total budget towards the District for the provision of Disaster Management, Fire & Rescue Services as well as Municipal Health Services.(MT-S)	Local Municipalities, COGHSTA National Treasury CoGTA SALGA	CFO/Municipal Manager	31 March 2027 2026/2027

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		rescue services, and disaster management.		Limpopo Provisional Treasury PED, LEDET		
6.		The District and Traditional Authorities share a common goal: ensuring that every family has a safe place to build a home. To prevent future tragedies involving house collapses, drowning and property loss, we are proposing a collaborative process for land allocation. Update a list of Waterberg environmental sensitive areas	68.1. Stakeholder Engagement: The District shall formally engage all Traditional Leaders within its jurisdiction to establish a collaborative framework. This engagement will emphasize that no new residential sites should be allocated in areas identified as flood-prone or environmentally sensitive. 68.2. Mandatory consultation with Town Planning on land allocation in flood-prone and environmentally sensitive areas. All Traditional Authorities are requested and encouraged to submit site allocation plans to the Department of Development Planning for a technical "suitability assessment" prior to the finalization of any land grant.	DFFE CoGHSTA	Director PED	

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
6	Disaster Management Funding	Building Back Better(Resilience) <i>Ensuring that all new infrastructure projects (roads, bridges) undergo a "Disaster Risk Assessment" before approval.</i>	69.1. All new infrastructure projects(roads, bridges in Waterberg) undergo a disaster risk assessment before approval. MT-S	COGHSTA MISA DWS	Director MSDCS	Ongoing
7	Disaster Management Funding	Waterberg District Municipality has adopted mandatory disaster risk assessments for all new infrastructure projects, including roads and bridges, in line with the Disaster Management Act (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Management Framework (2005) . However, current funding mechanisms from the national fiscus and conditional grants prioritize cost efficiency and delivery speed over resilience.	70.1. Lobby and submit a proposal to both the Limpopo PT and National Treasury during the FRP process to consider amongst others: ➤ Adopt resilience scoring as a funding criterion. ➤ Amend grant guidelines to include conditional resilience compliance. ➤ Establish a National Resilience Fund for climate adaptation in infrastructure. ➤ Pilot the framework in Waterberg District Municipality before scaling nationally. (LT-S)	National Treasury; COGTA; Provincial Treasury; CoGHSTA; etc	Director MSDCS	Ongoing
7	Revenue Enhancement Solutions	The strategy focuses on four high-impact areas: • Fire & Rescue: Monthly Fire Safety Levies for high-risk industrial/commercial zones and standby fees for private events. • Municipal Health (MHS): Tiered pricing for <i>Certificates of</i>	71.1. To contribute to the WDM's financial health, we propose shifting from a "free service" model to a "service recovery" model. (MT-S) Phase 1 (Q1): Review & gazette updated Tariff Bylaws to ensure legal backing for new fees.		MSDCS CFO	30/06/27

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		<i>Acceptability</i> (COA) and mandatory annual health inspections. - Environmental Management: Administrative fines for illegal dumping and processing fees for Atmospheric Emission Licenses (AEL). - Disaster Management: aggressive pursuit of Climate Adaptation Grants.	Phase 2 (Q2): Integrate Departmental "Job Cards" and "Inspection Reports" with the Municipal Billing System. Phase 3 (Q3): Launch a public awareness campaign on "Paying for Safety" to reduce community pushback.			
7.	Improved Audit Outcomes	Develop and maintain "Operation Clean Audit" programme to achieve clean audits within 3 years	72.1. WDM to facilitate and develop a comprehensive District wide clean audit strategy.(ST-S).	PMTs+1; OTP, CoGHSTA, PT; SALGA; AGSA etc.	CFO	30 June 2026
7.	Financial Recovery plan	Optimal cooperation and active participation in the development and implementation of the Financial Recovery Plan by National Treasury	73.1. Report on the progress of development and implementation of Waterberg Financial Recovery Plan(MT-S)	PMT+1; National Treasury FRP Unit, Provincial Treasury, Appointed SP	CFO	Ongoing
7.	Funding of the Budget	Responding to unfunded budget. To secure a sustainable, predictable and fair revenue stream that empowers the municipality to fulfill its constitutional mandates without compromising its financial viability.	74.1. Continue to engage both National Treasury and COGTA through Sister Provincial Departments and DDM Political Champions with a view of LGES increase pending the finalization of Local Government funding Formula. (MT-S)	CoGHSTA, LPT, CoGTA, NT DDM Champions	CFO	30/09/26
7.	Revenue enhancement	Ensure incorporation of all the tariffs in relation to the functions performed the District consistent with	75.1. Compile, Table and implement comprehensive tariff book(LT-S)	All WDM Directors, Council, NT , PT and SALGA	CFO	30/06/2026

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		promulgated by-laws Cost effective tariffs				
KPA 6: Spatial Rational and Integrated Human Settlements						
7	Integrated Planning	Culminating from developmental issues raised by communities during the Analysis Phase of the IDP. Incorporate all responsive programmes/projects from Sector Departments and Private Sector in the IDPs of all Municipalities.	76.1. All Programmes/Projects from Sector Departments and Private Sector incorporated in the respective Municipal 2026/27 IDPs. (ST-S) 76.2. Continue to improve the quality and preventability of IDPs across the District. (LT-S) 76.3. Explore the use of technology amongst other mechanisms to improve public participation in the IDP processes by varying Stakeholders. (MT-S)	OTP; CoGHSTA; All Sector Departments; Municipal Councils; Municipal Managers	COO SP and M&E	30 May 2026
7	Integrated Planning	Prioritise the Review & Development of strategic planning documents/IDP Sector Plans (LED Strategy, SDF, Climate Change Response Strategy, ITP, GIS Strategy)	77.1. Mobilise support & collaboration with relevant Sector Departments and Private Sector to develop/review varying Sector Plans(MT-S)	Dept of Transport and Community Safety, CoGTA, CoGHSTA, DFFE, LEDET, DLRRD, Mining Houses	Director PED	30 June 2027
7	Integrated Planning	Maximum successes realization of the DDM One Plan implementation	78.1. Development of DDM One Plan monitoring & evaluation systems. (ST-	OTP, COGTA, COGHSTA	COO ST and M & E	30 June 2026
7	Informal Settlements Upgrading	Ensure the formalization or, where necessary, humane relocation of informal settlements to guarantee access to basic services, minimize disaster risks, safeguard property, and protect lives through integrated	79.1. Liaise with CoGHSTA to update and share a list of all informal settlements per Local Municipality in Waterberg. (MT-S) 79.2. Engage all affected LM to provide strategies with specific timelines on their	CoGHSTA HDA All LMs in WDM	Director PED	30/06/27

No.	Thematic Area	Outcomes of the engagement/Resolutions	Proposed/Planned Interventions	Stakeholders Engaged/Involved (DM/LM)	Responsibility	Timeframes
		drainage, waste management, and environmental health systems.	plan of action to relocate especially those in environmentally sensitive areas. (MT-S) 79.3. Monitor and report on enforcement of Municipal By-Laws regarding illegal occupation of land across the District (MT-O)			
8	Spatial Planning	Ascertain land ownership across the District	80.1. Conduct a comprehensive land audit for development purpose & municipal revenue generation (MT-S)	COGHSTA, DLRRD	Director PED	30 June 2027
8	Transport Planning	Progressively review the Staff establishment to enhance the Public Transport Planning capabilities of the District	81.1. Undertake cost benefit analysis towards establishment Public Transport Planning Unit. (MT-S)	Dept of Transport and Community Safety,	Director PED	30 June 2027

Legend:LT-SLong-Term Strategic
LT-OLong-Term Operational
MT-SMedium-Term Strategic
MT-OMedium-Term Operational
ST-SShort-Term Strategic
ST-OShort-Term Operational



CHAPTER 10 - PROJECT PHASE

10.1 WATERBERG DISTRICT 2026/27 PROJECTS

The WDM has no Capital Projects to implement for the 2026/2027 financial year; however, there are currently **Catalytic Projects** being implemented in the district

10.2 CATALYTIC PROJECTS AND/OR PROGRAMMES FOR IMPLEMENTATION WITHIN THE WATERBERG DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY.

Catalytic Projects and Public-Private Investment for Regional Development

The Waterberg District Municipality is committed to advancing economic growth through strategic public-private partnerships, leveraging investment opportunities to implement key catalytic projects that drive sustainable development. These initiatives aim to stimulate infrastructure improvements, economic diversification, and enhanced community resilience, fostering a more inclusive and prosperous regional economy.

Through structured collaborative frameworks, these projects provide avenues for investment across various sectors, ensuring coordinated efforts between government, private sector investors, and industry stakeholders to maximize impact. Some of the priority areas as outlined in the table below include:

- **Lephalale Municipality:** Leading Smart City Development efforts by enhancing infrastructure, digital connectivity, and economic activity.
- **Modimolle-Mookgophong Municipality:** Hosting the Motor City Development, strengthening automotive and logistics industries.
- **Thabazimbi Municipality:** Focusing on Wildlife Economy Development, with eco-tourism and biodiversity protection initiatives.
- **Waterberg District Municipality:** Driving DLabs Construction, fostering innovation and technological research.
- **All Local Municipalities in Waterberg District:** Supporting Renewable Energy Expansion, Bulk Water Infrastructure Upgrades, Road-to-Rail Development, Digitization of Government, Agro-Processing and Livestock Value Chain, Urban Management Programmes, and Waste Management Projects to ensure sustainability and economic resilience.

Investment Strategies and Partnerships

To ensure the success of these catalytic projects, multi-sector partnerships are essential, bringing together government entities, development finance institutions, and industry investors to facilitate funding, technical expertise, and long-term sustainability. Collaborative investment models may include:

Infrastructure Financing: Structured funding mechanisms that enable large-scale development in transport, utilities, and digital connectivity.

Enterprise and Supplier Development: Strengthening local economies through procurement opportunities and business incubation initiatives.

Skills Development and Training: Expanding workforce readiness through investment in education, technology, and specialized training programs.

Sustainability and Environmental Stewardship: Driving responsible investment in energy efficiency, conservation, and waste management to support long-term sustainability.

Table 119: Catalytic Projects and/or Programmes for Implementation within the Waterberg District Municipality.

Item	Project Name	Municipal Area	Source	Short term	Medium term	Long term	Total
1	Smart City Development at Lephalale	Lephalale	External/Private	R575 000 000	287 500 000	287 500 000	1 150 000 000
2	Renewable Energy/Energy Mix Development	All	External/Private	7 000 000 000	3 500 000 000	3 500 000 000	14 000 000 000
3	Upgrading of Bulk Water Infrastructure	All	External/Private	500 000 000	250 000 000	250 000 000	1 000 000 000
4	Digitization of Government	All	External/Private	650 000 000	325 000 000	325 000 000	1 300 000 000

5	Agro-processing- Integrated Livestock Value Chain Development Initiative	All	External/Private	12 500 000 000	6 250 000 000	6 250 000 000	25 000 000 000
6	Road to Rail Infrastructure Development	All	External/Private	1 075 000 000	537 500 000	537 500 000	2 150 000 000
7	Development and Construction of DLabs within Waterberg	Waterberg	External/Private	52 000 000	-	-	52 000 000
8	Wild Life Economy Development	All	External/Private	5 000 000 000	2 500 000 000	2 500 000 000	10 000 000 000
9	Comprehensive Urban Management Programme	All	External/Private	65 000 000	32 500 000	32 500 000	130 000 000
10	Development of Motor City in Modimolle	Modimolle-Mookgophong	External/Private	10 000 000 000	5 000 000 000	5 000 000 000	20 000 000 000
11	Waste Management Project	Modimolle-Mookgophong	External/Private	500 000 000	250 000 000	250 000 000	1 000 000 000
TOTAL				37 865 000 000	18 932 500 000	18 932 500 000	75 782 000 000

10.3 WATERBERG NATIONAL ONE PLAN CATALYTIC PROJECTS

Item	Project Name	Municipal Area	Source	Short term	Medium term	Long term	Total
1	Mokolo Crocodile (West) Water Augmentation Project (MCWAP) by 2027	Waterberg	NDWS		16,000,000,000		16,000,000,000

2	MCWAP Phase 2A project. The project comprises of two components, namely a water transfer component and a river management component	All	NDWS	12,500,000,00			12,500,000,00
3	ORWRDP 2B: Water pipeline from Flag Boshielo Mogalakwena	Mogalakwena	LWUA			6,600,000,00	6,600,000,000
4	Lebalelo Raw and PoTable Water Infrastructure Development Project. Phase 2B+ raw water supply	All	NDWS		6,500,000,000		6,500,000,000
5	Development of Telecom Infrastructure strategy (encourage investment by Telcom companies)	All	NDCOM			2,000,000,000	2,000,000,000
6	Construction of recycling plants	All	NDEFF			1,250,000,000	1,250,000,000
7	MPRS1: Tobias Zyn Loop to Sasol Zebediela Plaza Road Development	Mogalakwena	SANRAL	1,021,000,000			1,021,000,000
8	MPRS1: Tobias Sasol Zebediela Plaza to Rietvley Road Development	Mogalakwena	SANRAL	1,021,000,000			1,021,000,000
9	DILPS: Mmadikiri River to Lephalale Road Development	Lephalale	SANRAL	838,554,541			838,554,541
10	DNURT: Kranskop Plaza to Modimolle Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	700,500,000			700,500,000
11	DNURT: N11 Modimolle to Tobias ZynLoop: Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	700,500,000			700,500,000
12	DILPS: Vaalwater to Mmadikiri River Road Development	Modimolle-Mookgophong	SANRAL	646,777,342			646,777,342
13	DILPS: Tooyspruit to BelaBela Addition of pave shoulders	BelaBela	SANRAL	528,500,000			528,500,000
14	Support the land restitution initiative within the Waterberg Distrct	All	NDALRRD	500,500,000			500,500,000
TOTAL				18,457,331,883	22,500,000,000	9,850,000,000	50,807,331,883

NB: It is advisable to refer to the One Plan on Annexure A: List of all projects, as nuances in the detailed project database will shed better light on a detailed level.



10.4 WATERBERG PROPOSED PROJECT

10.4.1 PLANNING, ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

Dept	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
PED	To co-coordinate and implement spatial planning and land use management	ITP Development (Integrated Transport Planning)	R1 000 000	External/Private	R1 000 000	-	-
		Human Settlement Strategy	R800 000	External/Private	R800 000	-	-
		DEVELOPMENT OF GIS PORTAL (Website for land information)	R510 000	External/Private	R510 000	-	-
		Permanent Licences for GIS for Local Municipalities	R73 000	External/Private	R73 000	-	-
		Transport Planning Coordination Programs	R100 000	External/Private	R100 000	R120 000	R130 000
	To create an enabling environment for a sustainable economic development	LED Strategy	R1 000 000	External/Private	R1 000 000	-	-
		Tourism Development	R1 650 000	External/Private	R500 000	R550 000	R600 000
		SMME Development	R1 800 000	External/Private	R500 000	R600 000	R700 000
		Investor Package & Investment Conference	R800 000	External/Private	R800 000	-	-
	To shape an economically viable and complying abattoir	Abattoir Marketing	R450 000	External/Private	R100 000	R150 000	R200 000



10.4.2 CORPORATE SERVICES

Department	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
CSSS		Supply and Installation of Hyper-Converged Disaster Recovery Solution	3 000 000	WDM	3 000 000		
		Firewall and VPN Install	200 000	WDM			
		Remote Administration Software licence	50 000	WDM	50 000		
		Supply and installation of UPS backup power	250 000	WDM	250 000		
		Renewal of anti Virus licence	450 000	WDM	150 000	150 000	150 000
		ICT Equipment	1 800 000	WDM	300 000	300 000	300 000
		Upgrading of Council Chamber boardroom and recording equipment	400 000	WDM			
		Access control and security IP cameras installed at all WDM sites	800 000	WDM	300 000		
		Rewiring of the network cables and replacement of network switches for WDM head office and Modimolle and Lephalale Disaster Centres	800 000	WDM	800 000		
		The installation of Fiber internet at the Modimolle and Lephalale Disaster Centre and VPN routers to connect directly to head office	800 000	WDM	350 000		
		Exchange SSL Certificate	50 000	WDM	50 000		
		ICT Strategy	1 500 000	WDM			
		Cloud Office 365 Implementation	1 800 000	WDM	600 000	600 000	600 000
		Records Management System	2 500 000	WDM		2 500 000	
		Fleet Mangement System	500 000	WDM			

	Review of organizational structure and job profiles (Job Specifications, analysis, and discriptions)	1 200 000	WDM			
TOTAL		16 100 000		5 850 000	3 550 000	1 050 000

10.4.3 SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

Department	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2023/24	2024/2025	2025/2026
SDCS		The Supply and Delivery of Humanitarian Relief Materials (i.e. 800 Blankets, 200 Mattresses and 70 Army Tents	1 700 000	WDM	900 000		
		Undertake comprehensive district-wide community based disaster risk assessment	1 500 000	WDM	1 000 000		
		Bi-annual Review of the Waterberg District Disaster Management Framework and Plan		WDM	To be done inhouse		
		Proposal of 3x 6000Liters water tenders/tankers(± R4.5m each= R13.5m).	13 500 000	WDM			
		3x Rapid Response Vehicles (RIV) (±R3.1m each= R9.3m).	9 300 000	WDM			
		Stack Monitoring Equipment - R300 000	320 000	WDM			
		Development of Integrated waste management plan - R 900 000		WDM	To be done inhouse		

		Instant Sampling Kits for food and water	520 000	WDM			
		Information Boards	50 000				
		Bela Bela Fire station	5 000 000				
TOTAL			32 110 000				

10.4.4 INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

Dept	Strategic Objective	Project name	Estimated Budget	Source of Funding	2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/2025	Summary Proposed scope of works
ID	To provide and improve infrastructure development and basic service delivery	Refurbishment of WDM main building, Lephalale fire station and Modimolle disaster/fire station	R4 853 000.00	WDM	R2 150 000,00	R1 645 000,00	R1 058 000,00	1) Bending moment redistribution-Concrete columns- increase load. 2) Critical cracks to be closed to avoid collapse. 3) Foundation- re-strengthen sub- corner dynamics. 4) Replace roof with new IRB 3mm. 5) Allow roof drainage opening at Executive Mayors section to avoid flooding. 6) Refurb plumbing works. 7) Paint and Finishings. Also a council resolution
		Construction of Steel Carports at Lephalale DMC	R750 000.00	WDM	R750 000,00	R	R	1) SQ Tube 75 75 x 1, 6x6, 0m SABS X 120. 2) IRB Sheet Galvanised 0,50mm pm X 440. 3) Tec screw washer 6 x 19 and 65 mm X 40. 4) Red oxide paint and green paint for steel X 400L. 5) Ready mix concrete bag x 400kg. 6) Roof paint green (5 years guarantee) x 380L
		Refurbishment of Lephalale Fire Station building	R 3 462 851.25	WDM	R	R1 731 425,63	R1 731 425,63	1) Repairs of Cracks on Walls and columns. 2) Build Expansion and contractions joints. 3) Replace existing Roof with corrugated Iron 3mm IBR. 4) Intensify defects on Foundations. 7) Paint work and Finishings

		Refurbishment of WDM Abattoir building	R19 843 968.75	WDM	R	R5 000 000,00	R5 000 000,00	1) Lairage and Pen defects 2) Refurb Incinerator. 3) Creack seal, replace damaged windows in the Change rooms and Storeroom. 4) Paint work and Finishings 5) Upgrade the overall refrigeration system to modern TTOD.
		Rural Road Asset Management System	R6 000,00 947	RRAMS G	R2 284 000,00	R2 290 000,00	R2 373 000,00	
TOTAL					R5 184 00,00	R10 666 425,63	R10 162 425,63	

10.5 2026/2027 SECTOR DEPARTMENTS PROJECTS

The sector departments play a vital role in the development and sustainability of Waterberg District, contributing to infrastructure growth, economic opportunities, social services, education, and environmental management. Key entities include CoGHSTA, Public Works & Infrastructure, SANRAL, Sport & Culture, Education, Health & Social Development, Forestry & Environment, Economic Development & Tourism, and ESKOM, ensuring holistic progress across various sectors (see Annexure A)

Detailed projects per locality are documented and can be accessed within each local municipality's IDPs.



10.6 WATERBERG – BUDGET SUMMARY

Description	2022/23	2023/24	2024/25	Current Year 2025/26				2026/27 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
	Audited	Audited	Audited	Original	Adjusted	Full Year	Pre-audit	Budget Year	Budget Year +1	Budget Year +2
R thousands										
Financial Performance										
Property rates	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Service charges	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Investment revenue	3 029	3 271	2 284	3 614	514	514	780	850	1 100	1 500
Transfer and subsidies - Operational	149 388	154 295	160 288	164 821	194 821	194 821	186 151	164 697	168 696	176 617
Other own revenue	2 520	2 197	2 831	3 227	2 528	2 528	2 630	2 600	2 600	3 000
Total Revenue (excluding capital transfers and contributions)	154 937	159 763	165 402	171 662	197 862	197 862	189 561	168 147	172 396	181 117
Employee costs	116 764	123 997	126 415	136 360	132 205	132 205	114 197	138 485	145 409	152 680
Remuneration of councillors	9 008	9 348	9 374	10 989	10 989	10 989	8 631	11 511	12 086	12 690
Depreciation, amortisation and impairment	4 675	5 575	6 731	5 530	5 530	5 530	4 029	5 404	5 674	5 958
Interest, Dividends and Rent on Land	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Inventory consumed and bulk purchases	(0)	–	–	–	–	–	(0)	–	–	–
Transfers and subsidies	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Other expenditure	41 232	41 717	47 241	46 000	47 603	47 603	40 261	48 646	51 428	53 649
Total Expenditure	171 680	180 637	189 761	198 879	196 327	196 327	167 118	204 046	214 598	224 977
Surplus/(Deficit)	(16 743)	(20 874)	(24 359)	(27 217)	1 536	1 536	22 443	(35 899)	(42 202)	(43 860)
Transfers and subsidies - capital (monetary allocations)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Transfers and subsidies - capital (in-kind)	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Surplus/(Deficit) after capital transfers & contributions	(16 743)	(20 874)	(24 359)	(27 217)	1 536	1 536	22 443	(35 899)	(42 202)	(43 860)
Share of Surplus/(Deficit) attributable to Associate	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Surplus/(Deficit) for the year	(16 743)	(20 874)	(24 359)	(27 217)	1 536	1 536	22 443	(35 899)	(42 202)	(43 860)
Capital expenditure & funds sources										
Capital expenditure	1 122	450	60	100	1 200	1 200	99	100	–	–
Transfers recognised - capital	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Borrowing	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Internally generated funds	1 000	450	–	100	1 200	1 200	99	100	–	–
Total sources of capital funds	1 000	450	–	100	1 200	1 200	99	100	–	–



Budget Summary (continued)

Financial position										
Total current assets	16 922	9 129	3 627	11 239	40 439	40 439	36 174	9 363	(25 536)	(61 942)
Total non current assets	78 681	72 948	66 423	74 460	75 624	75 624	62 527	70 319	64 645	58 687
Total current liabilities	21 698	26 379	41 168	51 858	53 470	53 470	47 347	52 623	54 252	55 961
Total non current liabilities	22 811	25 484	23 028	28 033	28 033	28 033	23 028	–	–	–
Community wealth/Equity	50 490	30 213	5 854	5 808	34 560	34 560	28 320	27 059	(15 142)	(59 217)
Cash flows										
Net cash from (used) operating	(12 442)	(165 878)	(172 853)	(17)	29 183	29 183	29 183	(29 143)	(35 122)	(36 426)
Net cash from (used) investing	(324)	–	(1)	(55)	(55)	(55)	(55)	(100)	–	–
Net cash from (used) financing	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
Cash/cash equivalents at the year end:	15 347	(153 105)	(167 464)	5 857	35 057	35 057	35 057	7 902	(27 220)	(63 646)
Cash backing/surplus reconciliation										
Cash and investments available	15 369	(153 082)	(167 441)	5 881	35 081	35 081	35 079	7 926	(27 195)	(63 622)
Application of cash and investments	(242 487)	(370 033)	(490 313)	(385 605)	(384 013)	(384 013)	682 256	(380 480)	(379 079)	(377 378)
Balance - surplus (shortfall)	257 856	216 951	322 872	391 486	419 095	419 095	(647 177)	388 406	351 884	313 756
Asset management										
Asset register summary (WDV)	78 659	(71 350)	66 401	74 436	75 599	75 599		70 295	64 621	58 663
Depreciation	4 675	5 575	6 731	5 530	5 530	5 530		5 404	5 674	5 958
Renewal and Upgrading of Existing Assets	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Repairs and Maintenance	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Free services										
Cost of Free Basic Services provided	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Revenue cost of free services provided	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Households below minimum service level										
Water:	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Sanitation/sewerage:	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Energy:	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–
Refuse:	–	–	–	–	–	–		–	–	–



10.7 WATERBERG – Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure by functional classification)

Functional Classification Description	###	2022/23	2023/24	2024/25	Current Year 2025/26			2026/27 Medium Term Revenue & Expenditure Framework		
		Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Audited Outcome	Original Budget	Adjusted Budget	Full Year Forecast	Budget Year 2026/27	Budget Year +1 2027/28	Budget Year +2 2028/29
R thousand	1									
Revenue - Functional										
<i>Governance and administration</i>		150 987	155 624	158 498	163 635	192 835	192 835	163 246	167 091	175 328
Executive and council		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Finance and administration		150 987	155 624	158 498	163 635	192 835	192 835	163 246	167 091	175 328
Internal audit		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Community and public safety</i>		315	439	1 234	541	541	541	400	500	600
Community and social services		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sport and recreation		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Public safety		50	74	212	72	72	72	400	500	600
Housing		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Health		265	364	1 022	469	469	469	-	-	-
<i>Economic and environmental services</i>		2 281	2 290	4 212	5 500	2 500	2 500	2 601	2 705	2 789
Planning and development		-	-	1 200	3 000	-	-	-	-	-
Road transport		2 281	2 290	3 012	2 500	2 500	2 500	2 601	2 705	2 789
Environmental protection		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Trading services</i>		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Energy sources		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste water management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waste management		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Other</i>	4	1 354	1 411	1 459	1 986	1 986	1 986	1 900	2 100	2 400
Total Revenue - Functional	2	154 937	159 763	165 402	171 662	197 862	197 862	168 147	172 396	181 117



Budgeted Financial Performance (continued)

Total Revenue - Functional	2	154 937	159 763	165 402	171 662	197 862	197 862	168 147	172 396	181 117
Expenditure - Functional										
<i>Governance and administration</i>		82 668	90 405	92 335	102 594	101 877	101 877	108 710	114 180	119 539
Executive and council		33 515	38 290	37 022	44 720	43 753	43 753	45 791	48 081	50 485
Finance and administration		49 152	52 115	55 313	57 874	58 124	58 124	62 919	66 100	69 055
Internal audit		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Community and public safety</i>		67 326	66 438	73 208	69 142	67 623	67 623	70 236	73 747	77 435
Community and social services		3 844	3 762	2 928	4 065	3 864	3 864	4 047	4 250	4 462
Sport and recreation		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Public safety		38 559	38 167	41 943	38 903	38 732	38 732	39 968	41 966	44 064
Housing		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Health		24 922	24 509	28 338	26 175	25 027	25 027	26 221	27 532	28 908
<i>Economic and environmental services</i>		13 602	15 055	16 580	19 715	18 572	18 572	16 547	17 690	18 574
Planning and development		9 753	10 230	10 353	13 414	11 060	11 060	11 297	11 862	12 455
Road transport		3 849	4 825	6 226	6 301	7 512	7 512	5 250	5 828	6 119
Environmental protection		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Trading services</i>		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Energy sources		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Water management		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Waste water management		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Waste management		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Other</i>	4	8 084	8 739	7 637	7 428	8 255	8 255	8 553	8 980	9 429
Total Expenditure - Functional	3	171 680	180 637	189 761	198 879	196 327	196 327	204 046	214 598	224 977
Surplus/(Deficit) for the year		(16 743)	(20 874)	(24 359)	(27 217)	1 536	1 536	(35 899)	(42 202)	(43 860)

References

1. Government Finance Statistics Functions and Sub-functions are standardised to assist the compilation of national and international accounts for comparison purposes
2. Total Revenue by functional classification must reconcile to Total Operating Revenue shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
3. Total Expenditure by Functional Classification must reconcile to Total Operating Expenditure shown in Budgeted Financial Performance (revenue and expenditure)
4. All amounts must be classified under a functional classification. The GFS function 'Other' is only for Abbatoirs, Air Transport, Forestry, Licensing and Regulation, Markets and Tourism - and if used must be supported by footnotes. Nothing else may be placed under 'Other'. Assign associate share to relevant classification.



11.1 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS

FOCUS	YEAR OF REVIEW
Spatial Development Framework	In place and adopted by council in 2021 Under implementation and due for review
Disaster Management Plan	2020/21 review/update (as it is done bi-annually.)
District Integrated Transport Plans	Developed in 2013/14 (due of review). WDM requested CoGTA to assist with the review
Local Economic Development Strategy	Due for review. WDM requested CoGTA to assist with the review
Communication Strategy	In place and adopted by council.
Public participation Strategy	Awaiting consolidation of inputs and approval by council
Finance Strategy	Addressed in Finance Chapter of IDP (locals should have their own), IDP not found lacking so due to already strained funds available for IDP, this is not a priority project. Finance Strategy should include Revenue Enhancement Strategy, but we are fully dependent on grants.
Performance Management Framework	Reviewed 2026/26 FY
PMS	No electronic system manually captured.
Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan	Reviewed together with IDP & Budget 2025/26 FY.
Organisational Structure	2023 Approved
Workplace Skills Plan	WSP review process underway and will be submitted to LGSETA by the 30 April 2022.
Employment Equity Plan	In place and adopted by Council 2022/23

Road Master Plan - infrastructure Investment framework	The municipality does not have the plan
Record Management Plan	File Plan in place
HRM&D Strategy	In place.
Waste Management Plan	Reviewed and submitted to LEDET for approval by MEC.
Fraud Risk Management Strategy -Whistle blow policy -Fraud Respond plan -Code of conduct of municipal employees and council	Reviewed (every financial year).
Financial Plan	The Budget is the WDM financial plan (incl. MTREF).
Capital Investment Plan	In place.
Tourism Development Strategy Agricultural Strategy	LED strategy in place (incorporates all the sectors). Due for review
Environmental Management Plan	Reviewed and submitted to LEDET for approval by MEC.
HIV /Aids Plan	In place.
Air Quality Management Plan	Management plan and Emission Inventory Completed. LEDET developing one for the WDM in house
Health Plan	-
Social Crime Prevention Strategy	-
Risk management Strategy	Reviewed.

Sport Arts & Culture	-
Integrated Transport Plan	ITP in place

NB: All these Sector Plans are accessible at WDM and can be made available on request.

11.2 STATUS OF SECTOR PLANS AND YEAR REVIEWED PER MUNICIPALITY

Municipality	IDP	SDF	SPLUMA	LED
Thabazimbi	Annually	2014	2022-2023	2021-2025
Lephalale	Annually	2022-2023	2022-2023	2022
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Annually	2010	2019	2021-2025
Belabela	Annually	2019	2019	2009
Mogalakwena	Annually	2019	2018	2018

Municipality	Water Master Plan	Sanitation Master Plan	Energy Master Plan	Human Settlement Plan
Thabazimbi	2017	2016	2014	Not Available
Lephalale	2015	2019	2018	2018
Modimolle-Mookgophong	2020	2018	Not Available	2010-2015
Belabela	2013	2016	Not Available	2009
Mogalakwena	2016	2019	Not Available	2019

Municipality	Infrastructure Investment plan	Fraud and Anti-corruption strategy	Communication strategy	Workplace Skills Plan
Thabazimbi	Not Available	Not Available	2019	30 April Every Year
Lephalale	2018	2021	2021-2022	30 April Every Year
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2020	2016	30 April Every Year
Bela-bela	2014	2009	2018	30 April Every Year
Mogalakwena	2013	2018	2019	30 April Every Year

Municipality	Employment Equity Plan	Risk Management Strategy	Road and Storm Water Master Plan	Integrated Transport Plan
Thabazimbi	2019	2019	To be developed	Not Available
Lephalale	2019-2020	2021	2018- Outdated	2019
Modimolle-Mookgophong	2020-2021	2021-2022	Not Available	Not Available
Belabela	2020-2021	2019	Outdated, Application submitted to DBSA	2009
Mogalakwena	2020-2021	2020-2021	Outdated, Application submitted to DBSA	2018

Municipality	Integrated Environmental Plan	Integrated Waste Management	Assets Management Plan	Complain Management System
Thabazimbi	Not Available	2019	Not Available	Not Available
Lephalale	2022	Not Available	2019	2021
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2019	2013	2018
Belabela	2006	2014	2017	2019
Mogalakwena	2019	Not Available	2018	2014

Municipality	Public Paricipation Strategy	Revenue Enhancement Strategy	Water Service Dev Plan	Road and Storm Water Operational and manitanance Plan
Thabazimbi	Not Available	Not Available	2012	2016
Lephalale	2022	2019	2018	2017
Modimolle-Mookgophong	2016	2019	Not Available	2018
Belabela	Not Available	2019	2014	2016
Mogalakwena				2016

Municipality	Tourism Development Strategy	Disaster Management Plan	Air Quality Master Plan
---------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

Thabazimbi	2019	2019	Not Available
Lephalale	2018	2019	2019
Modimolle-Mookgophong	Not Available	2020	Not Available
Belabela	Not Available	2019	Not Available
Mogalakwena	Not Available	2018	Not Available

CHAPTER 11 – PROJECTS PHASE (SECTOR DEPARTMENT PROJECTS)

ANNEXURE A: SECTOR DEPARTMENTS & PARASTATALS PROJECTS/PROGRAMMES TO BE UPDATED IN THE FINAL IDP IN MAY

ANNEXURE B: LOCAL MUNICIPALITIES PROJECTS

All local municipality-specific projects and Municipality Multiyear Capital Investment Programme are outlined in the respective IDPs of the local municipalities. These documents can be accessed via the official websites of the respective municipalities.

- Thabazimbi LM- <http://www.thabazimbi.gov.za/>
- Lephalale LM- <https://www.lephalale.gov.za/>
- Mogalakwena LM- <https://www.mogalakwena.gov.za/>
- Bela Bela LM- <https://www.belabela.gov.za/>
- Modimolle-Mookgopong LM- <https://www.mmlm.gov.za/>

SECTOR DEPARTMENTS & PARASTATALS PROJECTS

1. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the  Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

No	Project Name	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
1	Matsibe Secondary	2018-04-01	2028-03-31	Mokgalakwena	25942530	16505305.49	1959790	10000000	0
2	TETEMA SECONDARY	2014-04-01	2027-03-31	Mokgalakwena	5512647	0	2000000	5000000	0
3	Segoboko Secondary	2019-02-20	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	4783565	534971	0	0	0
4	KLIPSPRUIT PRIMARY	2022-04-01	2030-03-30	Lephalale	1597551	0	3000000	18000000	0
5	Ellisras Hoerskool	2023-05-01	2028-03-31	Lephalale	12000000	0	2800000	0	0
6	Thabang Primary	2019-06-30	2027-03-31	Lephalale	1675960	490966	0	0	0
7	Mafasa Secondary	2020-01-04	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	53416	625704	0	0	0
8	Given Mangolo Primary	2018-04-01	2026-06-30	Mogalakwena	29595409	462752	5518777	0	0
9	Mathulamisha Secondary School	2020-01-04	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	920000	656732	8000000	0	0
10	Mashobela Secondary	2018-04-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	29595409	215067	3263396	0	0
11	RABODITSE SECONDARY	2022-04-01	2030-03-30	Lephalale	1319027	799490	3000000	16000000	0
12	Mokhari Combined school	2018-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	38745630	4383477.43	1290521	0	0

13	Tshebedi Secondary (Now Konyama primary)	2020-01-04	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	421516	489892	0	0	0
14	Raserite Primary	2018-02-03	2027-03-31	Lephalale	3857110	5751018	0	0	0
15	NELLY PRIMARY SCHOOL (REPLACES DITLOU PRIMARY)	2022-04-01	2028-03-31	Mogalakwena	1989492	673395	8500000	15000000	0
16	Tsheesebe Primary	2019-03-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	1710516	509699	0	0	0
17	LEBONE SPECIAL NEEDS	2022-11-30	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	4725621	2649361	5000000	0	0
18	K.K. MONARE PRIMARY	2014-04-01	2027-12-31	Mogalakwena	20102000	15955878	0	0	0
19	Dimpe Secondary (replaces MASWIKANANOKO PRIMARY)	2022-04-01	2028-03-31	Lephalale	3679101	0	1300000	9773000	0
20	Radibaki Primary	2019-06-30	2027-03-31	Lephalale	577873	438677	0	0	0
21	E.A. DAVIDSON PRIMARY	2022-04-01	2030-03-30	Modimolle/Mookgophong	1043590	585576	0	0	50000
22	Kgakgala Prim School	2015-09-30	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	12864899	9026923	2513790	0	0
23	Bysonderheid Laerskool (Replaces Masedi Secondary	2018-02-03	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	2260000	3263584	650000	0	0
24	Frederick Langa Secondary School (Phase 1)	2019-04-01	2028-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	12000000	0	5000000	20000000	0
25	KGOTSORO PRIMARY	2022-11-30	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	4038924	2015828	17129000	0	0

26	Modimolle 2 Primary	2018-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	26401101	254461	1800000	0	0
27	Ramokhutlwane Combined School	2018-02-03	2027-03-31	Mokgalakwena	640000	5816148	800000	0	0
28	Mokolo Primary	2018-02-03	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	8148837	340322	189545	0	0
	TOTAL WATERBERG				R256,201,724	R72,445,227	R73,714,819	R93,773,000	R50,000

2. DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS

No	Project Name	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
1	Waterberg Offices (JJ Strydom and Onstoekoms Buldings))	2023-04-03	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	6000000	18637156.66	7000000	0	0
2	Waterberg Residences	2017-04-01	2030-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	500000	4272941	3138000	3138000	0
3	Waterberg Residences Maintenance	2018-04-01	2030-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	2303000	10433049	4819000	5159700	0
4	Waterberg Offices Maintenance	2016-04-01	2030-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	3472000	13903286	4819000	5159700	0
5	Waterberg Offices	2017-04-01	2030-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	5500000	10982948.5	3138000	3138000	0
	TOTAL				R17,775,000	R58,229,381	R22,914,000	R16,595,400	R0

3. COGHSTA: HUMAN SETTLEMENT

N o	Project Name	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
1	WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./WENZILE (36) URBAN 22/23 - Phase 1	2021-11-15	2028-03-31	Bela-Bela	137008800	0	0	14654800	0
2	Detailed design and construction of 100 sites in Phakamang Ext 13 MVE	2026-03-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	60000	0	60000	0	0
3	Detailed Design,Contract Documentation and Construction Monitoring and Control for Bulk Engineering Services for the upgrading of sewer treatment plant upgrade in Vaalwater - DZ Investments (PTY)LTD	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	100000	0	100000	0	0
4	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG MUNI./S & J (75) URBAN 24/25 - Phase 1	2024-05-02	2027-03-31	Modimolle-Mookgophong	6640000	0	9923250	0	0
5	Detailed design and construction of 111 Sites in Modimolle Mookgopong - KMSD	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle-Mookgophong	30000	0	30000	0	0
6	Detailed design and construction of 57 sites in Bela Bela Extension 25 - Kasieboy Trading and Projects 18 JV Mato Consulting Engineers	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	30000	0	30000	0	0
7	Detailed design and construction of 200 sites in Thabazimbi, Leeupoort(Raphuthi) Extension 10 - Edmole	2025-03-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	100000	0	100000	0	0

Images used: "no copyright infringement is intended." on the Waterberg District Municipality 2026/27 Final IDP

8	CONSTRUCTION OF THE SEWER TREATMENT PLANT (PACKAGE PLANT) AND THE RISING OUTFALL SEWER AT SKIERLIK SETTLEMENT WITHIN THABAZIMBI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY	2024-03-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	6000000	0	6000000	0	0
9	Altoostyd Package plant	2024-03-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	2000000	0	2000000	0	0
10	Detailed design and construction of 55 Sites in Vaalwater Ext 5 in Modimolle Mookgopong -Lumar Engineering	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	40000	0	40000	0	0
11	Detailed design and construction of 200 sites in Thabazimbi, Leeupoort (Raphuthi) Extension 10 - Morula	2025-03-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	100000	0	100000	0	0
12	Bulk Water (Boreholes) in Phakameng Ext 13 - KMSD Engineering Consultants (PTY) LTD	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Boreholes) in Phakameng Ext 13 - KMSD Eng	55000	0	55000	0	0
13	Detailed design and construction of 200 sites in Bela Bela Ext 25 - Loato Engineers (PTY) LTD N23100038/1	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	250000	0	250000	0	0
14	N22100006 WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./MATH (110) GEO/SERVICES/22/23 - Ext 25	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	200000	6832659	200000	0	0
15	IMPLEMENTING AGENT/HDA/RURAL (5000) 17/18 - MOGALAKWENA (320)	2017-11-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	3400000	0	1323666	0	0

16	WATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./KGOTSO MOKONE(05 MILVET 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	2842000	0	2842000	0	0
17	FLISP PROVINCIAL/RISIMA HFC 24/25 - MOGALAKWENA	2023-08-23	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	2000000	0	2000000	0	0
18	WATERBERG/LEPHALALE MUNI./KHUM MK (182) RURAL 24/25 - Phase 1	2024-03-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	29534659	21403669	1668213	0	0
19	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPHONG MUNI./PHEPHELE (75) URBAN 24/25 - Phase 1	2023-11-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	9264803	0	8930925	0	0
20	WATERBERG, BELABELA/BELABELA x 25, LUMAR /(PHASE 3) 69 SITES	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	60000	0	60000	0	0
21	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./KOEPU (57) URBAN 25/26 - Phase 1	2025-01-03	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	5120930	0	5082555	0	186859800
22	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./MABALENG(100)URBAN/22/23 - Phase 1	2022-01-07	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	296070	0	296070	0	0
23	WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./TTR (39) URBAN 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	14904339	0	14884875	0	0
24	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./SEEDI DEVELOPMENT 161) URBAN 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-01-04	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	281475	0	281475	0	0
25	N21110012: Fourie/Kruger	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	365339	0	3117000	0	0
26	WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./KOEPU (16) RURAL 25/26 - Phase 1	2025-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	2616328	2319789	12048205	0	0

27	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE-MOOKGOPONG MUNI./SAMTAK(176)UISP/23/24 (Phase)	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	40000	777150	40000	0	0
28	WATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./MAHLAKU (09) URBAN 17/18 - Phase 1	2017-05-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	2373563	0	1373563	0	0
29	WATERBERG/BELA BELA MUN./ZAKUMI/(200) N23100032/1	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	200000	0	200000	0	0
30	WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./KIPP/IRDP: SERVICES 22/23 (Belabela Ext 25)	2024-10-05	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	17954000	1516927	60000	0	0
31	WATERBERG/LEPHALALE MUNI./NTSHIZA'S TECHNICAL (160) RURAL 25/26 - Phase 1 N25010015/1	2025-04-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	6897592	6067616	1853570	0	0
32	IMPLEMENTING AGENT/HDA/LEPHALALE ALTOOSTYD 16/17 - Phase 1	2016-08-23	2027-03-31	Lephalale	8000000	0	8000000	0	0
33	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./XILUVELWENI (02) MILITARY VET 25/26 - Phase 1	2025-02-14	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	522003	0	390650	0	0
34	WATERBERG/LEPHALALE MUNI./PNG CIVILS (49)/RURAL 25/26 - Phase 1	2026-04-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	3872280	0	3707140	0	0
35	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./XILUVELWENI (143) URBAN 24/25 - Phase 1	2024-05-02	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	4170	0	4170	0	0

36	IMPLEMENTING AGENT/HDA/URBAN (Tittle deeds) - MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPHONG N25030006/5	2025-03-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	141780	0	141780	0	0
37	WATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./SOMANDLA (04) MILVET 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	1314019	71710	1218000	0	0
38	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPONG MUNI./RSM (83) URBAN 24/25 - Phase 1 N24040022/1	2024-01-05	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	8673055	13505525	16050255	0	0
39	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPONG MUNI./YABO RENA(45)URBAN/24/25 - Phase 1	2024-02-05	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	7083400	8595863	7029675	0	0
40	N22040005/1 WATERBERG/LEPHALALE MUNI./LUMAR (514) CRU MARAPONG 22/23	2022-03-24	2028-03-31	Lephalale	4778745	0	0	51108220	0
41	ATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./ALL AFRIKA (07) MILVET 23/24 - Phase 1 N23090015/1	2023-09-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	502019	0	406000	0	0
42	WATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./KOEPU (07) MILVET 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	2436000	741523	2436000	0	0
43	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPHONG MUNI./LEKGOHOANE(14) URBAN 25/26 - Phase 1 N25010043/1	2025-01-04	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	2511828	2656149	3199000	0	0
44	Vaalwater ext 6	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	271814	0	1026000	0	0

45	WATERBERG/MOGALAKWENA MUNI./BRUNEL (01) MILVET 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	2309001	0	406000	0	0
46	Mogalakwena ext 20	2022-07-01	2027-03-31	Mogalakwena	893720	0	1002000	0	0
47	WATERBERG/LEPHALALE MUNI./RHEILAND JV QINISA /CRU 16/17 - Phase 1	2016-04-01	2027-03-31	Lephalale	30736135	30514837	10000000	0	0
48	WATERBERG/BELA-BELA MUNI./OLTATECH/IUSP/23/24 (Phase)	2022-03-24	2027-03-31	Bela-Bela	14683071	7486960	2100000	0	0
49	WATERBERG/THABAZIMBI MUNI./BRUNEL ENG (200) URBAN 23/24 - Phase 1	2023-04-01	2027-03-31	Thabazimbi	3041700	264795	3018675	0	0
50	WATERBERG/MODIMOLLE- MOOKGOPONG MUNI./TSHEGANE(68)URBAN/24/25 - Phase 1	2024-02-05	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophon g	9704685	0	7978215	0	0
	TOTAL WATERBERG				R352,244,323	R102,755,172	R143,063,927	R65,763,020	R186,859,800

4. TRADITIONAL INSTITUTIONAL MANAGEMENT

No	Project Name	Organisation	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
1	Construction of new office	Cooperative Governance and	2024-04-01	2028-05-02	Mogalakwena	13999692	11168257	1650000	0	0

	at Mapela Traditional Council	Traditional Affairs								
2	Bakenberg Traditional Council	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	2028-04-01	2029-05-01	Mogalakwena	21867150	0	0	0	10950000
	TOTAL					R35,866,842	R11,168,257	R1,650,000	R0	R10,950,000

5. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH

No	Project Name	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
1	Witpoort Hospital_New designated MHCU attached to a hospital	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Lephalale	14900000	0	2400000	12500000	0
2	Warmbaths Hospital_Upgrade Facility	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Belabela	14500000	0	4500000	10000000	0
3	George Masebe Hospital_Upgrade 72 hr units	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Mogalakwena	4981000	0	2106000	2875000	0
4	Modimolle EMS Station_Construction of Wash bays and sluice facility	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Modimolle	1184500	0	564500	620000	0
5	FH Odendaal Hospital_Upgrade 72 hr units	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Modimolle	4975000	0	2100000	2875000	0
6	Mookgopong EMS Station_Construction of Wash bays and sluice facility	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Mookgopong	1184500	0	564500	620000	0

7	Warmbaths Hospital_Procurement of furniture & medical equipment for EMS & Maternity: HT	1900-01-01	2027-03-31	Bela Bela	0	0	0	0	0
8	FH Odendaal Hospital_Projects	2021-11-01	2028-03-31	Waterberg	303810662	218346662	60464000	25000000	0
9	Warmbad Hospital_Projects	2023-08-01	2028-03-31	Bela Bela	27162257	1862257	10000000	15300000	0
10	Mokopane Hospital_Upgrade Helipad	1900-01-01	2028-03-31	Mokgalakwena	5329000	0	2529000	2800000	0
11	Phagameng Modimolle Clinic &EMS_Replacement of the existing facilities on new site	2007-06-07	2028-07-01	Modimolle	58733790	2983790	15750000	40000000	0
TOTAL WATERBERG					R436,760,709	R223,192,709	R100,978,000	R112,590,000	R0

6. LIMPOPO DEPARTMENT OF LAND REFORM AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

No.	Project Name	Start Date	Project Status	Budget Allocated	Progress on implementation
1	Koedoeslagte (Portion 0 of the farm Koedoeslaagte 173 KP); Preserve Farm (Pty) Ltd (Portion 11 of the farm Kaalvalkte 416 KQ614 KS); Barui Ba Plaatlagte (Pty) Ltd (Portion 4 of the farm Plaatlagte 614 KS)	2026-2027	Approved	R39 549 866.99	Meeting with farmer to agree on dates for submission of quotations on 19 May 2026. Farmer busy sourcing quotations to submit end of May 2026. NLACC approved. Awaiting LDS Policy alignment of TRI projects.

7. LIMPOPO DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

No	Project Name	Start Date	End Date	Municipality	Total Project Cost	Total Past Expenditure	26/27	27/28	28/29
----	--------------	------------	----------	--------------	--------------------	------------------------	-------	-------	-------

1	Rietfontein NO2 (Upper)	2023-04-03	2027-04-01	Mokgalakwena	4000000	0	0	4500000	450000
2	Malumash	2024-06-01	2027-04-30	Mokgalakwena	2175000	0	1000000	250000	0
3	Veterinary Facilities Waterburg	2025-03-29	2029-12-29	Modimolle/Mookgophong	5000000	0	1400000	1000000	250000
4	Towoomba Office maintenance	2025-05-04	2027-04-01	Bela bela	5000000	1236411	567000	942000	1500000
5	Magogwe and Fufix projects Planning	2024-11-01	2027-03-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	1000000	160610	0	3000000	150000
6	Makgaung Dam	2023-04-03	2027-04-30	Mokgalakwena	3000000	0	900000	4000000	400000
7	Mabjaneng CPA	2024-05-01	2027-06-02	Mogalakwena	1600000	0	0	1500000	75000
8	Lephalale Agric Office maintenance	2025-04-01	2027-04-30	Lephalale	1050000	0	50000	0	0
9	Towoomba Water reticulation	2025-04-30	2027-04-30	Bela bela	2500000	0	1379000	1000000	0
10	Veterinary Laboratories Rehabilitation and Refurbishment	2023-05-31	2027-04-30	Modimolle/Mookgophong	10000000	7250161	500000	0	0
11	Lehlowedi PTY (LTD)	2025-05-30	2027-07-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	200000	0	0	5000000	250000
12	B&J Mixed Farming	2024-04-30	2027-05-08	Modimolle/Mookgophong	3150000	0	1500000	75000	0

13	Red meat Immerpan Phase 3&4 Completion	2025-05-30	2027-07-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	1500000	0	1600000	350000	0
14	MAFADA	2023-05-05	2026-04-30	Mokgalakwena	3000000	1215040	125000	0	0
15	S&L Son's phase 2	2025-05-30	2027-07-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	1400000	0	0	50000	0
16	Mogoto Dam	2023-04-03	2027-04-01	Mokgalakwena	17000000	0	0	530000	1500000
17	Towoomba Animal handling	2025-05-30	2027-05-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	2000000	0	500000	542000	0
18	Red meat Immerpan Phase 3&4	2023-05-03	2026-11-27	Modimolle/Mookgophong	8000000	8059572	330000	0	0
19	Rietfontein NO1 (Lower)	2023-04-03	2027-04-01	Mokgalakwena	5000000	0	0	4500000	450000
20	Witpoort Agric Offices Maintenace	2025-05-30	2027-04-30	Lephalale	1050000	0	50000	0	0
21	Ntwalebogadi Broiler Project	2024-05-07	2027-05-06	Lephalale	1720000	115978	1000000	100000	0
22	Kolobe Agric Cooperative	2024-05-01	2027-04-30	Mogalakwena	1650000	0	1000000	100000	0
23	Animal Handling Facilities Waterberg	2018-04-02	2028-03-31	Mogalakwena	5000000	1325870	300000	500000	350000
24	Waterberg planning projects	2016-05-31	2027-11-28	Modimolle/Mookgophong	15050000	1511346	0	1000000	2500000
25	Flybiz	2024-05-01	2027-05-29	Thabazimbi	375000	0	1000000	200000	0

26	Senoamadi - Planning	2025-05-30	2027-10-30	Modimolle/Mookgophong	150000	134631	100000	1000000	50000
27	Moreleba Enterprise	2019-04-01	2027-04-30	Bela bela	4000000	368339	200000	0	0
28	Badiradipelo Farmers	2025-05-30	2027-07-31	Modimolle/Mookgophong	2000000	0	0	75000	0
29	BN Agric Project	2024-05-31	2026-07-30	Thabazimbi	2500000	2329347	300000	0	0
30	Monyetla Holding	2024-05-01	2027-04-02	Modimolle/Mookgophong	10000000	0	10000000	6276000	0
31	Sedibeng layers	2025-05-30	2027-10-30	Modimolle/Mookgophong	150000	0	250000	2597000	150000
32	Temo ya Tlhabane	2024-06-01	2027-04-30	Modimolle/Mookgophong	3150000	0	0	0	4500000
	TOTAL				R123,370,000	R23,707,305	R24,051,000	R39,087,000	R12,575,000

8. ESKOM ELECTRIFICATION 2026/27WATERBERG

No	Project Name	Local Municipality	Project Status	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure to Date
1	Mapela(Hans) (23)	LIM367_Mogalakwena	Awaiting Execution	2779630	R0
2	Skimming/Leruleng (140)	LIM367_Mogalakwena	Awaiting Execution	4540893.53	R0
3	Kwakwalata (8)	LIM367_Mogalakwena	Awaiting Execution	1052985	R0
4	Mogalakwena Infills (175)	LIM367_Mogalakwena	Awaiting Execution	1866092.133	R0
5	Bela-Bela Infills (64)	LIM366_Bela Bela	Awaiting Execution	656192.1325	R0
6	Thabazimbi Infills (75)	LIM361_Thabazimbi	Awaiting Execution	776092.1325	R0
7	Lephalale Infills (75)	LIM362_Lephalale	Awaiting Execution	776092.1325	R0

8	Gilead Substation	LIM367_Mogalakwena	In Progress	10341451	R0
9	Waterberg 20 MVA 132/22kV Transformer Installation	LIM362_Lephalale	In Progress	17020282.63	R0
10	Smashblock 132kV SWS 20MVA Supply Point	LIM361_Thabazimbi	Pre-Engineering. In Progress	1184300	R0

9. LEDET

Project Name	Description	Status	Period	Total Cost	Past Expenditure	2026/27	2027/28	2028/29
1. Masebe NR Refurbishment	Resort facilities upgrade	Construction	2025 – 2027	R10,352,277	R245,560	R9,000,000	R0	R0
2. D’Nyala Nature Reserve Maintenance	Repairs & maintenance	Construction	2025 – 2027	R4,532,197	R1,028,172	R5,000,000	R5,000,000	R5,000,000
3. Air Quality Monitoring Modimolle	Continuous monitoring station	Implementation	2026 – 2027	R713,747	R0	R713,747	R3,079,288	R3,079,288

4. Air Quality Management Plans	Review of district AQMPs	Execution	2025 – 2027	R2,353,084	R0	R2,353,084	R0	R0
5. Rebone Landfill Design	Waste management engineering design	Planning	2026 – 2027	R5,000,000	R0	R5,000,000	R0	R0
6. Integrated Waste Management	Waste management plan	Planning	2026 – 2027	R1,000,000	R0	R1,000,000	R0	R0

10.SANRAL

Municipality	Number of Projects	Total Project Cost (Incl. VAT)
Modimolle-Mookgophong	4	R 1,857,926,016.24
Thabazimbi	2	R 54,538,753.50
Bela-Bela	4	R 316,259,984.41
Lephalale	4	R 134,965,209.44
Mogalakwena	2	R 190,471,836.75

District-Wide Projects	2	R 1,781,213,359.85
-------------------------------	----------	---------------------------

The maintenance projects for all SANRAL roads within the Waterberg District Municipality in all the local municipalities OVER THREE BILLION. The overall project budget for all SANRAL road projects in Waterberg District sums up to R 3,301,696,285.74 across all municipalities. This includes routine road maintenance (RRM), emergency repairs, resurfacing, improvements, and upgrade projects.

11. DEPARTMENT OF SPORT, ARTS, CULTURE & RECREATION

Project Name	Local Municipality	Project Status	% Progress	Total Project Cost	Total Expenditure to Date
Construction Of Belabela Township Library	Bela-Bela	Design Phase	3%	15,000,000	0

CHAPTER 12 - APPROVAL PHASE

Final 2026/27 IDP document to be tabled and approved by Council on 28 May 2026.

